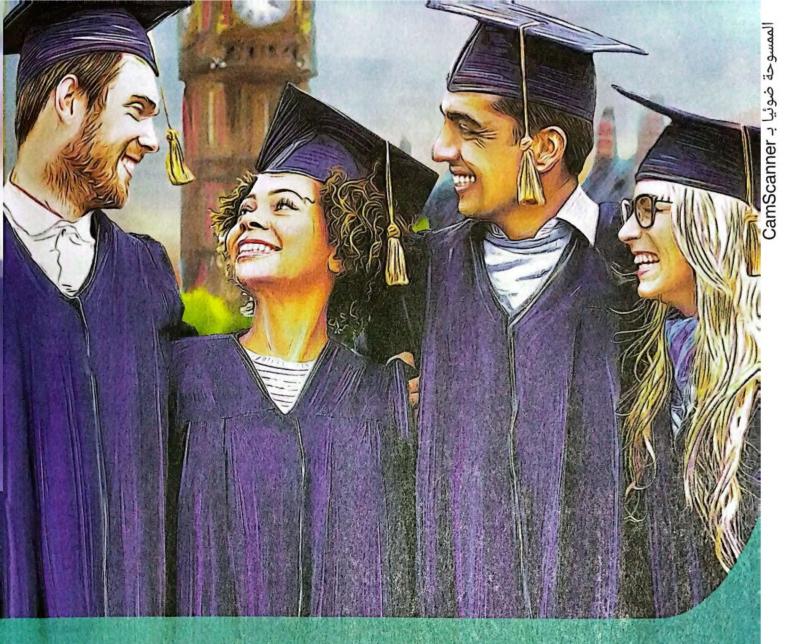


الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Contents -

Unit 1	Al-Adwaa Test 1	3
	Al-Adwaa Test 1	
Unit	High-tech transport	51
Ollic	3 Al-Adwaa Test 2	
Unit	Conservation	99
Oilit	Al-Adwaa Test 3	144
Unit a	The News	148
01111	Al-Adwaa Test 4	193
Unit	What a performance!	197
01111 1	Al-Adwaa Test 5	241
Unit	Achievements and goals	245
Onit 1	Al-Adwaa Test 6	295
King Le	ear	
Act III, Scenes v-	-vii	300
Act IV. Scenes i-		308
Act IV, Scenes iv	/-vi	317
Act IV, Scene vi,	continued & Scene vii	324
Act IV, Scene vii,	, continued & Act V, Scenes i-iii	332
Act V, Scene iii		
Advanced	General Exercises	
	General Exercises Answers	



Living abroad

Unit 7

Object Md Hossam Elnaggar Teacher of English



الوحدة الرقيمي

Reading

: An extract from the novel The Secret Garden by Frances Hodgson Burnett

Writing

: A diary entry by a student who is living abroad

Listening

: Voice messages from students who are studying abroad

Speaking

: Discussing the pros and cons of working abroad

Language: Present continuous; Stative verbs

Life Skills: Critical thinking; Showing respect for people from different cultures



Part (1) Lessons 1 & 2



You can study the new vocabulary by putting each word in a sentence.

Key Vocabulary

determination (n)*	تصميم/عزيمة	independent (adj)	مستقل	
encouragement (n)	تشجيع	pick up (v) (ed)	يحضر (شخصًا) من مكان	
get used to على		struggle (v) (d)	ىكافح/يناضل/يعاثى	
host family (n)	اسرة مضيفة	struggie (v) (u)	يدهع/يدهس/يعدى	

We all respect the disabled athlete's determination to win medals.

10

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

abroad (adv) بالخارج	course (n)	پرنامج دراسی
accommodation (n) إقامة/مكان إقامة	creature (n)	مخلوق/كائڻ
activity (n) نشاط	current (adj)	حالى/جارٍ
يزمج/يضايق annoy (v) (ed)	degree (n)	درجة جامعية
bell (n) جرس	distract (v) (ed)	يشتت الذهن/الانتباه
علم الأحياء biology (n)	explain (v) (ed)	يشرح/يفسر
celebration (n) احتفال	explore (v) (d)	يستكشف
certificate (n) شعادة	extract (n)	مقتطف/جزء مقتبس
challenge (n) (v) (d) تحذابتدى	gardener (n)	بستانی/جناینی
character (n) شنصية	lonely (adj)	وحيد
concentrate (v) (d) يركز	maid (n)	وصيفة/خادمة
confident (adj) واثق	main (adj)	أساسي/رئيسي
confused (adj) مرتبك	noisy (adj)	صاخب

normal (adj)	طبيعى	stressed (adj)	مضغوط
publish (v) (ed)	ينشر	temporary (adj)	مؤقث
ring (v)	يدق (يرن) الجرس	understandable (adj)	يمكن غهمه
secret (n) (adj)	<i>سراسر</i> ی	hisala (a) (d) (a)	
specific (adj)	محدد	whistle (v) (d) (n)	يصفر اصفارة

Workbook Vocabulary

blog (n)	مدونة الكترونية	helpful (adj)	معین/مساعد
conditions (n)	ظروف/أحوال	imagine (v) (d)	يتخيل
drought (n)	جفاف	lamb (n)	صغير الخروف/الماعز
experience (n) (v) (d)	خبرة/تجربة/يجرب	support (n) (v) (ed)	دعم/يدعم
firefighter (n)	رجل إطفاء	volunteer (n) (v) (ed)	متطوع/يتطوع
harbour (n)	ميناء	weigh (v) (ed)	يزن

Vocabulary Check point 1

1 Going away to college in Alexar	ndria has made my son much more
a) dependent	b) noisy
c) independent	d) specific
2 The survivors were picked	by fishing boats from nearby villages.
a) up	b) on
c) away	d) for
3 The cost of the six-day trip in Sh	arm El Sheikh includes meals and hotel
a) concentration	b) determination
c) course	d) accommodation
4 Our National Football Team has	great to win the African Cup of Nation
this year.	
a) depression	b) determination
c) avoidance	d) accommodation

The computer company wants someone with a lot of scientificfor
this job.

a) experience

b) experiment

c) trial

d) testing

6 I didn't think I could ever used to living in a big city after living in the country.

a) grow

b) get

c) fall

d) turn

7 With support and from their parents, the students organised their first art exhibition.

a) discouragement

b) degree

c) conditions

d) encouragement

a) title

b) course

c) essay

d) certificate

9 I think this cold weather is for this time of the year as it is winter.

a) normal

b) specific

c) confused

d) independent

10is the scientific study of the life and structure of plants and animals.

a) History

b) Botany

c) Biology

d) Mathematics

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

do/perform an activity يقوم بنشاط	have a great time	يتمتع بوقت رائع
get distracted ويصبح مشتت الذهن/الانتباه	have experience	لديه خبرة
have a break لديه راحة/فسحة	on his own	بمفرده
يمر بـ ايقابل (بالصدقة) come across	look around	ينظر حول/يتجول
come into یاتی/یدخل إلی	look out of	ينظر من خلال
difference between نختلاف بین	move to	ينتقل إلى
different to/from مختلف عن	travel across	يسافر عبر

Derivatives

Vei	rb	No	un	Adjecti	ve
annoy	يزعج/يضايق	annoyance	لإعاج	annoying annoyed	مزعج منزعج
concentrate	يركز	concentration	تركيز	concentrated	مركز
confuse *	يربك	confusion	إرباك/ارتباك	confusing confused	مُريك مرتبك
determine	يصمم	determination	تصميم	determined e	مصمم أعاقد الع
distract دنتباه	يشتت الذهن/الا	distraction distractor	تشتت الذمن/الانتباه مشتت للانتباه	distracted لانتباه	مشتت الذهن/ا
explore	يستكشف	exploration explorer	استکشاف مستکشف	exploratory	استكشافي
imagine	يتخيل	imagination	خيال	imaginative imaginary الولقع)	خیالی (مبدع) خیالی (بعید عن
publish	ينشر	publication publisher	منشور ناشر	published	منشور
specify	تددد	specification	تصيد/تخصيص	specific	محدد
weigh	يزن	weight	وزن	weighty	تقيل الوزن

- These unclear instructions can confuse everyone.

- The announcement caused a lot of confusion among the students.

- I'm really confused. Can you explain that again?

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

determination تصمیم/عزیمة		persistence/dedication	indifference/hesitation م اهتمام/ترىد	
current	حالي/جارٍ	contemporary/ongoing	past/old	ماض/قديم
confused	مرتبك	distracted/puzzled	clear-headed	صافى الذهن
concentrate	يركز	focus	ignore/disregard	يتجاهل
Word M	eaning	المرانف Synonym	Antonym a	المضا

distract هن/الانتباه	يشتت الذ	confuse/disturb	calm/clarify	يمدئ/يوضح
encouragement	تشجيع	support/backing	discouragement	عدم تشجيع
imagine	يتخيل	fancy/suppose	disregard/ignore	يستبعد/يتجاهل
independent	مستقل	self-reliant	dependent	معتمد
specific	محدد	peculiar/particular	common/ordinary	عادی/شائع
struggle	يكافح	toil/strive	surrender/yield	يستسلم

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

		his own illegal activit	ties. The verb "distract" is
	n of "b) relieve	c) clarify	d) define
			oun of the verb "annoy"
is"			
a) annoys	b) annoyance	c) annoyed	d) annoyingly
	her is ill and he can't		
a) do	b) make	c) follow	d) derive
4 The tour gui	de says that we'll	a break now and i	resume in an hour.
a) suffer	b) surrender	c) fight	d) have
	eems to be specific to c	ertain types of plant.	The adjective "specific"
	b) particular	c) obvious	d) common
	s that our house is diffe		
a) at		c) of	
	nies have to publish an	nual reports and acc	ounts. The adjective of
	b) publication	c) published	d) publisher
	professional musician, y		
	termination" is similar in		
	b) hesitation		
9 The tourist gro	oup spent the afternoon	n looking the	e town.
	b) around		
10 Although he withe verb "strug	was injured, the boxer s ggle" is	truggled to win the f	
a) suffer	b) fight	c) gain	d) surrender

Reading Text

The Secret Garden

The **Secret Garden** is a novel by Frances Hodgson Burnett. It was published in Britain in 1911. At the beginning of the book, we meet the main character, Mary Lennox. Mary was born in India and her parents were rich. When Mary is nine years old, her parents die and Mary moves to England to live with her uncle. It is cold and very different from India, and Mary is unhappy at first.

Mary opened her eyes on that first morning because a maid⁽¹⁾ had come into her room.

"Are you my servant?" she asked.

"I'm Mrs. Medlock's servant, and she is Mr Craven's servant," replied Martha, the maid. "Are you going outside today?"

Mary looked around her. There was nothing to do in the bedroom.

"Who will go with me?" Mary asked.

"You can be independent⁽²⁾ and go out by yourself. My brother is always exploring on his own," said Martha. "There are some gardens, but it is winter so nothing is growing now. Oh, now Mrs. Medlock's bell is ringing. I must go!"

A short time later, Mary was in the gardens when she came across a small bird singing in some trees behind a wall. When she asked an old gardener⁽³⁾ about the bird, he whistled and the bird flew to him.

"He was lonely and we became friends," the old man explained.

"I'm lonely," said Mary. "I don't know anyone in England."

"I'm sure you will struggle" at first, but you will get used to the people here soon," said the gardener. Suddenly, the small bird started singing.

"Why is he doing that?" she asked.

"I think he's decided to be your friend, too," answered the gardener.



وصيفة/خادمة (1)	
مستقل (2)	
بستانی/جناینی (3)	
يكلفع (4)	
(S) de alias	

Listening Text



Narrator: 1

Teen boy: Hi Khaled! How are you? I'm having a great time here in Sydney. Australia is such a beautiful country and the sun always seems to be shining here! It's so wonderful! Every day - after I've finished my lessons - I go down to the beach to have a break from studying and smell the sea air. I have a few good friends here now, so we usually go together. The only problem is that sometimes I find it too difficult to concentrate(1) on my lessons because I'm thinking about going to the beach afterwards(2)!



Teen girl: Hi Dad. I hope everything's OK at home. I'm fine, but I'm finding it quite difficult to get used to life

in Tokyo - everything is so different here. It's not like quiet all the time. It's always noisy(3) because of the ca day and night! But the most difficult thing about this I don't know enough Japanese at the moment. People only understand a little bit of what they're saying, so confused(5). I hope things will get better!

Speaker: 3

Teen boy: HI Mum! I miss you and everyone at home. I'm having a good time here in Barcelona. I feel so happy to be here and there are so many fun things I still want to do here, like visiting more of the beautiful buildings in the city. I'm getting a little bit better at Spanish every day-today I went to a café with friends and I remembered enough to buy some lunch! I came home feeling really good!





		explore يستكشف شيلا أو مكاثا/يدرس معالمه	Marco Polo was the first European sailor to explore China.
4	2000	invent (1) بخترع شیلا أو جمازًا لم یکن موجودًا من قبل	Thomas Edison invented many devices in the field of electricity.
		discover یکتشف شیئا کان موجوداً ولم یعرف	The pharaohs were able to discover many metals such as iron and gold.
n	يركز (1) بعد ذلك (2) ماخب (3)	۱ - حالی/جارِ ۲- تیار ماء ۲- تیار هواء ۴- تیار کمربی ۵- تیار سائد (رأی أو اتجاه)	 In its current state, the car is worth 50,000 pounds. Strong currents can be very dangerous for swimmers. Some birds use warm air currents to help them fly. Check all your wiring before switching on the current. There was a current of anger within the company.
	تجربة (4)	currants الزبيب (العنب المجفف)	Our cook uses a lot of currants while baking cakes. (= dried grapes)
	مرتبك (5) t home where it's rs on the roads –	abroad خارج البلاد (في بلد آخر) (لا تستخدم كصفة قبل اسم)	Our neighbours are on holiday abroad at the moment.
is e	experience ⁽⁴⁾ is that	foreign آجنبی (صفة تأتی قبل اسم)	Who's the Minister for Foreign Affairs?
	talk to me and I m always feeling	exterior (outside) خارِجِيَ	The exterior of my house needs painting. (= the outside surface)
20	a good time here	certificate الشهادة (هي وثيقة رسمية لشيء مثل	mautificate

الميلاد أو الزواج أو الوفاة)

qualifications

المؤهلات (هي دليل مهارة الشخص أو معرفته لموضوع ما بعد النجاح في منهج أو امتحان)

What qualifications do I need to teach English as a foreign language?

degree

درجة جامعية عند إتمام منهج دراسي بنجاح

I did/took my degree at Assuit University.

drought 5	Some of the newer plants in the garden die during the drought.
draught ثل إلى غرفة	Can you close the window? I'm in a draught
loud الصوت (تستخدم لوصف موسيقي)	- The child was talking in a very loud voice. - The music was so loud that we couldn't he each other.

noisy
- The traffic in the city centre was very noisy.
- Our new neighbours are noisy and are always having quarrels.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1) After the meeting, the at	tendees will be free to the city.
a) explore	b) invent
c) discover	d) devise
2 Candidates of the job in t	he New Administrative Capital must hold a
in architecture.	all the fact of the second of
a) licence	b) permit
c) certificate	d) degree
3 The farmers suffered grea	t losses as thecaused serious damage to crops
due to lack of water.	1 The shape
a) draught	b) current
c) drought	d) flood
4 On surfing beaches, stron	gare common especially during competition
time.	
a) droughts	b) floods
c) currants	d) currents
fell to t نجفة fell to t	he floor with abang and we were scared.
a) loud	b) noisy
c) relaxing	d) normal

Practise more Vocabulary Practice **General Exercises**

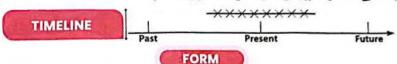
injury.	showed great	to return to the team	after the serious
a) accommodat	tion	b) hesitation	
c) appliance		d) determination	
	d the young athlete to		sin the gym.
	b) labour		
3 The young mot teacher.	ther has a/an	income as she work	ks as a nursery school
a) independent	b) interested	c) intensive	d) confused
4 We share the ea	rth with all living	and have a duty	to preserve its riches.
a) areas	b) creatures	c) regions	d) products
5 Acceptable form	ns of ID include a	passport or a bi	rth certificate.
a) current	b) past	c) luxurious	d) noisy
6 The bus	up passengers outs	ide the airport and t	takes them to the city
centre.			
a) packs	b) gets	c) picks	d) grows
7 It really	me when people expe	ect me to tip as well :	as pay a service charge
in a restaurant.			
	b) deploys		
8 The teacher gav	e each group in the cl	ass a topic	to talk about.
a) specific	b) vague	c) detected	d) vicious
9 It's important fo	r a teacher to balance	punishment with p	ositive
	b) encouragement		
			I well-known authors.
a) shapes	b) formulas	c) extracts	d) recipes
11 The wa	s changing the sheets	s when we got back	to our hotel room.
a) boss	b) coach	c) guard	d) maid
12 In the past, mag	azines used to	novels and short	stories in parts.
	b) devise		
13 The message wa	s written in a/an	code that only	our soldiers could read.
a) noisy	b) secret	c) obvious	d) literate
14 Volunteers built	shelters such	n as tents for the sur	vivors of the forest fires
	ities moved them to f		
	b) constant		d) temporary

1	5 The new head		the of impi	roving the school and he
		b) test	c) race	d) failure
(1			makes it hard to	
-		•	c) investigate	
1			galthough	
~			c) condition	
18			alone after the death	
			c) explaining	
19	The job interv	iew proved to be mu	ch worse than I had i	magined. The synonym
-		nagine" is "".		
	a) fancy	b) explain	c) accept	d) apply
20	Digging in the	garden, the gardene	r camesome	e pieces of bone.
	a) for	b) up	c) across	d) about
21	Experts advise goals.	young people not to	distracted e	asily and focus on their
	a) have	b) take	c) give	d) get
22	Changing the	name of the company	will only lead to	**************
	a) confuse	b) confusion	c) confusable	d) confused
23	You can't expe	ct a four-year-old chil	d to do this difficult t	askhis own.
	a) at	b) on	c) for	d) with
24	The governme people's lives.	nt's and effec	ctive initiatives helpe	d to improve poor
	a) imagine	b) imagination	c) imagines	d) imaginative
25	There's no diffe	rence the tw	o houses. They look e	exactly the same.
	a) on	b) among	c) between	d) inside
26	During my stay	in London, the	family welcomed	me warmly. (Longmon)
	a) guest	b) host	c) hostel	d) hostile
27				ife. (Longman)
			c) determination	
	drought		to survive w	(lanaman)
	a) struggle	b) store	c) stream	d) style
29				; we owe much
	a) movement	b) encouragement	c) discouragement	d) disappointment
30	Could you tell m	ne the name of the	Prime Minister (of England? (Longman)

Language

Present Continuous بتصابع المضارع المستمر

We use the present continuous for things that are happening at the moment of speaking. يُستَخدم المضارع المستَمر للتعبير عن الأشياء التي تحدث في وقت الكلام.



Subj.+ am/is/are + v-ing
The baby is sleeping at the moment.

• Subj.+ am/is/are + not + v-ing
They aren't watching TV at the moment.

• Am/ls/Are + subj. + v-ing? Is he doing his homework?
• Wh- question + is/are + subj. + v-ing? What are you doing?

Passive • Obj. + am/is/are + being + P.P.
Look! The thief is being chased.

الاستخدام USAGE

For actions happening now to say that we are in the middle of the action:

یستخدم للأحداث التي تحدث الآن لنقول إننا في منتصف الحدث.

I'm waiting for the train.

They are playing football.

(The match is not over yet. المباراة حتى الأن)

For actions that are going on around now, but not at the actual moment of speaking: يستخدم لحدث مستمر ولكن ليس بالضرورة في وقت الكلام. She is working hard these days.

A current situation which is different to a past situation: موقف حالى أو حاضر ومختلف عن موقف في الماضي. Young people aren't reading newspapers these days.

للأحداث التى تم الترتيب لما لتحدث فى المستقبل. For fixed arrangements in the near future: الأحداث التى تم الترتيب لما Eaving for Luxor in an hour. (It's been arranged.)

المستخدم مع الكلمات الدالة على المستقبل إذا كان الحدث تم الترتيب له.

Ali is meeting Mr Amgad next Saturday morning.

An action that people do: again and again:

يستخدم مع كلمة always إذا كنا نريد التعبير عن شيء يحدث كثيرًا وأحيانًا يضايق.

- He is always forgetting the car keys at home.
- She is always asking a lot of questions.
- Why is he always playing his guitar?

-The present continuous is used with the following time expressions:

ستخدم المضارع المستمر مع التعبيرات الزمنية الآتية:

now	at the moment) (these days		at present	still	
	nowadays	Look!	Listen!	Take care!	
He is still wor	king.	lt's raining	at the mome	nt.	

Language Check point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	Please, go away,	, I to finish n	ny work.	
-	a) try	b) have tried	c) was trying	d) am trying
2	You are hungry.	Why you ea	ting?	
	a) don't	b) aren't	c) won't	d) didn't
3	You too	fast. Please, slow do	wn.	
	a) drove	b) drive	c) are driving	d) were driving
4	Who Ha	ala to?		
		b) does / speaks	c) did / spoke	d) were / speaking
5	1 to the	dentist tomorrow. I n	nade an appointmer	nt with the nurse.
	a) went	b) have gone	c) am going	d) going
2	State/Stative	verbs		أفعال الثبات/الحالة

- تصف هذه الأفعال حالة ثابتة للشخص وليس الشيء الذي يفعله وهي أفعال غير حركية فمثلا الفعل go به حركة لكن الفعل OWn بمعنى "يملك" ليس به حركة وهذه الأفعال لا تستخدم بعد v. to be ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال:

AND REPORT OF THE PROPERTY OF		
(1) Thoughts and opinions	أفعال تعبر عن الآراء والاعتقادات	think, know, etc.
(2) Feelings and emotions	أفعال تعبر عن المشاعر والعواطف	like, love, etc.
(3) Perception and senses	أفعال تعبر عن الإدراك والحواس	hear, see, etc.
(4) Possessions and measureme	أفعال تعبر عن الملكية والمقاييس nts	belong يخص, have, weigh, etc.

Advanced points

Some verbs have both a stative and an active meaning:

بعض الأنعال لما كل من المعنى الحركي والمعنى غير الحركي وإذا استخدمت في الاستمرار يكون لما معنى مختلف:

Verb	State	Action	
think	ا I think English is easy. هذا اعتقاد وليس تفكيزًا	ا'm thinking about your plan. = ا'm considering. یدبر آمزاایفکر ملیا فی آمر	
have	My brother has a nice car. الخي يملك سيارة لطيفة وليس يتناول.	He's having dinner now. = He is eating now.	
feel	I feel you should take more time. الشعور والإحساس هنا ليس حركيًّا ولكنه مثل الاعتقاد.	She is feeling her way in the dark. = She is finding her way in the dark. تتصسى الطريق باليد أو النظر جيدا	
see	His eyes are so bad. He sees a little. الفعل see هنا بمعنى يرى وليس يقابل.	I'm seeing my lawyer tonight. = I'm visiting/meeting my lawyer tonight.	
love	ا ا love going on holidays to relax. الفعل love يدل على المشاعر لا حركة فيه.	ا'm loving this holiday. = ا'm enjoying; specific محدد الاستمتاع بالإجازة في وقت معين (وسط الحدث)	
look	He looks tired = seems النعل look هذا بمعنى يبدو.	She's looking at some old photographs. = She's examining some old photographs.	
be	Ali is a kind man. الفعــل "يكون" فعل حالة وهو ليس في وقت معين ولكنه دائم.	Ramy is being very kind to me these days. = He's behaving kindly. بتصرف معى هذه الأيام فقط.	
smell	The food smells nice. وانحة الشيء تكون هي حالته.	Why are you smelling your food? = Trying the smell of. حاول شم رائحة شيء.	
weigh	 The meat weighs 2 kilos. يېلغ وزنما ۲کيلو جرام 	He is weighing the meat. یطلیة الوژن یطلیة الوژن	

ولنفهم الفرق بين الأفعال جيدًا نتأمل المثال الأتى:

The soup tastes nice. I'm tasting the soup now. غالحالة التي عليها الشَّرية هي أنها جيدة ولها مناق جميل وهذا شيء ثابت لا حركة فيه. أما أنا فيصدر مني حدث وليس حالة وهو أني أقوم بالتنوق لكي أعرف دالة الشورية وهنا يكون الاستمرار.



Language General Exercises

•	1 Turn	the TV off. No oneit!		
	a) wa	atches	b) isn't watching	
	c) is v	watching	d) watched	
	2 A:W	here's Nada? B: Shea t	tennis match.	
	a) pla	ayed	b) is playing	
	c) ha	s played	d) plays	
	3 Most	scientists that the wo	orld is getting hotter.	
	a) be	lieve	b) are believed	
	c) are	believing	d) will believe	
Ì	4 Look	! How fast that lorry		
	a) go		b) went	
	c) go	es	d) is going	
Ì	5 Maria	am is busy at the moment. She	e her hair.	
	a) wa	sh	b) washes	
	c) is v	vashing	d) has washed	
	6 Ilike	reading science fiction stories,	, but my brothers	sport.
	a) like		b) are liking	
	c) like	25	d) has liked	
	7 They	re hungry. They somet	thing to eat.	
	a) wa	nts	b) want	
	c) are	wanting	d) were wanting	
	8 Stress	high blood pressure.		
-	a) cau	ise a that produce the	b) has caused	
200	c) is c	ausing	d) causes	
	9 Every	thing is arranged for my travel	next Saturday. This mean	s Inext
	Satur	day.		
	a) trav		b) will travel	
	ports of	travelling	d) was travelling	
- 64	10 The sl	cygrey and the wind is	blowing. I think it is going	g to rain.
	a) loo		b) isn't looking	
	c) has	looked	d) will look	
	a famous on the same			

11 You haven't said a word all morni	ng. What about?
a) you think	b) do you think
c) you do think	d) are you thinking
12 The famous footballer is coming to	to visit our village, and Ihe's very rich.
a) hearing	b) hear
c) am hearing	d) will hear
13 You computer games. You	u should do something more active.
a) always played	b) always plays
c) always playing	d) 're always playing
14 If you this comic book, I'd	
a) don't read	b) aren't reading
c) read	d) were reading
15 Something different - Ar	
a) seem	b) had seemed
c) seems	d) is seeming
16 We for my brother's birtl	
a) are preparing	b) prepare
c) have prepared	d) prepared
17 When my brother has a bad cold	
a) tasting	b) is tasting
c) tasted	d) tastes
18 Kareem's a policeman, but he	a uniform today.
a) isn't wearing	b) wears
c) doesn't wear	d) no wear
19 He more money than h	e can afford to pay.
a) is owing	b) owed
c) owes	d) was owing
20 How many children?	
a) do you have	b) are you having
c) are you have	d) do you have got
21 the fish now. It	five kilos.
a) am weighing/is weighing	b) weigh/is weighing
c) weigh (weighs	d) am weighing/weighs

22	Which sentence of the following is	grammatically correct?				
	a) I'm usually brushing my teeth at the moment.					
	b) My brother is wanting to look for a better job these days.					
	c) We are meeting on Monday to disc	cuss some problems.				
	d) I don't eat breakfast this morning.					
23	One of the following is grammatical	ly correct?				
	a) I'm knowing that he came yesterda	ıy.				
	b) I'm thinking of taking a vacation.					
	c) "Enormous" is meaning "very big".					
	d) "2 + 2" is equaling "1 + 3".					
24	Some men are waiting outside for yo	ou				
	a) at that time	b) at the moment				
	c) yesterday	d) recently				
25		A: "What is Osama doing at the moment?" B:				
	a) He is tasting the food.					
	b) He weighs the fish he has just bought.					
	c) He is looking ill.					
	d) He is thinking that his teacher is ger	nius.				
26	Where have you arranged to spend t	he summer holiday?				
	I two weeks in Sharm El-Sheil	kh next summer.	Hon .			
	a) going to spend	b) had spent				
	c) will spend	d) am spending				
27	I have already confirmed the reservat	ion; I to Rome tomorrow.	flon »			
	a) will fly b) was flying	c) had flown d) am flyi	ng			
28	You to loud music. This is ann	noying; I can't concentrate on my	lessons.			
			Home			
	a) always listened	b) are always listening				
7	c) always are listening	d) are always listened				
29	Look! Bassem up his room. He	is always active.	Congnum			
	a) is tidying	b) was tidying				
	c) had tidled	d) would tidy				
30	a wonderful time in the villag	e. Everyone is really nice.	(tongman)			
	a) am not having	b) going to have				
	c) had had to the state of the	ell aga barriaga				



Vocabulary					
1 Paris is the	city for the next Ol	ympic Games in 2024			
a) guest	b) helpless you from your hom	c) strange	d) host		
2 If the TV is	you from your hom	ework, you should to	urn it off.		
a) distracting	b) dispensing ard work led the busines	c) respecting	d) distressing		
3 and ha	ard work led the busines	sman from poverty to	o success and wealth.		
a) Affectation	b) Determination	c) Deterioration	d) Condensation		
4 Some very we	ll-known Egyptian footb	pallers have gone to	clubs		
a) broad	b) board s someone who does a	c) abroad	d) aboard		
5 A/Ani	s someone who does a	job willingly withou	t being paid.		
a) employee	b) spectator new, fine modern	c) engineer	d) volunteer		
6 Damietta has a	new, fine modern	for all ships that he	lps the local economy.		
a) warehouse	b) harbour	c) store	d) garage		
7 The country's	b) harbour citizens are asked to	the great effor	rts of the government		
to improve tra					
	b) threaten	c) support	d) ignore		
B My grandfathe	er can't many a	ctivities as he is very	old.		
a) perform	b) repair	c) make	d) reform		
The doctors ar	a) perform b) repair c) make d) reform The doctors are that the patient will make a full recovery after				
	the successful operation.				
	b) confident	c) desperate	d) ignorant		
	I that I used to I				
al days	b) made	c) did	d) got		
4 The governme	ent is trying hard to he	In families who have	e no after		
the earthquak		ip tarrings who have			
	ie.	hat distriction			
a) reliance		b) detection	Luxes		
c) intention	1 . 11.1 1166	d) accommodat			
12 People are	about all the diffe	erent labels on tood	these days as they		
contain a lot o	of data.				
a) certain	b) developed	c) confused	d) imaginative		
	makes it hard to concer	itrate. The synonym	of the verb "concentra		
is"					
a) focus	b) ignore	c) neglect	d) defy		
14 The company	's financial situ	iation is not good, s	o they will apply for		
a bank loan.		-			
	b) current	c) future	d) popular		

	"explore" is			
	a) explores	b) exploration	c) explorer	d) exploratory
	Language			
16	the ca	pital city of Spain?		
	a) Are you kno		b) Do you kno	W
	c) Are you know		d) Do you know	
7		for a qualifie		
		b) advertised		
8		can work as both		
		b) believe		
9	that ou	r team will win the r	next match?	
	a) Were you be	lieving	b) Are you belie	eving
	c) Will you belie	eve	d) Are you beliedd) Do you belied	eve
0	I'm angry beca	use you the	door open.	
		b) are always leav		d) are left
1		at she will be better		
	a) is being hope	ed b) is hoping	c) hopes	d) hoping
2		me to leave." OK, I		
	a) am come		c) coming	d) am coming
3		g the zoo on Saturda	y. This means that th	ney
	a) have arrange	d everything	b) haven't decid	led yet
	c) are in the zoo	now	d) are still thinki	ng of going there
4	She to !	her boss. I'll tell her ye	ou phoned.	
		b) talks		
5		each other around		
	a) chased	b) chasing	c) are chasing	d) are chased
6	Tarek's good at	golf, but hev	ery often.	
	a) doesn't play	b) won't play	c) didn't play	d) isn't playing
7.	Please, be quiet	. My baby		
	a) is slept	b) sleeps	c) slept	d) is sleeping
8	Sohila is very cle	ever. Sheseve	en different language	25.
	a) is speaking	b) was speaking	c) speaks	d) has spoken
9		er every morning.	•	
,			c) have got	d) was having
0,		e following is gramm		
		ig a good time?	•	uge house.
		ning a robot.	3	g at the photo album





Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

accent (n)*	لكنة/لمجة	meal (n)	وجبة
celebrate (v) (d)	يحتفل	mention (v) (ed)	يذكر
communication (n)	اتصال/تواصل	organise (v) (d)	ينظم
conversation (n)	محادثة	phrase (n)	عبارة
culture (n)	23152	presentation (n)	عرض تقديمي
decide (v) (d)	يقرر	share (v) (d)	يشارك
diary (n)	يوميات	skill (n)	مهارة
entry (n)	مدخل/تدوین	summarise (v) (d)	يلخص
Greek (adj) (n)	يوناني/اللغة اليونانية	suppose (v) (d)	يفترض/يظن
include (v) (d)	يشمل	text message (n)	رسالة نصية
local (adj)	محلى	unfortunately (adv)	لسوء الحظ
Londoners (n)	اهل (ساكنو) لندن	uniortunately (auv)	

The Russian ambassador spoke English with a foreign accent.

Workbook Vocabulary

amazing (adj)	منهل	passport (n)	جواز سفر
especially (adv)	بخاصة	price (n)	سعر
flight (n)	رحلة جوية	storm (n)	عاصفة
miss (v) (ed)	عقتقد	voice mail (n)	برید صوتی
Parthenon (n)	بارثینون (معبد إغریقی فی أثینا)	weather (n)	الطقس

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	In the past, there remote villages.		nd no means of	with the people in			
			c) communica	tion d) affection			
2			th of their third chile				
-				d) celebrating			
3				usthe furnitur			
			c) snatch				
1			ng problems, but he				
1			c) improved	d) reformed			
5			is Frenchand				
	a Londoner.	offdorf, such lost in	5 1 1C11C11	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,			
		b) degree	c) accent	d) note			
6				/an discovery ir			
	Saggara recently		3,09,313 Have				
			c) amazed	d) awful			
(7)			in myso as not to forget it.				
, ,	a) diary	b) dairy	c) article				
Ω	8 Because of television, many people have lost the art of; they don't ta						
0,	each other more often.						
			c) question	d) conversation			
9			eing while we're here				
3		_	c) suppose				
10			all the carpets in the				
	half	in black i flody offiy,	an the curpets in the	. Shop were sold at			
		b) size	c) weight	d) place			
*	e, price	5/ 5/20	c) weight	a) place			
E	xpressions, Phra	ses & Preposition	IS				
all in	all	على العموم	keep in touch by	یکون علی اتصال بـ			
find	it hard to	يجد من الصعوبة أن	make sure	يتأكد			
from the beginning of		من بدایة	the pros and cons of	مزايا وعيوب			
get b	petter at	يتحسن في	until tomorrow	حتى الغد (عبارة لختام أو وداع)			
famo	ous for	مشمور ب	similar to	مشابه اـ			
learn	about	يعرف/يتعلم عن	stay with	ىقىم مە			

يقيم مع

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
amaze	ينمش/ينمل	amazement	دهشة/نحول	amazing amazed	مدمش/منهل منبخش
		culture	22123	cultural	ثقافي
decide	يقرر	decision	قرار	decisive	حاسم
organise*	ينظم	organisation organiser	منظمة/تنظيم منظم	organised	منظم
present	مقدم	presentation presenter	عرض مقدم	presentation	تقديمي al
summarise	يلخص	summary	ملخص	summarised	مختصر

- They hired a professional to help organise their wedding.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	المرابط Synonym	Antonym 4	المض
amazing	منهل	astonishing/awesome	ordinary/insignifica مية	nt عادى/عديم الأص
celebrate	یحتفل/ یحتفی ہـ	commemorate/honour	condemn/overlook	يدين/يتغاضي عن
decide	يقرر	determine/select	hesitate/postpone	يتردد/يؤجل
include	يشمل/ يتضمن	involve/contain	exclude/ forget	يستبعد/ ينسي
mention	يذكر	declare/name	conceal/ignore	يتجاهل/يخفي
organise	ينظم	arrange/regulate	ruin/disturb	يدمرايزعج
summarise	يلخص ع	sum up/recap	enlarge/expand	يوسع

⁻ Our class is responsible for the organisation of the school party. - In order to do this job well, you have to be very organised. 🍁 🎢

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Employees need to learn how to	organise their work. The adjective of the verb
"organise" is "".	
a) organises	b) organisation
c) organiser	d) organised
2 The show is similar most	quiz shows of most TV channels.
a) to	b) in
c) at	d) of
3 The family gathered to celebrate (Christmas. The antonym of the word "celebrate"
is "".	
a) commemorate	b) honour
c) overlook	d) derive
4 the beginning of my caree	r as a journalist, I've been writing about politics.
a) From	b) In
c) Through	d) By
5 I believe that most students can	better if they are given much support.
a) improvise	b) devise
c) make	d) get
6 The scientist mentioned his wife's	name in his letter. The verb "mention" is
the opposite of the verb "	
a) ignore	b) name
c) honour	d) uncover
7 It is important for doctors to	in touch with the latest developments in
medicine.	
a) do apropriação de la companiona de la	b) make
c) go () () () () () () () () () (d) keep
	o candidates. The synonym of the verb
"decide" is "".	
a) determine	b) hesitate
c) ignore	d) condemn

Reading Text (1)

28th November 2020

I've been in London for six weeks now. It's been a great experience so far, but it hasn't always been easy. When I first arrived, I struggled to understand people, But I'm getting better at understanding their accents now. I enjoy listening to Londoners (2) and trying to have conversations with them. You won't believe what happened to me today! I was talking to a woman in a shop and she asked me if I'm from London! Isn't that amazing?



Everyone I've met has been very kind to me, so I feel really at home here. The host family that I'm staying with are really nice. They really look after me! There's always a hot meal waiting on the table when I get home in the evening and I'm getting used to English food!

المحاث أهل لئين (2 رسالة نصية (3 ينظم ، 4

All in all, I'm really glad that I decided to study in London. I miss my family, but we keep in touch by text message¹ I've become more independent since I've been away. I have

to organise⁽⁴⁾ a lot of things on my own and make sure I have enough money, for example. I'm still learning how to do that, but I'm enjoying it.

Until tomorrow!

Heba

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

Dalida's Diary

Monday

Dear diary

I'm very excited. My parents have bought our tickets to Greece, and tomorrow I'm visiting Judy in Athens. I'm going with Adam. He's very independent and knows what to do in new places. I always enjoy travelling with my older brother.

Tuesday

We struggled to leave the house this morning. Adam's always forgetting things and nearly left his passport behind! But we arrived at the airport on time. I believe the flight was longer than usual because there was a storm, but all in all the journey was not too bad. Now I'm looking out of my window at the buildings of Athens. Isn't that amazing? I wish I could see Judy today, but we arrived very late. We're seeing her tomorrow.

Wednesday

You won't believe what happened to me! I've been to the Parthenon! I think i is one of the oldest buildings in the world! Judy took us there this afternoon. Jud loves Athens now and showed us some amazing places, but I'm too tired to writ more now. Until tomorrow.

Listening Text (1)



يتخيل (1)

يحتفل (2)

مهارات (3)

اتصال/تواصل (4)

لسوء الحظ (5)

Teen girl: Hello everyone. In this presentation, I'm going to talk about the pros and cons of working abroad.

When you first think about working abroad it sounds very exciting. But there are a few disadvantages of working abroad as well as advantages. Let's start with the advantages first.

I believe that the best thing about working abroad is probably that you can learn a lot about another country's culture imagine trying new food every or

country's culture. Imagine⁽¹⁾ trying new food every day and learning about how people from another culture celebrate⁽²⁾.

Another good reason for working abroad is that it helps you to become more independent. Perhaps you feel that you're independent at home, but when you're living far away from home, you really have to be. Finally, I think a further argument for working abroad is that you can learn useful skills⁽³⁾, especially language skills and probably also communication⁽⁴⁾ skills. These skills can help you to get a good job when you come back home.

However, there are clearly disadvantages to working abroad as well. One serious disadvantage is that you will probably be a long way from home and miss your family.

And let's not forget that you may not like the country or city that you move to if it's different to your home.

Unfortunately³, it's sometimes difficult to make friends when you're living abroad too and you might wish you could just go back home and spend time with your old friends.

Listening Text (2) (Workbook)

Judy: Hi Dalida, I imagine you're thinking that I have forgotten you! Don't worry, I haven't! I've just been really busy in my new job here in Greece. Sorry I haven't phoned you before! As you probably know, I'm helping here in a language school. It's the first time I've worked abroad. It's fun sharing a flat with two other women, but I'm not used to cooking, cleaning and shopping every week for myself! I suppose I'm becoming more independent though.

يشاؤك (1) يشترض اينظن (2) يوناشي (2)

Greece is very beautiful and I believe that the weather is quite like Cairo but not so hot! I enjoy hearing Greek is music, and most of the food tastes really good! Some things are different, though. It is more expensive here, and I don't like the prices is of things in the shops!

I'm trying to learn Greek, but it is not easy. When I say something in Greek to people in the shops, they usually answer me in English!

So, I am having a great time, but of course, I miss my friends, especially you. Call me back some time, or I'll call again later. Bye!

Widen Seript

Young people all over the world study at university when they finish their studies at school. They want to find out more about a subject they enjoy, or they study a specific subject to get the job they want.

Some students study at universities near to their homes so they can live with their families. However, in some countries, like the UK and the USA, it's normal for students to leave home and live in accommodation that belongs to their university.

Students often choose to study only one or two subjects at university, and they spend all of their time learning about that subject or subjects. That means they can find out more about specific areas. For example, instead of ³ studying all of biology ⁴, they can just study the biology of plants.

طبیعی ۱۱ الله ۱۲ الله ۱۳ اله ۱۳ اله ۱۳ الله ۱

شمادات (7)

Students complete a 'degree' while studying at university and this can take three or four years. At the end of their studies, they usually have a big celebration with their families and receive their degree certificates.

_			
		43	0.00
11	P1	- 2	UUUU







flight	رحلة جوية	The air hostess helped me to enjoy my flight to London.
voyage	رحلة بحرية	The explorer's voyage on the ocean was amazing.
trip	رحلة قصيرة (لغرض معين)	My father went on a business trip to China to buy new machines.
journey	رحلة طويلة (غالبًا برية)	Although the train journey to Aswan was tiring, we enjoyed the sights.
picnic	نزهة خلوية	City people usually enjoy picnics to the countryside.

	share پشارك أو يتقاسم شـيئًا يمكن تقاسمه بين اثنين أو اكثر	We won the lottery and shared the prize money.
(<u>Q</u>)	divide يقسم الناس أو الأشياء إلى أجزاء	 We divided the food into two equal parts. After his death, his property was divided among his children.
	part يَتَغُرقَ/يُقُسم	The crowd parted to let the happy couple go through. (= separated itself into two parts)
	miss ۱- یفتقد ۲- یفونه (شیء)	 - He missed 20 games after breaking a bone in his wrist. - John will be sorely missed by his family and friends.
3	lose يفقدايخسر (۲۵ (۱۹ ۱۹ ۱۹ ۱۹ ۱۹ ۱۹ ۱۹ ۱۹ ۱۹ ۱۹ ۱۹ ۱۹ ۱۹ ۱	 - Hundreds of people lost their homes in the floods. - Our local basketball team played so badly that they deserved to lose.



Vocabillary Check point 3

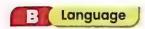
•	or stolen, you must inform your bank immediately		
a) missed	b) gained		
c) lost	d) issued		
2 The plane was badly dama	aged during thefrom Japan to America.		
a) voyage	b) flight		
c) picnic	d) expedition		
3 It was a glorious	yesterday, so we decided to go for a picnic.		
a) weather	b) climate		
c) outlook	d) condition		
4 My sister three d	ays of school when she was sick last month.		
a) gave	b) lost		
c) missed	d) shared		
5 The conference is a good	place toinformation and exchange ideas.		
a) swear	b) divide		
c) share	d) part		



Vocabulary General Exercises

1	The charts and g	graphs helped me	understand the scienc	e teacher's
	about the new le			D. Jan taktara
	a) appearance	b) revolution	c) presentation	d) deviation
2	There are only the	rreea day	to New York Airport f	rom Cairo.
	a) flights	b) voyages	c) picnics	d) fights
3	1 that al	I the tickets of the	new movie have been	sold now.
		b) suppose		d) reply
4	Many people ad	vertise their cars in	thenewspap	er which comes out on
	Fridays.			
		b) private	c) local	d) whole
5	The books were	on the sh	elves according to thei	r size in our school
-	library.		circs according to another	
		h) celebrated	c) wasted	d) organised
6	The new coach	of the team speaks	English with a French	as he is from
0	Switzerland.	of the team speaks	English With a Ficher	
		b) dialogue	c) conversation	d) presentation
-	The report we re	soived in Decemb	erall the repo	rts of the previous
1	months.	ceived in Decemb	er all the repo	to or the provides
	months.	h) summarisad	c) realised	d) nuzzled
	a) damaged	D) Summansed	c) lealiseu	e kids don't lose touch
8	Most Egyptians i	n America speak Ar	abic at nome so that the	e klas don close toden
		age and	c) accent	d) phrase
	a) culture	b) economy	e his dispuyer on Octo	her 10th the day
9	The last	the soluler made i	n his diary was on Octo	ber 10 , the day
	before his death.) multi-res	d) skill
	a) enter	b) entry	c) culture	a) skill
10	As she was very	busy at the meetir	ng, my mum just sent r	ne a text to
		prother from school		D
p-1	a) massage	b) passage	c) message	a) messenger
.11			oda day, you're	e less likely to snack
	on biscuits and c	risps.		
	a) mails	b) recipes	c) sandwiches	d) meals
12		both Briti	sh and American spellir	ngs of words in
	the meantime.			
	a) consist	b) exclude	c) include	d) enclose
13	The manager	that he would	be out of the office the	e following day for
	a meeting.	4.5		
	a) reminded	b) mentioned	c) recommended	d) told
	1 monanti di mini a			

▶ 14	Hackers may	all a company emplo	yee and reach their voic	:e
	a) mail	b) note	c) passage violentstruck t	d) device
15	Twenty people	e were killed when a	violent struck t	he American Coast.
	a) air	b) draught	c) breeze	d) storm
16	Stormy	prevented any pla	c) breeze y in today's tennis Wimb	oledon matches.
	a) climate	b) weather	c) atmosphere	d) warming
17	A poor grain h	arvest can lead to high	gher food in ma	ny parts of the world.
	a) products	b) prices	c) qualities	d) values
18	The company	hopes to reach a	about the new project	ct as soon as possible.
	a) decide	b) decided	c) decision ast year, but allall	d) decisive
19	We suffered m	uch at the company l	ast year, but allall	it had been a success.
	a) at	b) in	c) for	d) off
20	My little broth	er it hard to	learn swimming althou	igh he has been
	training for tw	o weeks.		
	a) finds	b) takes	c) gets	d) devices
21	I bought some	new shoes which ar	c) gets re very similar	a pair I had before.
	a) from	b) or	C) IR	a) to
22	Father organise	ed a car to meet me	at the airport. The sync	nym of the verb
	"organise" is "	# 000000000000000000000000000000000000		
	a) explain	b) waste	c) damage	d) arrange
23	Da Vinci is espe	cially famous	his portrait of the M	lona Lisa
	a) about	b) of	c) for	d) at
24	My teacher told	d me that I have an .	ability to learn	new languages.
	a) amaze	b) amazing	c) amazed	d) amazement
25	The visit to Asv	van was really amazi	ing as I liked it much. T	he antonym of
	al	manino"lad	AR .	
	a) ordinary	b) fantastic	c) puzzled	d) accepted
26	After two mont	ths at the course, my	c) puzzled y friend is bet	ter at English.
	a) baying	bi taking	c) di\ ind	o getting
27	At the music fe	stival, you can have	fun and learn	. music at the same
	time.			
	a) at	b) out	c) about	d) at
28	The musician's	performance was re	eally amazing. "Amazin	g" is a synonym for
	4			
	a) difficult	b) awesome	c) ordinary	d) boring
29	I don't want yo	u to expand the ma	ain idea; I just want yo	u to the main
	points.	•		150
	a) ston	b) refuse	c) summarise	d) clarify
30	The manager h	as made a	to decrease the numb	er of workers to face
	the financial or	oblems the compar	ov faces.	
	•	•	c) oppression	d) commission
	a) repetition	b) decision	c) opplession	a) Commission





Present Continuous and Present Simple

المضارع المستمر والبسيط

وللوصول للفهم الحقيقى لأزمنة المضارع يجب التفرقة بين زمنى المضارع البسيط والمضارع المستمر لأن الأفعال غير الحركية لا تأتى في المضارع المستمر وتأتى في المضارع البسيط.

Present continuous	Present simple
الأن Now It's raining at the moment. I'm watching this programme. Look! This man is taking a photo of you.	Always دائما It always rains in winter. I watch television most weekends. He takeslots of photos. He's a photographer,
مؤقت Temporary ا'm working at a sports shop for six weeks. They are living in a small flat these days.	ermanent دائم I work at a sports shop. It's permanent. They live in a very nice flat.

2

Stative verbs

أفعال الثبات/الحالة

- 1. Most stative verbs are not usually used in the present continuous even when they describe a situation that is happening now:
 - ١- لا تُستخدم معظم أفعال الحالة عادة في المضارع المستمر حتى عندما تصف موقفًا يحدث الآن:
- He wants fish for dinner. He seems to be tired now.
- He needs to buy a large flat.

- ويمكن تقسيم أفعال الحالة حسب نوعها كالأتي:

Perception and	feel	یشعر ہـ	see	یری	observe	يلاحظ
rerception and senses الإدراك والإحساس	hear	يسمع	smell	يشم	perceive	يدرك
	notice	يلاحظ	taste	يتذوق		

	like	بعب	admire	يعجب ب	detest	يمقت
	love	يحب	adore	يعشق	envy	يصد
Emotions العواطف	hate	يكره	appreciate	يقنز	fear	يخلف
	dislike	يكره	care	يعتم	trust	يثق غي
	regret	يندم	respect	يحترم	pity	يشفق
	agree	يوافق	expect	يتوقع	suppose	يفترض
	disagree	يعترض	guess	يخمن	suspect	يشك
	believe	يعتقد	hesitate	يترىد	think	يعتقد
	disbelieve	لا يصدق	imagine	يتخيل	understand	يفعم
Mental states الحالات العقلية	know	يعرف	mean	يعنى	wonder	يتساءل
	mind	يمانع	presume	يفترض	see	یری
	find	يجد	realise	يدرك	doubt	يشك
	consider	يعتبر	recognise	يتعرف على	forget	ينسى
	estimate	يذمن/يقدر	remember	يتذكر		
	appear	يظهر	resemble	يشبه	represent	يرمز
Appearance	be	يكون	seem	يبدو	look	يبدو
and value	cost	يكلف	signify	يشير/يفيد	matter	يهم/يؤثر
المظهر والقيمة	equal	يساوي	sound	يبدو	weigh	يزن
	exist	يوجد				
	belong	يخص	have	يملك	possess	يمتلك
Possessions الملكية	contain	يحتوى على	own	يمتلك	include	يتضمن
es established to	lack	ينقص				
Wants and	hope	يأمل	prefer	يفضل	wish	يتمنى
preferences الإرادة والتفضيل	need	يحتاج	want	يريد	desire	يرغب

2. Some verbs of feeling can be used in both the simple and continuous with no change in meaning:

رد يمكن استخدام بعض أفعال المشاعر في المضارع البسيط والمضارع المستمر دون تغيير في المعنى ومنها /feel/ache hurt/look:

You look/are looking nice today.

My back hurts/is hurting again. I must go to the doctor.

Do you feel/Are you feeling OK today?

3. With verbs which describe a sense, we use the simple form or can/could + verb.

٣- مع الأفعال التي تصف الحواس يمكن استخدام الشكل البسيط أو .can/could + inf:

I can smell the fertiliser. Are we in the countryside now?

I can hear someone screaming outside. What is happening?



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I need my CD player if you _	it at the moment.
a) don't using	b) use
c) aren't using	d) don't use
2 I know Hala's flat, but I	her phone number.
a) don't remember	b) remember
c) am not remembering	d) remembering
3 Don't phone him now as he.	lunch.
a) was having	b) has had
c) has	d) is having
· 4 My friend pleased. S	omething good must have happened.
a) look	b) looks
c) will look	d) looking
5 A: on the phone? B:	No, he is doing his homework right now
a) Does Ramy talk	b) Has Ramy talked
c) Is Ramy talking	d) Can Ramy talk



1	She can't do he	r shopping at the mon	nent because it	heavily.
	a) is raining	b) rains	c) will rain	d) isn't raining
2	This is the new	camera I bought last v	veek. I a photo	o of you now.
	a) take	b) took	c) 'm taking	d) had taken
3	My uncle	as an engineer. It is	s his permanent job.	
	a) is working	b) work	c) had worked	d) works
4	My father	hard these days as	s he needs money for o	our school fees.
	a) worked	b) is working	c) had worked	d) works
5	He can't make a	sound decision as he	of many thir	ngs.
	a) is thinking	b) thinks	c) was thinking	d) thought
6	1 it's to	o late to apply for that	t job now.	
	a) supposes	b) supposing	c) am supposing	d) suppose
7	I know that our	team are practising h	ard these days. They	to win
	the cup.			
	a) wanting	b) are wanting	c) want	d) wanted
8	Why don't you	wait for Ali in the livin	g room? He	a shower.
	a) had had	b) is having	c) have	d) has
9	You aren't caref	ful; you the s	ame mistake again.	
	a) are always m	aking	b) making	
	c) had made		d) won't make	
10	A: Have you for	und a house yet?		
	B: No, I	with my uncle at th	e moment.	
	a) will stay	b) stayed	c) stay	d) 'm staying
11	More and more	people the	ir rubbish nowadays	•
	a) recycling	b) are recycling	c) recycled	d) will recycle
12		tervery help	•	<u>.</u> i
	a) is	b) is been	c) is being	d) was been

13 Look! The girls are running to cate	th the bus. They to be in a nurry,	▶ 22 One of the foll	owing is incorrectly	etructuradi			
a) seemed	b) seem	i					
c) are seeming	d) are seemed	a) The house smells very good when we bake cakes b) I taste the soup now to see if it needs salt					
14 Asmaavery happy at the	14 Asmaavery happy at the moment.			doesn't smell bad			
a) isn't seeming	b) is seeming	d) What does ":		Joeshie Jilien Bad			
c) doesn't seem	d) seemed		these days and I wa	int to have a rest.			
15 I of going to London and	a) am feeling		c) can feel	d) was feeling			
a) am thinking	b) was thinking	24 A: What is the	matter with you?		-		
c) am thought	d) thinking	B:					
16 A: I am thinking of visiting Hazem				o the party next week			
B: Don't bother. Ihe's on			some money to buy				
a) am thinking		well and I'm forgettir	_				
c) thought	b) thinking d) think	d) I have a bad cold and I'm seeing the doctor tonight					
3	on the island. Shea really good time,	25 Can you go downtown with me right now? a) No, I eat lunch.					
a) will have	b) had	b) No, I take ca					
c) is having	d) has	1	ing for a phone call.				
18 My father an apple now. I	-,	d) No, I'm understanding my lessons. 26 The weather is very nice here in winter. The sun to be shining on most					
a) is eating/eats	b) eats/is eating						
c) eating/eats	d) ate/is eating	days.			dunsma		
19 He always while he		a) is seeming	b) seem	c) seems	d) had seemed		
	b) sings/is having	27 Hatem wants	to travel to China, b	ut heenough	Chinese at the moment		
a) sing/has	d) sang/is having						
c) is singing/has		a) doesn't kno		b) isn't knowing	9		
20. One of the following questions is g	•	c) hadn't knov		d) don't know			
a) Is he waiting for the bus on the co		28 We are having			showing		
b) Is he often going to the park yet?		a) order	b) action	c) sense	d) command		
c) Is he having a beautiful house by		·	confirmed the rese	ervation; I to	Rome tomorrow.		
d) Is he having a meeting at the office		a) will fly		b) was flying			
21 A: Why the sauce? Does it	need more pepper?	c) had flown		d) am flying			
B: No. It great the way it is			•	e. I you so mu	uch.		
a) do you taste/tastes	b) do you taste/is tasting	a) am missing		b) miss			
c) are you tasting/tastes	d) are you tasting/is tasting	c) had missed	i	d) going to n	niss		

Test yourself alest



Part 2 (Lessons 3 & 4)

)	Vocabulary			
1	In Egypt, many	wives don't	their husbands' love	e of sport.
	a) share	b) divide	c) part	d) insist
2	In this course, s	tudents will have t	he opportunity to lear	n a lot of practical
	000000480440408000			
			c) roles	
3	The tour office's	staff will do their l	best to sure the t	tourists enjoy their visit,
	a) do	b) take	c) make	d) lose
4	The driver was	so distracted that I	he the turn ar	nd had to go back after
	two kilometers.			
	a) devised	b) followed	c) lost	d) missed
5	The rich couple	their 10th	wedding anniversary i	n Paris.
	a) invited	b) celebrated	c) ratified	d) mentioned
6	The encycloped	lia includes the nan	nes of all Nobel Prize w	d) mentioned vinners. The antonym of
	the verb "includ	le" is "".		
	a) exclude	b) involve	c) derive	d) relieve
7	The tourist had	a foreign	c) derive although he can speak	a little Arabic.
	a) detection	b) culture	c) accent he Military Museum is	d) intention
8	On the 6th of Oc	tober, to ti	he Military Museum is	free celebrating
	the Victory Day.			
	a) enter	b) entry	c) exit	d) existence ane suddenly crashed.
9	Thered	order should help t	to establish why the pl	ane suddenly crashed.
	a) voyage	b) manual	c) flight	d) picnic
10	I hung up the pl	none as I saw no po	int in continuing the	with
	the customer se			
			c) intonation	
11	,	it the new system	a number of	recommendations to
	make it better.			15
	a) consists	b) includes	c) researches	d) encloses
12	In our	t is not proper to as	k anyone how much tl	ney earn.
	a) culture	b) adventure	c) capture	d) texture is name in all his talks.
13	My neighbour se	ems very proud or r	nis son as nen	is name in all his talks.
1	a) reminds	b) mentions	c) calls	d) teaches
14,	l asked the teach	er to the m	ost important points ir	the grammar lesson.
45	a) nationalise	b) provide	c) summarise	d) realise
10	the weather was	nt very good durin	g our trip, but all	all, we enjoyed it.
	a) at	D) IOI	c) about	d) in

	Language				
16	Ramyhis	music very loud. I ca	ın't sleep.		
	a) plays	b) played	c) has played	d) is playing	
17	A: Why is Hamdy	being so rude today	?		
	B: I have no idea.	Heusually v	ery polite.		
	a) was	b) is being	c) is	d) being	
18		sfied. He			
	a) 's always comple	aining	b) complain		
	c) complaining		d) is complain		
19	A: I see you	a new mobile ph	one.		
			standing how it works		
		b) having	c) has	d) have	
20		to open the		Danier	
	a) tries	b) is trying	c) was trying	d) trying	
21	A: Why are you lo	oking at the sky?			
	B: It as if		N 1 1 A	d) looking	
	a) looks	b) looking	c) looked	d) was looking	
22	I the mea	aning of that word.	1. \ -11 \1	- 4	
	a) not understand		b) don't understand		
	c) am not underst	anding	d) understanding		
23	I must go now. It .		a) matting	d) not	
		b) gets	c) getting	d) get	
24	I to know	v more about the jo	b before I decide wh	ether to apply for it.	
	a) am needing	b) have needed	c) need	d) needing	
25	My daughter	fond of eating	rast roods.	d) to always	
	a) always is being	b) is always being	c) always is	d) is always	
26		jeans, but toda	y he is wearing a sui	T.	
		b) had worn	c) wears	d) wearing	
27			ead the small words		
		b) isn't wearing	c) doesn't wear	d) is wearing	
28		ing is correctly stru			
			b) Is she liking to	o go shopping?	
	c) I'm hating to dr		d) Nader works	at a hotel for a week.	
29	A: What is Ahmed	d doing there?			
	B: He				
	a) is finding the d	octor's clinic		is trying to find a doctor	
	c) looks for the do	octor's clinic	d) finds the do	ctor's clinic	
30	He usually	coffee, but toda	y hetea.		
	a) drank / is drink		b) drunk / drin	ks	
	c) drinks / is drink		d) drinks / was	drinking	



Lessons 5 & 6



المراجع الشرح والتدريبات معاددها المسارات في الرجوع تملحق المسارات.

A diary entry تدوينة مذكرات

Imagine that you are going to visit or have just visited a place for the first time. Write a diary entry for three days.

Writing tips

Write about the day before you go to the place.

Describe the day you arrive at the place.

Write about the next day.

Thursday

I'm very excited to start our holiday in France. My father has just bought the ticket to Paris. I have already packed my bag before that. I'm travelling with my parents and my brother. This is my first trip abroad and I have been looking for this trip for a long time.

Friday

We arrived in Paris late at night.
The hotel where we are staying is very nice. Although it isn't a five-star hotel, the rooms are nice and the staffs are all friendly. Tomorrow, we are starting our tour. We are going to the Eiffel Tower. I can't wait until tomorrow.

Saturday

We visited the Eiffel Tower this morning. We climbed the tower and enjoyed the view of Paris from the top. Isn't that amazing? The lunch we had at the restaurant at the tower was marvellous. We took a lot of photos there.





Skills Exercises

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Plants are important to us. All the food that we eat comes either directly or indirectly from plants. However, the question is, what do plants eat? Well, they do not actually 'eat the way we do, but they make their own food. The process by which this takes place is called photosynthesis. Plants make food in their leaves. The leaves contain a pigment called chlorophyll which gives the leaves their green colour. Besides chlorophyll, plants also need the light from the sun to help in their food production. Besides the sun, plants can also make food with the use of other light sources such as a light bulb. For photosynthesis to take place, plants also need carbon dioxide that is found in the air. Animals and people help in providing carbon dioxide for the plants to make food when they breatne out . Lastly, but just as important, plants make use of their roots to absorb the nutrients found in the soil to help them make food. When all these different things are present, plants can then make food. In the process of making food, plants release oxygen, which is beneficial to animals and people. Plants, animals and people are dependent on one another to survive, plants provide oxygen for animals and people to breathe, and animals and people provide carbon dioxide for the plants to make food.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Where does photosynthesis take place?

a) In the plants' leaves.
b) In the plants' trunk.
c) In the plants' roots.
d) In the plants' fruit.

2 What does the pigment in the tree do?

a) It gives chlorophyll. b) It gives the leaves their colour.

c) It gives the tree its food.

d) It gives us oxygen.

3 Animals and people provide carbon dioxide for the plants to _____.

a) kill them b) absorb nutnents found in the soil

c) colour the leaves d) help them make their food

4 The antonym of the word "providing" is "_____."

a) offering b) delivering

c) withdrawing d) making available











A county from the south of the state of the

month part of the second of the part of the second of the

A distant was received and rightly think with their court betrieve than

and the second of the second s

endingly on Additional and land of interpt offer

6,1016 1 1111 .

10, 1014, 1 10- 19 14 1/11/11

A browner and the and property of the second property and the second property of the second

. I's house the convert Andrie translations.

- A three-body absented has many beautifule for paring prouple it can be be there there we receive a conference investable modern mediants of reducation and replain the receive account them.
 - p) that better every thepto the it, it become effere bettered election and earlies and dear a breaken
 - man and a state of the state of
 - 4) the extension of the first the state of the second of t
 - where & street too were the tree & o'retrieved to the rest of the pull of the
- * We all one much to a lentists who are working hard to discover move to hindures to cure latal diseases. This will lead to helping people suffer less.
 - الله المدر والعامد العلماء الله في يعملها ويستعفيه أحداد المدرد عديدة المسامة الأمداد والمصفة معذا صعف يضعد المر والغام الدامر ومرم العامل المعاناة
 - ef) moditions of included the anguarders was trated in the series the attack the series and the advance included the series and the series are series and the series and the series are series and t
 - ع) الخلال ومن المحاولة اللون يعملون بنبذ الاستشارة أن الهديد بدو لمعاليف الأمرادي المحيث مغذا سعاده بالحد إلى مساورة المحاردة ال
 - ويال مهلي د گهند ا نهم شده رسال بنداده في الميداله سالة بي يوم بي بيال بين أن الحليف يصبي ومهم موريد الما الماهال بيا ۱۱ الماهدا و ۱۱ الماهد (و) ويال مهلي د گهند ا نهم شده رسال بنداده في الميداله بي يوم بي بيال بين أن الحليف على ومهم ويوند الماهدال وي واد
- 3 The Project of the New Administrative Capital is a massive project which will move Europt to new horizons. It also will create a great number of jobs for young people.
 - أ) مشروع المدينة الإدارية الجديدة فو مشروع ضخم سينقل مسر إلى أقاق جديدة وأبخث سيحلق عدنًا مباسبًا عن فيص العمل للشباب.
 - ر]). مشيروع العاميمة الإدارية الجديدة هو مشيروع ضخم سينقل مصير إلى أقاق كذيدة. وأينت سيطق عدنًا كبيرًا من فيض العمل للشباب.
 - مشسروع العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة هو برنامج ضحم سينقل مصر إلى أفاق واسعة. وأيغشا سيخلق دذا كيباً عن قيمن العمل للشجاب.
 - d مشروع الماسمة الإدارية الجديدة مو فكرة سخمة سينقل مسر إلى أقاق جديدة. وأيمنا سيحلق عدةا كبيرًا من فرص الممل للأحيال.

A transfer to many has been an in a transfer to the telegraph for at 1800 of 1

a with statement dement pour south is expend to appril come as it corpores proves at the statement of the common partie in and bus greater at the second control.

to the second of the second of the second

The second of the first that the second of the second

(184) I become the exception of Decoglish bearingwhiters

A compared to the second term is a second to the second to

not there is to pro-appropriately and the representation of the second s

In Course of the opposed to expense to each expense of each engine of the engine of th

A france part of particle repair to be a true in correspondences of an analysis of the property of the particle of the particl

All tames primary an experience of the experience of the series of the s

To an estate of the same and estate entire the hart according to the same of the hart the major page

n) In the part, many surfaces of exert in aprile of entraction of exercise some states of exercises from present of the entraction of the

b) In the past, few students charge franch or none as entering the entering the same opportunities.

The provide the same opportunities.

c) In the past, many students cross france in the past, or representative at famous universities. However, marketing representative services are completed to provide the same works.

d) In the past, many students chase fixe grow and are second exercised at famous universities. However, modern or versites have seen as all provide the same apportunities.

ه يجب أن نشجع الشباب على الالتحاق بالنوادى الرياضية التي تسهم في توجيعهم للطريق الصواب وتحميهم من مخاطر التطرف والإرهاب.

- a) We should encourage young people to join sports clubs which contribute to guiding them to the right path and protect them from the dangers of extremism and terrorism
- b) We should encourage young people to join sports clubs which contribute to serving them to the right path and protect them from the dangers of tourism and terrorism.
- c) We should discourage young people to join sports clubs which mislead to guiding them to the right path and protect them from the risks of extremism and terrorism
- d) We should encourage young people to avoid sports clubs which contribute to guiding them to the right path and develop them from the dangers of extremism and terrorism
 - و) يعتقد بعض الخبراء أنه يجب على الطالب أن يلتحق بالكلية التى تناسب قدراته ومواهبه لأن ذلك سوف بمكنه من أن يتفوق فيها وبحقق أعلى الدرجات.
- a) Some experts believe that the student must join the college that suits his/ her abilities and talents because that will enable him/her to excel and achieve the highest grades
- b) Some experts believe that the student must enjoy the college that suits his/her abilities and talents because that will enable him/her to excel and achieve the highest grades.
- c) Some specialists believe that the student must join the college that suits his/her abilities and talents because that will enable him/her to excel and achieve the highest grades.
- d) Some experts believe that the student must join the colleague that suits his/her abilities and talents because that will enable him/her to excel and achieve the highest degrees.
 - 10 تعمـل الحكومـة على تطوير الرعاية الصحية للمواطنين؛ لأن ذلك ســـيؤدى إلى زيادة الإنتاج وتنمية الاقتصاد لكن ذلك قد يستغرق سنوات من أجل إصلاح النظم الصحية.
- a) The government is working on developing health care for citizens because this will lead to decreasing production and developing economy. However, this may take years to inform health care systems.
- b) The government is working on developing health care for tourists because this will lead to increasing production and developing economy. But, this would take years to reform health care systems.
- c) The government is working on producing health care for citizens because this will lead to increasing production and developing economy. However, this may take years to reform health care styles.
- d) The government is working on developing health care for citizens because this will lead to increasing production and developing economy. But, this may take years to reform health care systems.
- Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Having a lot of money does not always bring happiness."

Lused mor	~	Lused the right structure.	96	I used a topic sentence.	96	I wrote the conclusion.	90	I used the right punctuation.	-
**********	with the same of t	- succione		sentence.		conclusion.	ノて	punctuation.	j



1	The President m	ade a speech express	ing his to rel	ouild the economy.		
	a) appearance	b) determination	c) avoidance	d) facilitation		
2	You must read th	ne dictionary	carefully to know the	e distinction between		
	these two words.					
	a) enters		c) exits			
3	The businessman	n has two big flats in :	Sharm El Sheikh, not	to his villa in		
	6th October city.					
	a) remember	b) remind	c) mention	d) study		
4	The secretary wr	ote down the confere	ence date in the man	ager's		
	a) diary	b) dairy	c) article	d) title		
5	It is easy to	distracted if you a		lren playing around.		
	a) have	b) do	c) gain	d) get		
6	The police report	t mentioned some of	the criminal's helpe	rs. The synonym of		
	the verb "mention" is "".					
	a) doubt	b) deny	c) name	d) improve		
7	I'm so happy, Em	ad! My parents and I	on holiday n	ext week.		
	a) have gone	b) are going	c) go	d) went		
8	Galal to g	go home right now.				
	a) wants	b) want	c) is wanting	d) has wanted		
9	Mr Hossam	accurate. He gives	the correct and true	e details.		
	a) is always being		b) always is			
	c) is always		d) has always			
10	I that the	situation is out of co	ntrol.			
	a) 'm seeing	b) will see	c) sees	d) see		
11	Samy and Waleed	dhard these	days.			
	a) study	b) are studying	c) have studied	d) will study		
12	Isomethi	ng outside. Are the d	loors locked?			
	a) am hearing	b) hearing	c) hears	d) can hear		

•	13	I taking early retireme	nt. This is something I'm thinking about now				
		a) 'm considering	b) considering				
		c) considered	d) consider				
	14	4 Which one of the following is grammatically correct?					
		a) They are having a nice house.					
1		b) She usually isn't having a good time shopping.					
		c) People like Ahmed because he is being polite.					
		d) We don't have a lot of fun go	ing to the dentist.				

15 He can't come tomorrow as hea meeting with a foreign delegation at his office.

a) has

b) had to have

c) is having

d) always has

▶ Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The bell rang. Miss Fareeda had just finished explaining the last sum to the class. Before she could say another word, some of the students stood up. They were ready to head to the canteen. Miss Fareeda told them <u>sternly</u>, "There isn't any need to rush. There's plenty of food and time for you to have your recess⁽¹⁾." She insisted that the class went for their recess in an orderly manner.

However, once she was out of sight, the boys started jostling⁽²⁾ each other down the stairs. There was a lot of pushing, shoving⁽³⁾ and laughing. Suddenly, there was a loud thud⁽⁴⁾ followed by a scream. Everyone on the stairs stopped in their tracks.

It turned out that one of the boys in front had missed a step and fallen. He landed hard on his elbow. The bone jutted (5) out. The boy was whimpering (6) in pain. His friend quickly helped him up and brought him to the office. The principal (7) took one look at the injury and immediately called for an ambulance. While waiting, the other boys in the group were questioned. When told what they were doing on the stairs, the principal shook his head. The injured boy and his friends hung their heads in shame. They apologised for their behaviour. The principal said, "Let this be a lesson to you."

The injured boy was then brought to the hospital. The following week, he returned to school with a cast around his arm.



14a (7

: ا خرج من مكانه

(3) ثمانع

الخبط (6)

الاً تزاحم

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 What was the lesson the class had just before the bell rang?

a) Physics.

b) English.

c) Maths.

d) Chemistry.

17 What caused the loud thud?

a) A boy had fallen down the stairs.

b) Some stairs fell over.

c) There was a fight on the stairs.

d) Some boys were running down the stairs.

18 The boys didn't follow

a) the school rules

b) Mrs. Fareeda's advice

c) the traffic rules

d) the right stairs

19 The antonym of the word "sternly" is ".....

a) firmly

b) severely

c) strictly

d) softly

20 As soon as the principal took one look at the injury, he

a) called for the ambulance

b) blamed Mrs. Fareeda's

c) screamed loudly

d) did nothing

21 The boys realised that they were and apologised for their behaviour.

a) innocent

b) happy

c) guilty

d) brave

22 As the boy was screaming, it's thought that

a) he was punished by his teacher

b) his arm was broken

c) he had been informed about something bad

d) something bad happened to one of his friends

23 The story teaches us

a) to follow other people's advice especially the elderly

b) not to walk down the stairs

c) to keep casts at schools for emergencies

d) walk quickly or run

▶ 24 Choose the correct Arabic translation:

 We must forget our disagreements and disputes and unite for the sake of Egypt. It's our beloved country which has faced all hardships and remained strong against enemies.

 a) يجب أن ننسى خلافاتنا ونزاعاتنا ونتناقش من أجل مصرفهي بلدنا الحبيب الذي واجه كل الصراعات وبقى قوياً أمام أعدائه.

b) يجب أن ننسى خلافاتنا ونزاعاتنا ونتحد من أجل مصرفهي بلدنا الحبيب الذي واجه كل الصعوبات ويقى قوياً أمام أعدائه.

C) يجب أن ننسى خلافاتنا وتوقعاتنا ونتحد من أجل مصرفهي بلدنا الحبيب الذي واجه كل الإنجازات ويقى قوياً أمام أعدائه.

d) يفضل أن ننسى خلافاتنا ونزاعاتنا ونتحد من أجل مصرفهي بلدنا الحبيب الذي واجه كل الصعوبات ويقي قوياً أمام حدوده.

Al-Adwaa Test

25 Choose the correct English translation:

لا يستطيع أحد أن ينكر أن إصلاح التعليم هو السبيل الأمثل لإصلاح الفرد والمجتمع؛ فالتعليم هو الطريق الأمثل لبناء المواطن الصالح القادر على مواجهة تحديات العصر.

- a) No one can deny that reforming education is the best way to reform the individual and society. Education is the best way to build the good citizen who is able to meet the challenges of the age.
- b) No one can mention that reforming education is the best way to reform the individual and society. Education is the best way to invent the good citizen who is able to meet the challenges of the age.
- c) No one can deny that reforming learning is the best way to reform the individual and society. Education is the best way to build the good citizen who is able to avoid the challenges of the age.
- d) No one can deny that mending education is the best way to reform the individual and environment. Education is the best way to build the good citizen who is able to meet the challenges of the age.

26 Answer the following questions:

- 1. Edmund left so as not to see his father being punished by Cornwall. What does this show about him?
- 2. If you were Gloucester, would you help the King? Why?
- 3. Do you think that Cornwall was right to trust Edmund after betraying his own father? Why?

> 27 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"The way advertisements can affect people"

الموليد من الدريا عليه المثابة ال







High-tech transport

Unit 8

Objectives

Reading : A notice about the expansion of the Cairo metro network

Writing : A speech for or against an argument; An email to the local government about

public transport

Listening: A talk show debate about the future of transport

Speaking: A discussion about the advantages and disadvantages of using public transport;

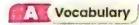
Asking and answering questions about a schedule

Language : Future perfect

Life Skills : Critical thinking; Problem solving; Respect for diversity







You can study the new vocabulary by putting each word in a sentence.

Key Vocabulary

expansion (n)	مد/تمديد	network (n)	عديث
facilities (n)	إمكانيات/تسميلات/مرافق	public (adj)	ple
high-tech (adj)	ذو تكنولوجيا عالية	transport (n)	نقل/مواصلات

The hotel provides excellent facilities for children,

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening Texts

add (v) (ed)	gas (n)	غاز
addition (n)	gate (n)	بوابة
affordable (adj) يمكن تحمل نفقاته	guess (v) (ed)	يفهن
authority (n) ميلة	importance (n)	اهمية
available (adj) متوفر	improve (v) (d)	يحسن/يتحسن
central (adj) مرکزی/متوسط	increase (v) (d) (n)	يزيد/زيادة
يقوم بمراجعة أوراق السفر check in (v) (ed)	instead (adv)	بدلًا من ذلك
complete (adj) (v) (d) كامل/يكمل	length (n)	طول/مدة
connect (v) (ed) يربط/يصل	line (n)	خط،
damage (v) (d)	metro (n)	مترو
driverless (adj) بلا سائق	notice (n)	ملاحظة/إشعار
electric (adj) کمربی	organisation (n)	منظمة
environmentally (adv) ايثينا	passenger (n)	راكب/مسافر
equipment (n)	persuade (v) (d)	يقنع
expect (v) (ed)	polluting (adj)	ملوث

precise (adj)	ىقىق/محدد	size (n)	حچم/مقاس
private (adj)	خاص	take place (v)	يحنث/يتم
production (n)	إنتاع	total (adj)	كلى/إجمالي
protect (v) (ed)	يحمى/يقي من	tram (n)	ترام (وسيلة مواصلات)
replace (v) (d)	يستبدل	underground (adj)	(adv) (n) تحت الأرض/مترو الأنفاق
schedule (n)	جدول	unhida (a)	24
security controls	إجراءات تحكم أمنية	vehicle (n)	مركبة

Workbook Vocabulary

area (n)	منطقة/مساحة	Greater Cairo (n)	القاهرة الكبرى	
bridge (n)	چسر/کوبر <u>ی</u>	interrupt (v) (ed)	يقاطع/يعترض	
close (adj)	ەرىب	introduce (v) (d)	يقدم	
coast (n)	يساحل	involve (v) (d)	يتضمن	
construction (n)	إنشاء/تشييد	monorail (n)	قطار كحربائى معلق	
create (v) (d)	يخلق/ينتج	network (n)	شبكة	
disagreement (n)	عدم اتفاق/اعتراض	New Administrative City عد		
doubt (n) (v) (ed)	شك/يشك	railway (n)	سكك حديدية	
emphasise (v) (d)	يۇكد على	series (n)	سلسلة/مسلسل (تليفزيوني)	
exactly (adv)	بالضبط	suburb (n)	ضادية	
first-aid (n)	إسعافات أولية			
form (n)	شکل	tunnel (n)	ئفق	

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Drinking wa	ater is brought to the to	own through a/an	of underground
pipes.			
a) line	b) network	c) discipline	d) authority
2 Modern	systems have bee	en a severe threat to the	environment, causing
a lot of pollu	ition.		
a) security	b) computer	c) transport	d) education
3 According to	the rules, passenger	s must in one	hour before the fligh
leaves.			
a) get	b) look	c) apply	d) check
4 Thousands of	of ancient Egyptian sta	tues will be put on	display in
the Grand Eg	gyptian Museum.		
a) public	b) special	c) accepted	d) awful
5 Lack of space	e is the main restraint,	on our factory's plai عائق	ns for
a) damage	b) application	c) expansion	d) pressure
6 Like most	products when	they first hit the marke	t, new smart watches
won't be che	ap.		
a) outdated	b) degraded	c) old-fashioned	d) high-tech
7 When she go	t off the plane, her mo	ther was waiting for her	at the airport
a) gate	b) hole	c) dock	d) store
8 One of the m	ain disadvantages of c	ars is the gase	s which damage
the environm	ent.		
a) valuable	b) polluting	c) effective	d) impressive
9 We had to	our old air cond	itioner with a new one	that is working
properly.			
a) place	b) position	c) replace	d) reflect
	•	tine is freelyor	
a) available	b) secret	•	d) affecting
u, aranabic	שו שבנוכנ	C) avoidable	ancetting

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

along the coast	عبر الساحل	make notes	ينون ملاحظات
around the world	حول العالم	over the next years	خلال السنوات القامعة
forms of transport	وسائل المواصلات	take a test	يمثدن
agree with	يتفق مع	increase in	زيادة في
bad for	سيئ ك	part of	خزه هل
close to	قريب من	plan for	بخطط ل
give up	يقلع عن	travel around	يتقل
go down	ينخفض		
importance of	أهمية ال	work for	يعمل لنئ

Read the derivatives well and link them to real life in visual images

Derivatives

V	erb	N	oun	Adject	ive
connect	يربط يصل	connection	صنة ارتباط	connected	متصل
construct	يشئ يشيند	construction	انشاه تشييد	constructive	بندنيس
create	يخلق لينتج	creation creator	ابعاع خلق مبدع	creative	مبنع
emphasise	يؤكد على	emphasis	عيدت	emphatic	مؤكد
expand	يمدايوسع	expansion	مد/تمديد/توسيع	expandable	قابل للتوسيع
interrupt	يقاطع ايعترض	interruption	مقلطعةااعتراض	interrupted	مقلطع
introduce	يقدم	introduction	مقدمة	introductory	تقديمي
persuade	ونقي	persuasion	إقتاع	persuasive	مقنع إقناعي
produce	ينتج	production product producer	انتاج منتج منتع/القلام على الإنتاج	productive	منتج
protect	يحمى/يقى من	protection	حملية/وثلية	protective	رق ا

In the past, all houses were constructed of local materials.
 Work has begun on the construction of the new airport.

- Our manager welcomes any constructive suggestions.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	المرابف Synonym	المضاد Antonym	
central	مرکزی/متوسط	main/basic	additional/extra	
construction	انشاء/تشیید on	development/building	disarrangement/destruction پیم ترتیب/تدمیر	
emphasise	يؤكد على	stress/assert	deny/ignore ينكرايتجاهل	
expansion	توسيع/مد	growth/enlargement	decrease/reduction تطيل/خفض	
interrupt	يقاطع/يعترض	bother/disturb	assist/aid عداسي	
involve	يتضمن	include/contain	exclude/abandon	
persuade	يقنع	convince/urge	discourage/prevent (یشجع)	
precise	بقيق/محدد	exact/accurate	imprecise/indefinite غير مقيق/غير محدد	
protect	يحمى/يقي من	keep/save	يىمر/يعرض للخطر destroy/endanger	
total	کلی/إجمالی	complete/whole	partial/incomplete جزئی	

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 There are plan	ns to build more new c	ities in Egypt	the next years.
a) on	b) off	c) for	d) over
2 : Doctors empl	nasised the importance	e of fresh fruit and ve	egetables in the diet.
The noun of t	he verb "emphasise" is	H	
a) emphasises	b) emphasised	c) emphatic	d) emphasis
(3) It's important	to protect your skin fro	om the harmful effec	cts of the sun.
The synonym	of the verb "protect" is	<i>H B</i>	
a) keep	b) destroy	c) endanger	d) construct
4) The tourist co	mpany's income went	as a result o	of the Coronavirus
pandemic last	year.		
a) off	b) down	c) in	d) into
5 Through the r		overnment plans to	more jobs for
a) create	b) creation	c) creator	d) creative

6		aning to the word "		ne word central is		
	a) far	b) main	c) partial	d) heavy		
7	In many countries, a lot of concrete barriers were built the coast to protect the beaches from floods.					
	a) in	b) up	c) along	d) down		
8	There are plans for a massive expansion of the oil and gas industries. The anton of the noun "expansion" is "".					
	a) growth	b) reduction	c) delivery	d) enlargement		

Reading Text (1)

Cairo Metro network: Expansion work

We hope that all our passengers will enjoy using our new Line 3. This expansion⁽¹⁾ of the Cairo Metro⁽²⁾ adds seven kilometres and six new stations to our underground network⁽³⁾.



Line 3 will help people in the east of the city to get to work faster and more easily because it connects Heliopolis and the central station of Adly Mansour. We expect that 1.5 million passengers will use the new line this year.

(1) توسيع (1) مدرو القاهرة (2) مترو القاهرة (3) دو تكنولوجيا عالية (4) النقل العام (5) يريط/يصل (6) يريط/يصل (7) محسن/مطور (8)

High-tech⁽⁴⁾ systems were used to build this 21st Century public transport⁽⁵⁾ system, and more expansion work is planned for in the future. By 2030, we expect to have built three more new lines to bring the total number to six.

We are already building Line 4 and we will have completed it by 2024. Line 4 will connect⁽⁶⁾ the east and west of Cairo and make it easier for people to travel around the city. However, due to the expansion work on Line 4, some trains will be late and

we may have to close some stations for short periods of time.

Although we don't have a precise schedule⁽⁷⁾ for the building work on Line 5 and 6 at the moment, we expect to have started building Line 5 by the end of next year.

We would like to thank all Cairo Metro passengers for your understanding while the building work is taking place. We hope that you will enjoy using the improved underground network.

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

(Public transport) projects for the future

Public transport⁽¹⁾ networks everywhere will improve a lot over the next ten years. Here is a look at some of the biggest projects being planned around the world.

In Cairo, there are plans to create the first public transport connection from both New Administrative City and 6th of October City to the Greater Cairo area.

(1)	العام	نل	iii)
(2)		Ø 9	متر
	**		
(3)			
(4)	ركاب		

Karima

Nadiya

Karima

The Cairo Monorail will involve the construction of two monorail

lines which will take passengers 52 km from New Administrative

City to East Cairo, and 42 km from 6th of October City to the Greater Cairo area. The lines will open in 2025.

There are plans for an expansion of the Paris underground network in France. Using the latest technology, the underground (2) Line 18 will connect Orly airport to the suburb of Versailles, 21 km of the 35 km-long line will be high-tech. It will open in 2030.

By 2030, there are plans to build the longest tunnel in Australia's history.

The 50 km-long tunnel will be part of the new Sydney Metro West underground system⁽³⁾. The project involves 10,000 workers including engineers.

In the north of Europe, Sweden is building a new train line along the coast of the country. The 270 km line will be finished in 2030 and will carry more than 1.6 million passengers (4) a year.

Listening Text (1) (Workbook)

Huda: Which is the best way to travel?

Iniv: I think the answer is guite clear. Flying.

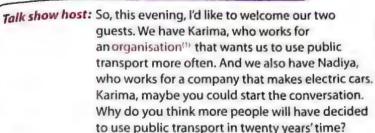
Huda: I'm sorry, but that isn't true. Flying causes a lot of pollution.

Injy: I'm not so sure about that. Modern planes don't cause much pollution because ...

Huda: Can I just say something here? Planes create more than ten times the pollution of a train!

: Yes, but it is much more expensive to build railway lines than airports. What would you say to that?

Listening Text (2)



: Well, I think the answer is quite clear. Because the dangerous gases(2) that cars produce are bad for the environment. By the 2040s, everybody will have realised that and

decided to do something about it.

: I'm sorry, but that isn't true of all cars. The electric cars that we make don't produce any gases that damage(3) the environment. They're very environmentally friendly. Experts believe that by 2030 most people will have bought an electric vehicle.

: I'm not so sure about that, Nadiya. Do you

really think that all drivers will have changed the type of vehicle they drive in less than ten years? I think that by 2050 the price of electric cars won't have gone down so much that

everyone can buy one.

Talk show host: Can I just say something here? By 2030, the types of transport

available(4) to us will have changed completely – don't you think? Perhaps we will have flying vehicles instead of driving on the roads. And if we do still have cars, we won't drive them ourselves because we'll have bought driverless(5) cars. What would you say

to that? Nadiya

: Whatever happens in the future, in ten years we won't have given up on driving our own vehicles, because they are a private⁽⁶⁾ space.

So, let's make sure those vehicles are environmentally friendly.

Talk show host: Karima?

: Well, I think people will still want to travel in the future, of course, Karima

but everyone will have realised that protecting the environment is the most important thing and choose public transport instead.

غازات (2)

(3) atta

متوفر/متاح (4)

بلا سائق (5)

خلص (6)

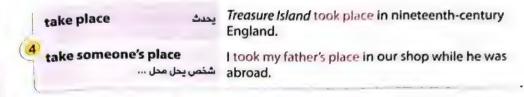






معة الفرق بين الكلمات الأتية واستخداماتها.

notice ملاحظة/انتباه/اهتمام	المم بمعان مختلفة. (notice) كاسم بمعان مختلفة. This problem may not have received your notice so far.
notice = sign (بيان مطبوع لإعطاء معلومة أو تحذير)	The notice on the wall says "No smoking".
notice = warning تحذیر من شیء مستقبلی	The authorities closed the factory, giving the workers only a week's notice.
notice = review نقد أو رأى عن فيلم/ قصة مطبوعة في جريدة	- The new play got mixed notices in the newspapers. (notice) يستخدم كفعل بمعنى (يلاحظ). - He noticed a woman in a black dress sitting across from him.
public عام (يمكن للجميع استخدامه)	You now have to pay to use the public toilets at the park.
general (غير محدد)	They gave a general description of the new site of the company.
electric کمربی (یعمل بالکمرباء)	(used about something that works using electricity) - Is your cooker electric or gas?
electrical کهربائی (یستخدم الکهرباء - یعمل بإنتاج او تصلیح الکهرباء)	(used about things in general that use electricity, or people whose job is to make or repair these things) - I work for a company manufacturing electrical goods. - My uncle works as an electrical engineer.
electronic إلكتروني (خاصة بالتقنيات الحديثة)	(used about systems or things that work using computers or smartphones) - Most kids love electronic games. - Email is the short word for electronic mail.



Vocabulary Check point 3

- 1	The young graduate was empl	oyed as anengineer in the shipbuilding
	new factory.	
	a) electricity	b) electric
	c) electrical	d) electronic
2	This guidebook gives you a goo	odidea of the city you will visit.
	a) general	b) public
	c) private	d) careful
3	The accident received little	in the national media.
	a) note	b) notice
	c) sign	d) signal
4	There was a notice on the board	d saying the class had been cancelled.
	The word "notice" here means	***************************************
	a) attention	b) review
	c) sign	d) observation
5	Most dictionaries and encyclop	are available in paper and موسوعات edias
	form on CDs.	
	a) electricity	b) electric
	c) electrical	d) electronic





Vocabulary General Exercises

1	In large cities, nec	ople should be encou	raged to depend on t	oublicto a
		o reduce pollution.	aged to depend on p	3
	a) transport	b) transfer	c) transfuse	d) transplant
2		is no longer allowed i		
-	a) general	b) public	c) private	d) available
3	The machines wh	nich the new factory	uses are very	which are the late
	in the country.	,	,	
		b) central	c) public	d) high-tech
4	There has been a	steady of the pr	ivate sector of the eco	nomy in many field
	a) deterioration	b) authority	c) expansion	d) notice
5	The hotel offers	exceptional sporting	, including a	swimming pool ar
	a gym.	, , ,		
	a) authorities	b) facilities	c) accessibilities	d) schedules
6	It's important for	a successful business	man to build up a	of profession
	contacts.			
	a) transport	b) gate	c) network	d) station
. 7	Only department	managers have the .	to change th	e work schedule.
	a) irresponsibility	b) authority	c) rosary	d) expiry
8	My teacher alway	s the import	ance of studying har	d and encouraged
	to be better.	·		
		b) improvised	c) appeared	d) thought
9	Most villages in U	pper Egypt are now.	by good roa	ds which were built
, -	over the years.	11 371		
		b) communicated	c) connected	d) created
10		pitals have		
	a) proved	b) involved	c) persuaded	d) improved
111	The President's	for this month inc		
	a) column	b) speech	c) schedule	d) seminar
12	The cost	of the new building	was far higher than w	e had expected.
1.5	a) vaque	b) avoidable	c) available	d) total
42		ces of music should b		
113	a) cured	b) infected	c) protected	d) healed
14		ne runs in a		
		b) tunne		d) road
148	Major engineerin	g challenges were fal	ediduring the	
27.27	Administrative C:	anital	Autoratia ili	or the New
4.00	a) construction	apital. b) destruction	C) Hamaria	d) was
	2, 20.3(00)	by destruction .	- a red and a section of	d) waste

16	The scientists v	vill hold a/an	of meetings over the	next few weeks to
	a) team	b) amount	c) series	d) deviation
47	More and more	people are moving to	the of Cairo	such as New Cairo
7/	City every year.			,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
	a) districts	b) villages	c) shores	d) suburbs
18	The young act	ress's expensive dress	and iewellery attracte	
-	Ab a martir			
	a) review	b) notice	c) sign	d) warning
10	Lasked my colle	b) notice eague to show me the	notes heabo	out the last lecture.
,,,	a) ran	b) did	c) made	d) invented
20	The author's	at the beginnir	ng of the book explain	s the organisation
20	of it.		<i>y</i> •• •• •• •• •• •• •• •• •• •• •• •• ••	3
	01 141	b) introduction	c) introductory	d) introduced
24	The metro lines	made it easier to trave	elGreater Cairo	and the new suburbs.
21	a) on	b) at	c) away	
20	The test will inv			aph. The verb "involve"
22	can be the onn	osite to the verb "	"	apini ine rei a ini air
	a) include	b) invent	c) exclude	d) consist
	All candidator i	b) invent have toa tes	t in language and co	mnuter skills
23	All Candidates I	b) make	c) devise	d) take
	a) give	b) make use of the disease is u	nknown The synony	m of the adjective
24	The precise cau	ise of the disease is u	riknown. The synony	in of the adjective
	"precise" is "	b) ancient	مدهدانس ام	d) imaginan
	a) accurate	b) ancient	c) written	spending our free time
25	My little brothe	r usually agrees	my view about :	spending our free unit
	a) for	b) at	c) with	a) or
26	The of	the new monorail li	ne will serve thousar	ids of people. It will
	take passenger	s 52 kilometres from	the New Administra	ative City to East Cairo
				(Longm
	a) deduction	b) destruction	c) contradiction	d) construction
27	There are plans	to create the first p	ublic transport	from the New
	Administrative	Capital to the Great	er Cairo area.	(Longi
	a) separation	b) communication	on c) transmission	d) connection
28	As Sami was a	keen participant, he	was the first to be	in the team
-	working on the			(Lone
	a) evaluded	b) involved	c) eliminated	d) separated
-	Unfortunately	I failed to	datim to change his	mind and spend the
29	Uniortunately,	rialied to	Tatili to change his	(Lor
	weekend with	us.	a)	
	a) let	b) charge	c) persuade	d) force
30	I think the rent	for the new flat cou	ald beas lo	ng as I have extra wo
	increase my in	come.		a
	a) avoidable	b) recyclable	c) affordable	d) intolerabl

Future perfect (will have + P.P.)

before, till/until, by the time, by Present simple
Present perfect

Before he arrives, I'll have completed the report.

By the time he has finished doing the homework, his father will have returned back home.

الحظ المحظ

ا) نستخدم by/by the time/before لنقصد قبل وقت محدد في المستقبل.

We will have taken the test by/before June.

I won't have done all of my homework by the time/before you get home.

٢) ونستخدم in (a year's/week's/2 weeks') time لنقصد في نهاية هذا الوقت في المستقبل.

In five years, I will have started work.

How much will you have done on your project in two months' time?

Extra points

هناك أفعال تعبر عن المستقبل تلقائينًا عند استخدامها في صيغة المضارع مثل:

want, expect, hope, predict, wish, need, etc.

to have + P.P. وعند استخدام المستقبل التام نستخدم بعده will وعند استخدام المستقبل التام نستخدم بعده to have + P.P. وغي المجمول

want, expect, hope, predict, wish, need, etc. + to have + P.P. 3 reports by next week.

want, expect, hope, predict, wish, need, etc. + to have been + P.P. ا expect 3 reports to have been written by next week.

By 2030, we expect to have built flats for all people in Egypt.

We expect to have started building more than 100 natural gas stations by the end of this year.

The food is expected to have been prepared by 6 p.m. today.

Future perfect

المستقبلالتام

For actions that will or will not be completed before a specific time/action in the future, يبرعن حدث سوف (سوف لا) يكون قد اكتمل قبل وقت محدد/حدث آخر في المستقبل.

TIMELINE Past Present Future

FORM

Affirmative

· Subj. + will have + P.P.

الإثبات

• I will have finished this report by midday.

Negative

· Subj. + won't have + P.P.

النقى

• I won't have finished this report until 5 o'clock.

Interrogative الاستفهام · Will + subj. + have + P.P.?

• Will you have typed all these letters by the time the boss arrives?

• Wh- question + will + subj. + have + P.P.?

• How many letters will you have typed before the boss arrives?

Passive المبنى للمجمول

· Obj. + will have been + P.P.

· Our car will have been repaired by tomorrow.

الاستخدام USAGE

0

For actions that will or will not be completed before a specific time in the future. يعبر عن حدث سوف (سوف لا) يكون قد اكتمل قبل وقت محدد في المستقبل.

By 8 o'clock tomorrow, I'll have sent all these invitation cards.

By next October, the new metro line will have been built.



For actions that will or will not be completed before another action in the future. يعبر عن حدث سوف (سوف لا) يكون قد اكتمل قبل حدث آخر في المستقبل.

▶ I will have read the book before I return it to the library.

By the time my father arrives, I'll have finished my homework.

The future perfect is used with the following time expressions:

before, by + فترة في المستقبل (2100), by the time, till/until, in a year's (2 years') time

My wife won't have finished preparing the lunch till 4 o'clock.

In a week's time, we'll have finished our exams.



Language General Exercises

1 Ithe cooking by the time ye	ou arrive home. Then, you can have your
lunch at once.	
a) will be done	b) will have been done
c) will have done	d) will be doing
2 All Egyptian schoolse-learr	ning by 2030.
a) will apply	b) will have applied
c) will be applied	d) will have been applied
3 By the time you get home, I	. the house from top to bottom.
a) will have cleaned	b) will be cleaning
c) will clean	d) will be cleaned
(4) Nancy to a new apartment	by this time next year.
a) will move	b) moves
c) is going to move	d) will have moved
(5) Theya new high-tech hospi	tal by the end of next year.
a) will open	b) will have opened
c) will be opening	d) are opening
6) Whatever happens in the future, in te	n years, weup on driving our own
vehicles.	
a) won't have given	b) won't be given
c) are giving	d) will be given
7) The writer's new story willb	y the time the "Book Fair" starts.
a) be printed	b) be printing
c) have been printed	d) have printed
(8) Rana the night shift by the t	ime you get up in the morning.
a) won't be finished	b) won't be finishing
c) won't finish	d) won't have finished
(9) Will sheenough Spanish to c	communicate before she moves to Madrid?
a) has learnt	b) be learning
c) learn	d) have learnt
10 Could you please return in 10 minutes	s? Your room will by then.
a) have been cleaned	b) be cleaned
c) be cleaning	d) have cleaned

11	Our guests are expected to .	by 4 o'clock this afternoon.	
	a) be arrived	b) have been arrived	
	c) have arrived	d) mill arrive	
12	Will my workplace when I	come to the office tomorrow	morning?
	a) prepare	b) have been prepared	
	c) have prepared	d) be preparing	
13	It's a big course. Weit by t	he time the vacation begins,	
	a) won't finish	b) won't be finishing	
	c) won't have finished	d) aren't finishing	
14	By the time your children are in un	iversity, will e-books	traditional
	books?		
	a) have replacing	b) have been replaced	
	c) replaced	d) have replaced	
15	I hope a cure for this serious disea	se by the end of thi	s year.
	a) will have been discovered	b) will discover	
	c) will be discovering	d) will be discovered	
16	By 10 o'clock, we half the	way to Australia.	
' gar'	a) will have flown	b) will be flown	
	c) will fly	d) are flying	
17	By the time I get home, my wife	supper.	
Sear.	a) prepares	b) is going to prepar	e
	c) will have prepared	d) will prepare	
18	Will the documents by T	hursday?	
	a) have sent	b) be sending	
	c) be sent	d) have been sent	
19	Theythe expansion of the	ne rail line to other cities un	til 2040.
	a) aren't completing	b) won't have comp	
	c) complete	d) will complete	
20	Will he all the English ve	erb tenses by tomorrow?	
-	a) have studied	b) has studied	
	c) be studying	d) be studied	
21	By the end of the first term, we	many English book	S.
	a) shall read	b) will be reading	
	c) will have read	d) will be read	
	C) WIII HAVE ICAU	a) will be read	

22	l expect much experience	ce by the time I'm fifty years old.	
	a) to have been gained	b) to have gained	
	c) will gain	d) that I will gain	
23	They won't have received the new	v machinenext Friday.	
	a) before	b) when	
	c) as soon as	d) while	
24	Which one of the following sente	nces is grammatically correct?	
	a) After my father comes home, I'll	be doing my homework.	
	b) After my father comes home, I'll	have done my homework.	
	c) After my father will come home,	I will do my homework.	
	d) I won't have done my homewor	k until my father comes home.	
25	Which one of the following senter	nces is incorrectly structured?	
	a) I hope I will pass my driving test	next week.	
	b) I hope I have passed my driving	test next week.	
	c) I hope I will have passed my drivi	ing test by next week.	
	d) I hope to have passed my driving	g test by next week.	
26	The problem of food shortages	solved by the end of the n	ext decade
	Who knows?		(Longman
	a) will have	b) will have been	
	c) might have been	d) might have	
27)	the final report before the	e manager arrives?	(Longman
	a) Will you have prepared	b) Did you prepare	
	c) Had you prepared	d) Were you preparing	
28	By the end of next year, the govern	mentthe hospital in our to	WN. (Longman)
	a) has modernised	b) will modernise	
	c) will have been modernised	d) will have modernised	
29	I think wethis big task before	ore the end of next week; we will t	ake longer.
-			(Longman)
	a) will have finished	b) won't have finished	
	c) haven't finished	d) are finishing	
30	I've saved a lot of money. I	a new car before the end of ne	ext month.
			(Longman)
	a) have bought	b) will buy	
	c) will be buying	d) will have bought	
60			



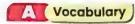
choose t	he	correct	answer	from	a,	b,	C	or	d:
----------	----	---------	--------	------	----	----	---	----	----

)	Vocabulary			
1	The solar pane	ls provide my uncle's f	arm with the	power it uses.
	a) electronic	b) electrostatic	c) electric	d) static
2	Aisar	ailway system that use:	s a single rail, usuali	ly high above the ground.
	a) tunnel	b) monorail	c) loop	d) lane
3	We need to wo	ork out the total cost o	f the project. The	opposite of the adjective
	"total" is "	# ************************************		
	a) complete	b) whole	c) gorgeous	d) partial
4		t to get this p	roject done. It mu	st be completed in
	a month.			
	a) schedule	b) expectation	c) inquiry	d) prospect
(5)		area where people li	ve which is away f	rom the centre of a towr
	or city.			
_	a) marsh	b) resort	c) suburb	d) region
6	The entreprener	ur is trying to	local businesses to	d) region invest in his new project.
-	a) persuade	b) discourage	c) defy	d) risk
7)	The new secret	ary was caught looki	ng through the m	d) risk nanager's paper
	and was fired.			
-	a) general	b) private	c) public	d) indefinite
		pecial for we	Icoming disabled	people such as lifts and
-	wheelchairs.			
_	a) talents	b) gifts	c) activities	d) facilities
9	In order to finar	nce on trans	port, the governm	nent has relied on local
A COLOR	investments.			
	a) intention	b) expansion	c) affection	d) reduction
10	The oil compan	y is establishing a/an	of pump	os and pipelines to move
10000	the oil			
	a) network	b) labour	c) discipline	d) arrangement
11	The da	ite and place of birth	of this famous wi	riter are unknown.
		b) hidden		
12	The Olympics to	ake every fo	ur vears in a diffe	rent city.
-	a) part	b) place	c) in	d) off
13	This mobile mo	del is relatively ٹیسن	at just 80	00 pounds.
'	a) flevible	h) unavailable	c) avoidable	d) affordable
		ry has been made int		
		h) cast		

1:	The young ath a) in	llete didn't give b) at	her career when s	d) up
		D) at	c) on	a , ap
J	Language			
16	By this time ne	xt week, I	my test results.	
	a) will have rec	eived	b) will be receiving	ng
	c) will receive		d) am going to re	eceive
17	In an hour's tin	ne, Olah	nome with her father.	
	a) will be reach	ed	b) reaches	
-	c) has reached		d) will have reach	
18	Will he	the message by	the time your flight take:	s off?
,	a) receive	b) have receiv	red c) be received	d) has received
19	By 2040, I think can buy one.	the price of elec	ctric cars down s	o much that everyone
		b) will go	c) will have gone	d) are going
20			long enough by th	
20		b) will have sle		
04		our needs in a w		g will be slept
21	a) will buy	our needs in a w	b) are buying	
			d) will have boug	ht
00	c) going to buy		thinks he 2000	
22	the end of the		thinks he 2000	new English words by
	a) will have learn		c) is going to	d) will learn
20			e all the thieves will	
23			all the thieves will	ght d) be catching
-	a) have caught	b) catch	dinner by then	int u) be catching
24		8 OCIOCK. We	dinner by then.	d d) have finished
	a) will finish	b) Will be finish	ning c) will have finishe	this years old
25	maner	a good job in Cai	ro by the time he's twenty	y-live years old.
	a) Will get	b) Will have go	t c) is getting now more because the m	a) will be got
26	Call me tomorro	w at eleven. Fil K	now more because the m	eeung
	a) will have finish		b) will finish	
-	c) will be finishin		d) won't finish	arram lari Faidari
!7	I took my car to	the service centre	e, but I think it won't	even by Friday.
	a) have fixed	b) be fixed	c) fix	d) have been fixed
			omework when they go to	
	a) finish	b) won't have fi	nished c) have finished	d) are finishing
		this test, she v	vill have answered all the	exercises in the book.
	a) has answered		b) will answer	
	c) will have answ		d) will be answered	
			nces is grammatically inco	rrect?
	at the server become at	me, I'll be booking	the tickets.	
-	b) In two hours'ti	ime, I will have bo	oked the tickets.	
	b) In two hours'tic) By yesterday, I		oked the tickets. ckets.	

70. Unit 8





Vocabulary on Reading and Listening Texts

alternative (n) (adj)	بديل	pause (v) (d) (n)	يصمت/صمت
argument (n)	جدال	point (n)	نقطة/رأى
consider (v) (ed)	يعتبر	popularity (n)	شمرة انيوع
convenient (adj)	مناسب	possible (adj)	ممكن
crowded (adj)	مزدحم	provide (v) (d)	يزود/يوفر
effect (n)	تأثير	respond (v) (ed)	يرد/يستجيب
environmentally-friendly (adj)	صديق للبيئة	satisfactory (adj)	منرض
expect (v) (ed)	يتوقع	significant (adj)	هام <i>ا</i> نو مغزی
flying vehicle (n)	مركبة طائرة	solution (n)	حل
governorate (n)	محافظة	stress (n) (v) (ed)	ضغط/يضغط/يؤكد على
grateful (adj)	شاكر/ممتن	style (n)	أسلوب
mpossible (adj)	مستحيل	timetable (n)	velocil leve
ssue (n)*	قضية	timetable (n)	جدول المواعيد

The famous doctor spoke on the issue of private healthcare in his/her last programme.

Workbook Vocabulary

appropriate (adj)	مناسب/ملائم	level (n)	مستوى
conclusion (n)	خاتمة .	planet (n)	كوكب
cycle (v) (d)	يركب دراجة	playground (n)	ملعب
decrease (v) (d)	ينخفض/يقل	present (adj)	حالى
disability (n)	إعلقة	region (n)	إقليم
inexpensive (adj)	غير مكلف		الحباة البرية
lead (v)	يقود/يۇدى	wildlife (n)	محياه البرزية

Vocabulary Check point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

11003c the contest	district from d, b, c	or a.	
(1) We had a/an	with our neig	hbours, and now they	won't even talk to u
a) argument	b) arrangement	c) replacement	d) involvement
2 The call centre	worker told me that	they would try to	to my complair
within 48 hour	S.		
a) learn	b) refer	c) prefer	d) respond
is se الخروب Carob (3)	ometimes used in swe	eet foods as a healthier	to chocola
a) affection	b) alternative	c) remain	d) attribute
(4) The new defen	der played a	. role in helping our te	am to victory.
a) useless	b) poisonous	c) significant	d) valueless
5) I'm sorry for be	ing grumpy. I've beer	n under a lot of	at work lately.
		c) pleasure	
6 The spokesmar	for drinking	g some water before c	ontinuing his speed
		c) called	
7) It is ba	d manners in some cu	ıltures to speak with yo	our mouth full of foo
		c) considered	
8 Many experts v	varn of the bad effect	s of the of vio	olent video games o
children and yo			
a) ability	b) popularity	c) exploration	d) avoidance
F15		ree weeks, but they to	
		c) expected	
all to	*	vehicle that cou	
in a few years.			
a) flying	b) steam	c) revised	d) explored

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

at least	على الأقل	make better	يجعله أفضل
do some research	يقوم ببعض الأبحاث	on behalf of	بالنيابة
keep in mind	يتذكر/يبقي في ذهنه	point of view	وجهة نظر
alternative to	بدیل اـ	lead to	يؤدى إلى
arrive at/in	يصل إلى	possible for	ممكن اـ
decrease in	تقلیل مٰی	respond to	یرد علی/یستجیب لـ

perivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
provide	يزود/يوفر	provision provider	تزوید م <i>قدم اموفر</i>	provisional	مؤقت
respond	يرد/يستجيب	response	رد/استجابة	responsive	متجاوب
solve	يحل	solution	حل	solvable	يمكن حله
satisfy*	يرضى/يقنع	satisfaction	رضا/قناعة	satisfactory satisfied	مئرمنٍ واض
stress	يضغط	stress	ضغط	stressed stressful	مضغوط مجعد
conclude	يذتم/يستنتج	conclusion	خاتمة/استنتاج	concluding conclusive	خاتم/مستنتج جازم/قاطع

[.] The company was unable to satisfy demand for the product.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	المرانف Synonym	المضاد Antonym
alternative	بديل	option/substitute	obligation الزام
convenient	مناسب	appropriate/suitable	improper/unsuitable غير مناسب
grateful	شاكر/ممتن	appreciative/thankful	ungrateful/rude غير ممتن/وقح
present	الحالى	current/existing	distant/previous بعيداسابق
provide	يزود/يوفر	supply/present	deprive يحرم
respond	يرد/يستجيب	answer/reply	question/request يستجوب/يطلب
satisfactory	مئرضٍ	sufficient/adequate	inappropriate/unsatisfactory غیر مُرضِ/غیر مناسب
significant	هام/نو مغزی	important/noteworthy	insignificant/unimportant در هام

[.] Good people find satisfaction in helping others.

Although my son didn't get full marks, his exam results were satisfactory.

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Fish is a significant part of	of the diet of people in Alexandria. The antonym of
the word "significant" is "	
a) important	b) noteworthy
c) unimportant	d) repetitive
2 We have a limited amou	nt of money to spend, and we need to that in
mind while we're planning	g our holiday.
a) keep	b) change
c) design	d) damage
3 Experts say that fruit is a	healthy alternativechips and sweet products
as snacks.	
a) in	b) to
c) of	d) out
4 Companies work hard to :	satisfy customers' needs. The noun of the verb "satisfy"
is "	
a) satisfies	b) satisfied
c) satisfactory	d) satisfaction
5 I find it convenient to be a	ble to do my banking online. The synonym of the word
"convenient" is "".	
a) suitable	b) improper
c) gorgeous	d) strange
6 Voluntary work doesn't or	lly help society but also canyou better.
a) do	b) miss
c) make	d) deny
7 I am extremely grateful to	all the teachers for their help. The adjective "grateful"
is similar in meaning to	***************************************
a) rude	b) thankful
c) helpless	d) naughty
8 Some scientists are planning	ng tosome research into the genetic causes
of the disease.	
a) carry	b) make
c) run	d) do
at principal and a second	

Reading Text (1)

Dear Sir or Madam,

- A I am writing on behalf⁽¹⁾ of myself and the other students in my class at school.
- B We would be very grateful if the governorate would consider organising the expansion to our town's public transport network. The current network is not satisfactory⁽²⁾ because there are not enough buses to take children to school early in the morning.
- بالنيابة (1) منرض (2) مبكرًا (3) مناسب/ملائم (4) يردايستجيب (5)
- c I have done some research and some children arrive at school much earlier(3) than they need to, and the buses are very crowded.
- **D** I would suggest that the governorate office either provides more buses at the time when students travel to school or it changes the bus timetable so that the buses arrive at our school twenty or thirty minutes earlier.
- El would be very happy to discuss this issue further at any time that would be convenient⁽⁴⁾. Then we could discuss which solution(s) would be possible for our city. Should you have any further questions about the public transport students need, please respond⁽⁵⁾ to this email.

Yours faithfully, Sara Abdelaziz

Reading Text (2) Workbook

I'd like to make the argument⁽¹⁾ that we will all have stopped driving cars in fifty years' time. That is because there will be lots of inexpensive and environmentally-friendly⁽²⁾ forms of public transport. Another significant point I'd like to make is that, because roads will be safer, there will be alternatives⁽³⁾ to using trains and buses, too. For example, more people will walk and cycle. It's important to keep in mind that these ways of travelling will lead to a significant⁽⁴⁾ decrease in levels of pollution.

جدال (1)

صديق للبيلة (2)

بدائل (3)

هام/ ذو مغزی (4)

Reading Text (3) Workbook

Join us to help your community!

We are a group of volunteers who are working for the local government and we help out with local problems. Would you like to work with us?

Our present project is improving the local playgrounds. These are great places for local families, but some of the equipment is not good enough.

Our volunteers are working hard to make sure that all the playground equipment is safe and fun to use for children of all ages.

We will be at the town hall all day on Tuesday 6th July. Come and join us at a time that is good for you!

مستحيل (١)

نقطة/رأي (2)

مركبات طائرة (3)

شعرة/نيوع (4)

يتوقع (5)

Listening Text

Presenter: I'm here today to talk to you about cars and tell you why we will not have stopped driving them by 2050. The first argument I would like to make, and something we should never forget, is that cars are everywhere, everywhere. Just look around! Most people drive their cars every day. It's hard – perhaps impossible⁽¹⁾ – to imagine that people will have changed the way they travel so much that by 2050, nobody will be driving.

Another very significant point⁽²⁾ that I'd like to make is that it's hard to imagine a good alternative to the car at the moment. Some people have suggested that we will have started using flying vehicles⁽³⁾ by 2030, but I doubt that. Alternatives to the car are usually too expensive, too dangerous, and many of them might also damage the environment in the same way that some cars do. It's important to keep in mind that more and more of the cars that we're making today are environmentally friendly. Just look at the popularity⁽⁴⁾ of electric cars. They don't damage the environment when we drive them and so we can expect⁽⁵⁾ that, in a few years' time, they will have become even more popular.

Video Script	
Will people have stopped flying in the future? Most experts believe they won't, but airports and aeroplanes will be very	مطارات (1)
different.	پستىدل (2)
Many experts believe that high-tech robots will have	إجراءات تحكم أمنية (3)
replaced ⁽²⁾ most or all airport staff by 2050. At Changi Airport	يقوم بمراجعة أوراق السفر (4)
in Singapore, more and more robots are already doing jobs that people did before, for example cleaning the building and	موابة (5)
doing some security controls(3).	ملوث (6)
Aeroplane passengers will use their mobile phones to do every They will check in online, pay for everything online and there at the airport gate that can tell who each passenger is.	
Environmentally-friendly aeroplanes that produce little or no will have become normal in a few years from now. However, t will have gone up because these aeroplanes will be far more e	he cost of air trave
II H 4) 000	• 🗆 🗆 🖸

Notes on Vocabulary

	effect affect	تأثير (يتبعه حرف الجر on/of) يؤثر على (لا يتبعه حرف جر)	Burning petrol and gas has a bad effect on the environment. Burning petrol and gas affects the environment badly.
2	pause او فعل شیء	صمت/توقف شــخص عن الكلام (لفترة قصيرة قبل العودة)	There was a short pause before the minister continued his speech.
	silence	صمت/سكوت (لفترة طويلة)	Nothing disturbed the silence of the night.
	hesitati شـىء لعدم	on تــردد (التوقف عن الحديث/فعل الاطمئنان أو التأكد)	After some minutes of hesitation, we continued our way through the forest.

3	reason for + no cause of + nou بمنعول: يسبب	سبب / مبر"ر	reason + why + Apparent - I don't know the reason for his failure I don't know the reason why he failed What was the cause of his death? = What caused his death?
	present (adj)	حاضر/الحالي/موجود	Carbon dioxide is one of the harmful gases present in the Earth's atmosphere.
	present (n)	هدية	I was given this book as a present from my fathe
	present (v)	يقتم	The computer centre presented a cheque for £500 to cancer research.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	We do not have much information abo	out the earthquake at the time,
	a) central	b) present
	c) presented	d) gifted
. 2	The group finished their meal in total.	after hearing the bad news.
	a) rejoice	b) pause
	c) hesitation	d) silence
13	Eating junk food will eventually have a	badon your health.
	a) affect	b) effect
!	c) infect	d) defect
14	Your opinion will not my decis	sion about joining university.
	a) affect	b) effect
	c) infect	d) defect
(5	I can't think of anyfor your des	ire to leave your good job.
	a) result	b) aim
	c) cause	d) reason



1 We're b	uying a new car as o	ur old one causes us a	lot of trouble.
a) considering	b) accepting	c) pausing	d) leading
2 I think that flyin	g is the most	way to travel in such	a large country as
America.			
a) crowded	b) convenient	c) extensive	d) unsuitable
3 There are twent	y-sevenin E	gypt, and Cairo is the l	piggest one.
- 1 4	b) regions	c) governorates	
		upport my family gave	
		c) reliable	
5 The departmen	t managers have a m	neeting to discuss the	of working
conditions at th	e factory.		
a) governorate	b) conclusion	c) reason	d) issue
6 Social services t	ry hard top	ooor families with their	r needs.
a) respond	b) provide	c) prevent	d) pause
7 The student fail	ed to give a	. reason for coming to	school late, so
the head teache	er was angry.		
a) grateful	b) inexpensive	c) satisfactory	d) unsuitable
8 Experts believe	that there are no sin	nple to the probl	em of overpopulation.
a) reasons	b) issues	c) solutions	d) timetables
9 As he was great	tly appreciated, mai	ny Arab novelists have	e tried to copy Naguib
Mahfouz's	174903300 6		
a) point	b) popularity	c) attack	d) style
10 We worked very	hard for four hours	s without a to	complete the report.
a) pause	b) silence	c) trouble	d) state
11: Many children v	vith milda	re integrated with ger	neral education.
	b) conclusions		d) disabilities
e:	•	er rose to a dangerou	
a) step	b) grade	c) level	d) rank
a, occip	a, grade	6/10/01	wy rotti.

13 The rainforest	ts are important	habitats for anima	Is of many kinds		
a) humans	b) wild fe	c) biology	d) crop	Lang	uage
14 Chess is a gan	ne that has existed in it	s form for m	ore than 300 years	Future perfect (extra points)	and repair to the gas now fragment. A
a) present	b) updated	c) dead	d) available		
15 This tropical fo	orest is charact	terised by frequent h	eavy rainfall.		١) المعنة التي بعد الروابط الوصية لا يستندم ميطا المستقد
a) district	b) planet	c) region	d) level	NOT lam going to travel when I have	
16 All energy con	npanies are seeking	to fossil fuels.		lam going to travel when I wa	
	b) representatives	c) preservatives	ar a rematives	غول وقت معين نستخدم المستقبل البسيط وليس التلم.	٣٠) إما كان الحدث لن يقع من العستقبل بل ستكون بدايته مد
17 I think it is mo	re to use a calc	tulator, rather than a	dding the numbers	By 2050, most drivers will use solar energy in	their cars.
yourself.				In 10 years' time, robots will do everything in	nstead of man.
a) considered	b) appropriate	c) arranged	d) mused		 ٣) عند استخدام fot مع التعييرات الزمنية الدالة على المستقد ٥
18 You must	in mind that the p	-	flights.	By next week, I'll have been living here for I When he comes, I'll have been waiting here	for 2 hours
a) take	b) give	c) keep	d) miss		• ولكن أنا كان المعل Stative فتستخدم المستقبل التام نا
19 Experts believ	e that there has been a		e number of visitors	By next October, I'll have been a teacher for	
4	ranean beaches in sum			By next week, I'll have had this mobile phore	ne for 3 years.
a) out	b) about	c) for	d) in		
20 The team capt	ain receives the trophy		hole team.	Language Ch	
a) account	b) behalf	c) expense	d) grade	Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or	d:
21 There is real	in helping other		their problems.	what the problem is by tom	orrow.
a) satisfy	b) satisfied	c) satisfactory	d) satisfaction	a) will be discovering	b) have discovered
	respond to any of her	emails. The synonym	of the verb "respond"	c) will have discovered	d) will be discovered
is"".				2 He the book before he return	ns it to the library.
a) send	b) reply	c) receive	d) question	a) will have read	b) will be reading
	ch sugar can lead	health problems.		c) was reading	d) will be read
a) in	b) to	c) at	d) away	3 How many cities will you have visited	by the time you?
-	a safe alternative to fos	sil fuels such as oil an	d gas.	a) are retiring b) will have retired	c) will retire d) retire
0	mative" is similar in mea			4 By 5:30 this afternoon, my brother	at work for eight hours.
a) mission	b) obligation	c) necessity	d) substitute	a) would have been	b) will have been
_	s on of accused			c) had been	d) has been
a) purpose	b) account	c) behalf	d) front	5 I will have been in Tokyo for three mo	nths before youus.
	•	_,	a, 110110	a) have joined b) joined	c) will have joined d) will join
, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,				2,70.00	,

Future forms (Revision)

will + inf.

الاستخدام Usage	Examples
Future facts حقائق المستقبل	Tomorrow will be 28 February, 2024.
Prediction without evidence التثبؤ بدون دليل	It will rain tomorrow. I think you will pass the test.
On-the-spot decision قرار فوری	This bag is nice. I'll buy it.
With: sure, think, expect, hope, probably, perhaps, promise, predict	I'm sure my father will buy me a new mobile. He will probably come early tomorrow. I promise you that I'll phone you tonight.
Hoped, thought + would	I thought (didn't expect) that she would visit us.
Offer العرض يكون جملة خبرية	Since you are ill, I'll clean the room for you.
Request الطلب	· Will you fetch me my umbrella, please?
Warning التحنير	If you don't study hard, you won't get high marks.
Threat التعديد	I'll punish you if you insult your friend again.
Promise + to + inf.	I have promised them to come early tonight.

2	(be)	going	to	+	inf.

الاستخدام Usage	Examples
Prediction with evidence التنبؤ بدلیل (شیء یری)	The wall is moving. It's going to fall. He is driving fast. I think he is going to have an accident.
مع افعال مثل: Decide, intend, plan	She's decided that she is going to buy a new dress.
Ambitions الطموحات	I'm going to be a doctor. This is my ambition.

Look out! Be careful! Watch out! دلالة على قرب حدوث الفعل	Look out! The dog is going to bite you. Be careful! The wall is going to fall.
Be careful + will تحذیر من شیء رہما یحدث	Be careful and save money or you will suffer in summer.
Be careful + present cont. التحذير من شي، يحدث بالفعل	Be careful! A car is coming.

3 Future continuous	المستقبل المستمر

الاستخدام Usage	Examples	
will (won't) + be + v. ing	التكوين	
may (may not) + be + v. ing	في الاحتمال نستخدم may	
	يعبر عن حنث سوف يستمر لفترة في المستقبل.	
وقت في المستقبل + At	I'll be watching the final match at 7 p.m. tomorrow.	
وقت في المستقبل + From to	From 3 to 5 tomorrow, I'll be visiting my relatives.	
وقت في المستقبل + This time	This time next week, we will be travelling to Luxor.	
time + مدة + time	In a week's time, Ali will be sitting for the final exam.	
وقت في المستقبل + All	You have a lot of homework. You will be doing it all day tomorrow.	
A routine in the future	Don't invite Samy by phone. I'll be meeting him tomorrow.	
	المستقبل المستمر والمضارع المستمر للأحداث المرتب لها في المستقبل.	
Future continuous	I'll be meeting my old friends tomorrow.	
Present continuous	I'm meeting my old friends tomorrow.	
ىر فقط.	إذا كان الحدث يستمر فى المستقبل ولا يكون مرتبًا له نستخدم المستقبل المست	
Future continuous	Don't phone me after 11 p.m. I'll be sleeping. لئوم لا يرتب له	



Present continuous	المضارع المستمر
particular transfer and the second se	-
Subj. + am/is/are + v. ing	التكوين

الاستخدام Usage	Examples
For fixed arrangements in the near future (Arranged future plans).	I'm flying to London tomorrow morning. (I've got the ticket.) I can't watch the final match with you we're
- يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل مع الأشياء التى تم الترتيب لها فى المستقبل القريب.	giving a party tomorrow. (Everything has been arranged.)

Language Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

? I'm sure that he you.
b) will help
d) will have been helping
a brown leather jacket and a red scarf.
b) will have been wearing
d) will be wearing
all her money long before her next pay.
b) will spend
d) will have been spending
za Station at 12:30.
d c) will arrive d) will be arriving
aurant next Sunday.
b) will have been having
d) have
2



▶ 1 Olathe washing by 6 o'clock,	so we can go out for dinner.
a) will finish	b) is finishing
c) will have finished	d) is going to finish
2 I expect that Egypt much pro	ogress in the coming years.
a) will achieve	b) will have achieved
c) going to achieve	d) achieved
3 him a lift until I've had my c	ar repaired.
a) wasn't able to give	b) won't be able to give
c) hadn't given	d) will be giving
4 Don't wait for me for dinner, I	my brother with his research.
a) will be helped	b) won't help
c) may have helped	d) may be helping
5 I expect the bridge by next (October.
a) to build	b) will build
c) to have been built	d) will have built
6) By the time he gets home, she	the entire house.
a) will have cleaned	b) will be cleaned
c) will have been cleaning	d) will have been cleaned
7 We will wait at the station room until	the train
a) will come	b) came
c) had come	d) comes
8 After Ahmed finishes this game, he	6 computer games.
a) will be playing	b) will have played
c) will be played	d) is playing
9 Will lunch by the time we ar	rive?
a) eat	b) be eating
c) have been eaten	d) have eaten
10 You're carrying too much. I	the door for you.
a) won't open	b) will open
c) will have opened	d) will be opening

11 By this time tomorrow, we	all the furniture in the	ne basement القبو,	▶ 23 Which one of the following sent	ences is grammatically correct?	
a) are going to put	b) will put		a) By this time next year, I'll be learning Spanish at university.		
c) are putting	d) will have put		b) Next week, I'll be learning 3 languages in addition to English.		
12 This time next week, I fo	r my first exam!		c) In two years' time, I will be stud		
a) will be sitting b) sat	c) will sit	d) will have sat	d) This time next year, I'll have visited my uncle in Alex.		
13 "I'll send you an email tomorrow."	"The right situation for	the sentence is	24 Which one of the following sent	•	
a) request b) offer c) promise d) threat		a) The door is closed. Shall I open it for you?			
14 Experts believe that by 2050 mos	t people elect	ric vehicles.	b) As the door is closed, I'll open i	,	
a) will buy b) will have box	I will have bought chail be buying d) are buying 1		c) The door is closed. Will you ope	,	
15 In the future, half of the world	English and comn	nunicate well with each	d) As the door is closed, I'll be op	ening it for you.	
a) will speak	b) will have beer	spoken	25 Which one of the following sent	ences is incorrectly structured?	
c) will be spoken	d) is speaking)	a) When Leila finishes her homev	vork, we'll start to have dinner.	
16 We expect building more		tations by the end of	b) After Leila has finished her hor	nework, we'll start to have dinner.	
this year.	e than 100 hatarar gas s	addons by the sha of	c) After Leila had finished her hor	nework, we'll start to have dinner.	
a) will start b) to be started	c) we will be star	ting d) to have started	d) After Leila had finished her ho	mework, we started to have dinner.	
17) I'm sorry, but you need to stay in t	•		26) The camera is very nice; I	it.	(Longman)
a) had finished	b) will finish	,	a) will be buying	b) will buy	
c) have finished	d) will have finish	ed	c) won't buy	d) will have bought	
(18) Do you think more people	*		27) Tarek has decided to buy a new	car, so he the old one.	(Longman)
a) will have decided	b) will be decided		a) will be selling	b) would be sold	
c) are deciding	d) will be decidin		c) will have sold	d) is going to sell	
(19) I promise to these three p			28) I'm sure more trees alo		of next year.
a) will have translated	b) have translated		20 1111 3010 111010 11003	ng the may to our torm by the end	(Longman)
c) will translate	d) translate		:	b) will be planting	(EOIIGITION)
20 In three years' time, most cars in Eg	•	l gas or solar energy.	a) will have been planted		
	run c) will be run	d) will run	c) will have planted	d) were planted	
21) "Our team will probably win the ga			29 I can't visit you tonight because		(Longman
the sentence is	-		a) will have studied	b) will study	
a) prediction b) request	c) warning	d) promise	c) will be studying	d) will be studied	
22 Which one of the following sentence			30 Which one of the following sent	tences is structurally correct?	(Longma
a) This time tomorrow, I'll have clean	-		a) Perhaps Ahmed may visit us to	omorrow.	
b) By this time tomorrow, I'll have cle			b) A new secondary school for g	irls will be building in our village.	
c) By yesterday, I'll have cleaned the			c) I will have bought a bigger flat	t by the end of next year.	
d) Before tomorrow, I've cleaned the			d) What will you be done all nex		
36 Unit 8			,	h	essons 3 & 4 \ 8

(Longman)

(Longman_

(Lessons 3 & 4) Test yourself

Vocabulary			
1 The clerk in the	tourist office said the	e passengers must	in mind that th
trip price does	not include transport		
a) keep	b) change	c) design	d) damage
2 The firefighters	b) change responded to the fire	e alarm in minutes. I	he adjective of
the verb "respo	nd" is "" .		
a) respondent	b) response	c) responsive	d) responsively
3 There has been	a/anincrea	se in the number of	women who work in
nolitics in recen	t vears		
a) sighted	b) available	c) significant	d) useless
4 Some YouTuber	s and influencers are	ready to do even in	nproper things to
increase their	and views.		
a) scene	b) secrecy	c) vice	d) popularity
5 For a beginner,	this camera produces	satisfactory results	. The antonym of
the adjective "sa	tisfactory" is "	H	
a) inappropriate	b) sufficient apital city of Al Dakahl	c) adequate	d) affluent
6 Mansura is the ca	apital city of Al Dakahl	iain northe	eastern Egypt.
a) ministry	b) governorate	c) kingdom	u) governor
7 The spokesman	and though	t for a moment before	ore answering
the reporter's au	tection		
a) paused	b) jogged	c) shouted	d) deleted when explorer
8 Many new specie	es have been discove	red in the Amazon	when explorer
reached it			
a) division	b) suburb	c) district	d) region
9 My grandfather	used to leave his uml	brella in a/an	place by the door so
that he couldn't	forget it on the way o	out.	
a) minor	b) convenient	c) doubtful	d) expected
10 The authority wa	as seeking the best	to the city's t	raffic problem.
a) evolution	b) solution	c) devotion	d) deterioration
11 Children have di	b) solution fferent of lea	arning: some learn b	v seeing, some by
hearing and son	ne hy acting	g	, ,
a) curricula	ne by acting. b) grades	c) styles	d) recipes
12 Recause of his	, John depende	ed on his mother to	dress and feed him.
a) strength	h) skill	c) talent	d) disability
13 We had a/an	b) skill about what we	should huy for our n	nother's hirthday
a) argument	h) regret	c) account	d) settlement
14: It is believed that	b) regret t every new system ha	es its good	and its drawbacks
a) naints	h) views system no	c) noints	d) revisions
C) pairies	b) views	c, points	a) IEVISIONS

15 T	he old bridge wil	be closed for safety.	until it is repa	ired completely.
a) routines	b) recipes	c) results	d) reasons
)	Language			
G V	When I see you to	morrow, Iyo	u mv new book.	
2) show	b) will be showing	c) will have shown	d) will show
7 1	m going to be a ve	ery rich man. I'm sure b	y the time I'm forty, I	my first million.
a) will be making	b) will make	c) will have made	d) have made
8 1	my frien	d at 8 o'clock on Frida	ay.	
a) am meeting	b) meet	c) will have met	d) will be met
9 0	on't phone me to	onight. I for	my French exam.	
) study		b) will be studying	
C) will study		d) will have studied	
o If	you don't have a	car, wait and I	you to the station.	
а) am driving	b) drive	c) will drive	d) will have driven
1. A	fter you	, you will f غفوة a nap	eel a lot better.	
a) have taken	b) took	c) will take	d) will have taken
21	all of the	e books on the list by	the end of the year.	
) will read	b) read	c) am reading	d) will have read
3 A	: Where is Judy?			
		ere8 oʻclock	ζ.	
а) after	b) until	c) by the time	d) on
		over the Ni	le by next year.	
) be built	b) be building	c) have been built	d) have built
5 D	o you think you	to drive in f	ive years' time?	
		b) will be learnt		d) learn
			my driving test	and I'll finally be abl
	o get a car.		, ,,	,
) will pass	b) will have passed	c) have passed	d) will be passing
		new Desert City cer		4 , *****
_/) will establish	new Desert City cer	b) are establishing	1
_	e) establish		d) will have estable	
		finished we	six of the seven ro	
			SIX OF THE SEVERITOR	offis iff the flouse.
	lot bad for two o	-	a) will bour points	ad diara painting
) will be painting		c) will have painted	
			y the time you are 30	
-	a) will have	b) will have had	c) are going to ha	ave d) are having
-	this tes	t by 3 o'clock.		
	a) won't finish		b) am going to fi	
() won't be finishi	ng	d) will have finish	ned



Lessons 5 & 6



و و الدريات المايد من الشرح والدريات ريحيا الرجوع لمنحق المهارات

A blog post

 You work with a group of volunteers helping the society. Write a post asking for volunteers.



Tips for preparing the post:

- Say what your group does to help in the area.
- Describe what issues you want to improve.
- Say how you want to do this.



We are a group of volunteers who are working with the local authority which looks after the river and canals in our town. We also help out with other local issues. Would you consider working with us?

Our current project is removing the rubbish from the river and canals near our town. These are important for getting drinking water and for agriculture. However, there is a lot of rubbish in them and this is not satisfactory.

Our volunteers are working hard to clean the river. We raised enough money for the equipment we will use and for hiring special vehicles to take the rubbish to landfill sites. We just need some young men and women to help us do the work.

We will be at the town youth hostel all day on Friday, March 3. Come and join us at a time that is convenient.



Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Many people who are looking for a pet dog get a puppy. Puppies are cute¹¹, friendly, and playful²¹. But there are good reasons why you should consider getting an adult dog instead.

You have to teach a puppy how to behave. The puppy is housebroken. You have to teach the puppy not to jump up on your guests or chew³¹ on your shoes. This is a lot of work.

On the other hand, an adult dog will already know how to do all of the previously mentioned things. Many adult dogs have already been housebroken. Many adult dogs will not jump on or chew things that you do not want them to jump on or chew. Puppies also have a lot of energy and want to play all of the time. Puppies will not always sleep through the night or let you relax as you watch television.

On the other hand, most adult dogs will wait for you to play. What is more, they will sleep when you are sleeping and are happy to watch television on the couch right beside you.

There is one last reason why you should get an adult dog instead of a puppy. When most people go to the pound to get a dog, they get a puppy. This means that many adult dogs spend a lot of time in the pound, and some never find good homes. So if you are looking to get a dog for a pet, you should think about getting an adult dog. They are good pets who need good homes.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The author thinks that puppies are
 - a) bad pets because they take too much work to own
 - b) friendly, playful, but need a lot of work
 - c) not as cute as adult dogs
 - d) not as playful as adult dogs
- (2) As used in paragraph 2, which is the best synonym for "behave"?
 - a) To listen.
- b) To understand.
- c) To train.
- d) To act.
- (3) Based on the information in the passage, which of the following statements is false?
 - a) Puppies have a lot of energy.
 - b) Puppies need a lot of attention.
 - c) Many people get a puppy as a pet.
 - d) Adult dogs do not need to eat very much.



(5) حظيرة

رر) يستع (4) المذكور مب

ا لعنوب اعتلاعب

**		Of the other hand is t				
		previous information		upcoming paragraph		
-		an example	d) contradict a later statement			
5	Why should	Why should you get an adult dog instead of a puppy? Because				
	a) puppies a	iways sleep through the	night			
	b) puppies of	don't need to learn how t	o walk nicely on a le	ash		
	c) adult dog	s have less energy than p	uppies do			
-	d) adult dog	is jump on and chew thir	igs			
6	It's clear tha	t the writer of the article	moreover 4			
	a) prefers pu	ippies to adult dogs		dogs to puppies		
~	c) prefers to	get both of them at a tim	ne d) doesn't like;			
7	According to	the passage, puppies of	an cause trouble ui	nless they are		
b.	a) small	b) cute	c) sleep	d) trained		
8	Dogs always	have names like	cond #			
	a) people	b) students	c) animals	d) lions		
(A) Choose th	e correct Arabic transla	tion:			
				he biggest shallenge		
		pansion of the undergro				
	that Eq	ypt faces nowadays. How	vever, the Egyptian	s have always proved		
		ey are able to carry out s		, ,		
		تها مصرفي الوقت الماضي ومع ذلك أ		د) ان توسيع خطوط مترو الأنفاق أ		
		-	تنفيذ مثل هذه البرامج الكبيرة،	المصريون أنهم قادرون دائما على		
	فلقد أثبت	بهها مصرفى الوقت الحالى ومع ذلك	أحد أكبر التحديات التي توام	b) إن توسيع خطوط متروالأنفاق		
	.*	بيرة. جهتها مصرفي الوقت الحالي ومع ذلك	تنفيد مثل هذه المشروعات الك اقالمد أنك الاتمارات الاتما	المصريون أنهم قادرون دائما على		
	سد ببت	جهتها مصرفی الوقیب الحالی ومع دللت ساق	اق احد الطبر التحديات التي وا تنفيذ مثل هذه المشروعات الك	المصريون أنهم قادرون دائما على		
	فلقد أثبت	جهها مصرفي الوقت الحالي ومع ذلك	أحدأكبر التحديات التي ثوا	d) إن توسيع خدمات مترو الأنفاق		
		كبيرة.	إصلاح مثل هذه المشروعات ال	المصريون أنهم قادرون دائما على		
		osted a United Nations c				
		oer. Many world leaders a				
	serious	decisions about the clima	ate change problem).		
	والمنظمات	مبرالماضى ولقد حضره كثيرمن القادة	والمتحدة للطقيس في شبهرنوف	a) استضافت مصرموتمرالأم		
	# 4 *** *I	، الماضي ولقد حضره كثير من المســثولين	بما يخص مشكلة التغير المناخر الـ" من "المنافق أ	العالمية لإصدارييانات هامة فر		
	والمنظمات	الماضى ولفد حضرة تنيرهن المسبولين	تمتحده للمناح في سنهر بوقمينر ما يخص مشكلة الثقب المناخ	المحلية لاتخاذ قرارات هامة في		
	بات العالمية	باضى ولقد حضره كثير من القادة والمنظء				
	-		ص مشكلة اللحتباس الحراري.	لمناقشة قرارات هامة فيما يخ		
	مات العالمية	ماضي ولقد حضره كثير من القادة والمنظ	متحدة للمناخ في شهر نوفمبرال	d) استضافت مصرمؤتمرالأممال		
	O Deliverte e	-bldivorcitios es		لاتخاذ قرارات هامة فيما يخص		
		chools and universities ca				
		n and enhancing student	s abilities. They hav	e more racilities than		
	-	ental ones.				
	للامب فلديهم	مًا فيسى تطوير التعليم وتعزيز فدرات الم				
	*e 1 n 1			تسهيلات أكثر من مثيلاتها ال		
	راسهان، صبر	يرالتعليم وتعزيز قدرات الطلاب فلديهم	معات الحاصه دورا هاما دی بصو	 لا بدان بلغب المدارس والجا من مثيلاتها الحكومية. 		
	طلاب فلديهم	مًا فسى تطوير التعليم وتعطيل قندرات الد	س والجامعات الدولية دورًا ها			
			الحكومية .	تسهيلات أكثر من مثيلاتها ا		
	طلاب فلديهم	انويًّا في تطويــرالتعلم وتعزيز قدرات ال				
			الحكومية .	تسميلات أكثر من مثيلاتما		

The phrace "On the other hand" is used to

- 4 Modern technology plays an important role in the field of transport. Fast trains, monorails, and flying vehicles are examples of what transport will be like in the future.
- قامب التكنولوجيا الحديثة دورًا مهمًا في محال الشفل القطارات السريعة وقطارات المونوريل والأطباق الطائرة هي
 أمثلة على شكل النفل في المستقبل
- ث) تنعب التكنولوجيا الحديثة موزًا مهمًا في محال النقل القطارات السريعة وقطارات المونوريل والمركبات الطائرة هي أمثلة عنى شكل النفل في المستقبل
- تنعب التكنولوجيا العديثة دورًا ثانويًا في محال النقل القطارات السنزيعة والسنفن الحربية والمركبات الطائرة هي
 أمثلة على شكل النقل في المستقبل
- أن ثلغت تكنونوجها المعلومات دورًا مهمًا في محال النقل. وسيائل النقل السريعة وقطارات المونوريل والمركبات الطائرة هي أمثلة على شكل النقل في المستقبل
- 5 The government has built one of the biggest solar power stations in Aswan. It is expected to produce about 90% of the electricity produced by the High Dam when the project is complete.
 - قامت الحصومة بيناء واحدة من أكبر محطات الطاقة الضوئية في أسبوان، ومن المتوقع أن تنتج حوالي ٩٠٪ من
 الكهرباء التي يبتحها السد العالى قبل اكتمال المشروع.
 - في سنقوم الحكومة بيناه واحدة من أهم محطات العلاقة الشمسية في أسبوان. ومن المتوقع أن ثنتج حوالي ٩٠٪ من الكهرياه التي ينتجها السد العالى عند اكتمال المشروع.
 - قامت الحكومة بيناء واحدة من أكبر محطات توليد الطاقة في أسوان. ومن المتوقع أن تنتج ما يزيد على ١٠٪ من الكهرياء التي ينتجها السد العالى عند الأمال المشروع.
 - ضامت الحكومة بيناه واحدة من أكبر محطات الطاقة الشمسية في أسوان. ومن المتوقع أن ثبتج حوالي ٩٠/من الكهرياء التي ينتجها السد العالى عند اكتمال المشروع.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- 6 الزيادة السكانية أحد أهم معوقات التنمية والتقدم في كثير من بسلاد العالم وخاصة الدول النامية؛ لذلك يجب البحث عن حلول لها.
- a) Overpopulation is one of the obstacles to development and progress in few world countries, especially developed ones. So, we should look for solutions to them
- b) Overpopulation is one of the obstacles to investment and progress in many world countries, generally developing ones. So, we should look for solutions to them
- c) Overpopulation is one of the obstacles to development and progress in many world countries, especially developing ones. So, we should look for solutions to them.
- d) Overpopulation is one of the obstacles to development and progress in many world communities, especially developing ones. So, we may look for solutions to them.
- 7 تولــــى الحكومــة أولوية كبرى لمشــروعات النقــل العام: وذلك لأنها أحــد أهم الطرق لمكافحــة التلوث لكن تلك المشروعات تتطلب استثمارات كبيرة ووقتا طويئلا لتنفيذها.
- a) The government gives great priority to the projects of general transport. This is because it is one of the most important ways to fight population. However, these projects require big investments and a long time to carry out.
- b) The government gives great priority to the projects of public transport. This is because it is one of the most important ways to fight pollution. However, these projects require big investments and a long time to carry out.
- c) The government gives minor priority to the projects of public transport. This is because it is one of the most important ways to fight pollution. However, these projects require big treatment and a long time to carry out.
- d) The government gives great priority to the projects of public transport. This is because it is one of the least important ways to fight pollution. However, these projects develop big investments and a long time to carry out.

- a) Protecting the monuments is the responsibility of every citizen in Egypt. It is not a task done only by the government and monument officials. We all should take part in this, even through awareness campaigns.
- b) Protecting the monuments is the responsibility of every citizen in Egypt. It is not a task done only by the government and monument managers. We all should take part in this, even through awareness companies.
- c) Predicting the monuments is the responsibility of every citizen in Egypt. It is not a task done only by the environment and monument officials. We all should take part in this, even through awareness campaigns.
- d) Protecting the monuments is the responsibility of every citizen in Egypt. It is not a tour done only by the government and monument offices. We all should take part in this, even through awareness campaigns.

(9) يجب أن تقوم المؤسسات الكبرى بالاستثمارات في البحث العلمي لمساعدة الحكومة على تطويره. وذلك سيساعد المحتمع للاستفادة من نتائجه.

- a) Big institutions should invest in science research to help the public develop it. This will help society to benefit from its results.
- b) Big institutions should invest in scientific research to help the government develop it. This will help society to benefit from its results.
- c) Big institutions should invest in scientific search to help the government develop it. This will help the association to benefit from its results.
- d) Big institutions should provide in scientific research to help the environment develop it. This will help society to benefit from its results.

10 تتطلع شــعوب العالم إلى السـلام والاسـتقرار اللذين تمددهما النزاعات التي تسود أجزاء كثيرة من العالم وأهمها منطقة الشرق الأوسط.

- a) World countries look forward to peace and stability which are frightened by the disputes which spread in many parts of the world, generally the Middle East.
- b) World countries look forward to peace and stability which are threatened by the disputes which spread in many parts of the world, especially the Middle East.
- c) World countries search for peace and stability which are threatened by the changes which spread in many parts of the world, especially the Middle East.
- d) World countries look forward to peace and capability which are threatened by the disputes which published in many parts of the world, especially the Far East.
- Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:



Cursos Sunt Al-Adway Test

hoose the correct	answer from a, b,	c or d:		
1 These books are	also available in ar	form which	you can read on	
an e-reader or n			d) 1	
a) electricity		c) electrical		
2 The Suez Canal	is responsib	le for running and de	eveloping it.	
a) Responsibility	b) Authority	c) Validity	d) Expiry	
3 Egypt has a lot o	of sports wh	nich make it able to he	ost international	
competitions.				
a) probabilities		b) accessibilities		
c) facilities		d) availabilities		
4 Can we look for	a quieter place for	our conversation? Thi	s café looks very	
a) public	b) private	c) special	d) general	
5 Egypt is going to	o develop transport	completely	the next ten years.	
a) on	b) for	c) about	d) over	
6 There are no pla	ns to build more ho	ouses in the desert at	the present time.	
The antonym of	the adjective "pres	ent" is		
a) previous		b) informal		
c) current		d) main		
7 I don't think you	any proble	ems when you land ir	n Cairo.	
a) have		b) won't have		
c) will have		d) aren't having		
B) By the time he	, Tamer will h	ave taken all the nec	essary classes.	
a) graduates		b) is going to gr	raduate	
c) graduated		d) will graduate		
9 By this time next	month, I hope the	y the commi	رکز مجتمعی unity centre	
a) will be building	3	b) have built		
c) will build		d) will have bui	lt	
10 We are already b	uilding a new shop	ping centre and we	it by 2024.	
a) will have comp	leted	b) are completi	ng	
c) complete		d) will be comp	leting	
	earlier if you wan	t to speak to her. By	three o'clock,	
she	•			
a) won't leave	b) will leave	c) will have left	d) is leaving	

12	Do you think you	writing that report by the time I get back?
-	a) will finish	b) will have finished
	c) will be finishing	d) are finishing
13	By next month, I will	him for five years and I think he is reliable enough
v	a) know	b) be knowing
	c) have been knowing	d) have known
14	The project is going to	before the deadline.
	a) have been completed	b) be completing
	c) complete	d) have completed
15	I promise my father	the homework by 8 p.m. this evening.
-	a) to finish	b) will finish
	c) will have finished	d) to have finished

▶ Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

People from long ago used to live in groups in caves or in jungles. They wandered from place to place hunting animals and looking for food like nuts(2), roots, wild fruits and berries(3).

Then later, people began to settle(4) along or near rivers because they were sources of water, food, trade and transport. They used the river water for drinking cooking and washing. Their animals also drank from these rivers.

The rivers were full of fish. Rivers also made good farmland for these early river settlers. During the yearly flood, rivers carried along with them river mud which was very fertile. This fertile(5) soil was left behind after each flood. Thus, river banks or valleys were suitable places for farming. The people started to cultivate their own crops.

Besides the fertile soil, rivers were also used as a form of transport. Men began to use rafts⁽⁶⁾ and boats as a form of water transport to carry their extra food. They sailed to another part of the river to trade with the other settlers. So, they became farmers as well as traders. When they began to travel up and down the rivers, they learnt about the customs and beliefs of the other settlers.

As trade and transport grew, the population⁽⁷⁾ also grew. These river settlements grew into cities, and these cities became centres of great civilisations like those found in early Egypt, India and China. These civilisations⁽⁸⁾ had powerful governments with many laws and government workers.



Y	(7) سکان	(5) خصب	(3) توت	ا) بِسَكُع/بِسَتُلُ
/	(8) حضارات	(6) عوامة	(4) يستثر	2) جوز <i>العند</i>

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c	or d:	
All the statements are true EXCEPT:	dedecate designer &	
a) As trade and transport grew, the pop	ulation of river settlemi	ents also grew
b) As the river settlements grew, they b	pecame cities and cent	res of civilisation
c) Egypt, India and China were at one t	ime centres of a great	civilisation
d) Egypt, India and China were the onl	y important and powe	rful countries in
the world to have rivers		
17 The word "cultivate" can best be repla	ced with	45 1 -
a) grow D) look for	c) buy	d) obtain
18 The best title for this passage would	be"	
a) River water		
b) River cities		
c) Rivers and the beginning of civilisat	ion	
d) Rivers and the customs and beliefs	of the settlers	t
19 Rafts and boats helped the people li	ving near the rivers to	be
a) farmers	b) farmers and tra	ders
c) travellers	d) sailors	
20 "They wandered from place to place	means they	•
a) were surprised	b) travelled	
c) settled	d) developed	
21) The river banks were suitable for far	ming for the early sett	tiers
because		16
a) the land is used once a year	b) the river is used	
a) the land is used once a year c) people settled down there	d) the soil was fer	
22 The land isn't as fertile as it was in th	e past because	equation 0
a) people wandered from place to pla	ace	
b) there is no more llood		
c) the people started to custivate their	r own crops	
d) there are great civilisations		
23 Trade and transport help to		
a) people b) civilisations		d) rafts
24 Choose the correct Arabic translat	tion:	
- We must try to make our world be	tter. If humans contri	buted to controlling
global warming, this world would	be cooler and the hig	gh temperatures we
currently suffer from would decrea		•

25 Choose the correct English translation:

لمبحث التكنولوجيا شيئًا أساسيًا في حياتنا فقد قدمت التكنولوجيا الحديثة لنا الكثير من المعجزات الطبية، ومنها في المبحث البعض أنها خيال علمي يصعب الوصول إليه. وله كان يظن البعض أنها خيال علمي يصعب الوصول إليه.

- a) Technology has become a secondary part in our lives. Modern technology has provided us with many medical miracles, including things that some thought were easy-to-reach science fiction.
- b) Technology has become an essential part in our habits. Modern technology has provided us with many physical miracles, including things that some thought were hard-to-reach science fiction.
- c) Technology has become an essential part in our lives. Modern technology has proved us with many medical miracles, especially things that some thought were hard-to-reach science fiction.
- d) Technology has become an essential part in our lives. Modern technology has provided us with many medical miracles, including things that some thought were hard-to-reach science fiction.

26 Answer the following questions:

Assess your

progress

- 1. In your opinion, why did Edgar easily accept his father's request to take him to Dover?
- 2. Do you think that Albany agreed to his wife's bad treatment of her father? Why?
- 3. If you were Kent, would you continue your support to the King despite the danger this might cause? Why?

***************************************	P024840484000800000000000000000000000000		
		104420014100040404040000	
\$	018010101010101010101010101010101010101	(00000000000000000000000000000000000000	\$2600024902490400400147590088800074~0000099118

***************************************	> = 0 = 0 + 0 + 0 + 0 + 0 + 0 + 0 + 0 + 0	0 b 200 H (0 8 8 9 4 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9	19: 10: 10: 10: 10: 10: 10: 10: 10: 10: 10
***************************************	**************	************	

50:64%

Practise more

65:84%

Take more exam:

85:100%

Well done!

< 50%

Study again



Unit 9

Objectives

Reading : An online advertisement for volunteer conservation trips

writing: An email on the best solution to a local problem; An opinion essay about the benefits of volunteering

Listening: A news report about the protection of the environment

Speaking: Discussing the benefits of volunteering; Discussing problems and choosing the best solution

Language: Comparative phrases; Used to / didn't use to

Life Skills: Problem-solving; Negotiation and decision-making; Collaboration







Key Vocabulary

biodiversity (n)	التنوع البيلي	preserve (v) (d) *	ملفظه على/يحفظ
challenging (adj)	متحذاصعب التحقيق	scholarship (n)	مندة دراسية
expedition (n)	بعثة/رحلة استكشافية	(.)	
native inhabitants (n)	السكان الأصليين	species (n)	نوع/فصيلة

The organization works to preserve rainforests.

the

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

actually (adv)	بالفعل	diving (n)	الغطس
advert (n)	إعلان	economy (n)	اقتصاد
bay (n)	خليج	endangered (adj)	معرض للخطر/للإنقراض
coast (n)	ساحل	ensure (v) (d)	يضمن/يؤكد
colony (n)	مستعمرة	environment (n)	البيلة
colourful (adj)	زاهى الألوان	exotic (adj)	مثير/غريب
complain (v) (ed)	يشكو	face (n) (v) (d)	وجه/يواجه
conservation (n)	حفاظ/وقاية	forest (n)	غابة
coral reefs (n)	الشعاب المرجانية	form (n) (v) (ed)	شكل/يشكل
council (n)	مجلس	generation (n)	جيل
creature (n)	مخلوق	Great Barrier Reef	الحاجز المرجاني العظيم
crop (n)	محصول	industry (n)	صناعة
culture (n)	ثقافة	involved (adj)	منخرط في/متورط/مشترك
digital (adj)	رقمى	limit (n)	مد/قید
disappear (v) (ed)	يختفى	livestock (n)	ماشية

Mr/ Hossam	Elnaggar
Teacher of	English

monitor (v) (ed)	يراقب	soil (n)	تربة
Monte		3011 (11)	
partly (adv)	جزئينا	sports fields (n)	ملاعب رياضية
progress (n)	تقدم	starfish (n)	نجم البحر
project (n)	مشروع	survival (n)	الْمُع دَاقِبِا الْمُعْادِ وَلَيْ
rainforests (n)	غابات استواثية	task (n)	معمة
realise (v) (d)	يدرك	threat (n)	تهنيد
recycling (n)	إعادة التدوير	tourism (n)	السيادة
return (v) (ed)	يرجع/يعود	unique (adj)	متعيز امتفرد
rewarding (adj)	مچز <i>ٍ ا</i> مرضی	variety (n)	تنوع
rule (n)	قاعدة/قانون	volunteer (n) (v) (ed)	क्ष्में विष्यु विष्यु
site (n)	موقع	waste (n) (v) (d)	نفاية ايسرف ايضيع
slightly (adv)	بشكل طفيف	well-known (adj)	مشمور/ معروف جيداً
		_	

Workbook Vocabulary

art (n)	فن	rubbish (n)	قمامة
behaviour (n)	سلوك	souvenir (n)	تذكار/مدية تذكارية
complain (v) (ed)	يشكو	state (n)	حالة
female (n) (adj)	انثی/انثوی	support (n) (v) (ed)	عمايساند
male (n) (adj)	ذکر/ذکوری	tusk (n)	ناب الفيل
original (adj)	أصلي/أساسي	A ! - ! (- d !)	
recognise (v) (d)	يتعرف على	typical (adj)	ا صلی /نمونجی

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	Mary is attendin	ng college on a full	that pays full	y for a student's fee			
	a) race	b) medal	c) scholarship	a) league			
2	Theinh	abitants of America	are now called the "I	Red Indians".			
	a) modern	h) native	c) mixed	a) toreign			
3	We should stop	pollution as it's o	ur duty to	the planet for future			
	generations.						
			Chieveise	d) preserve			
4	Planning a wedd	ling reception for ov	er 1000 guests will be	verytoane			
	planner.						
	a) challenging	b) simple	c) normal	d) ordinary			
5	is the number and types of plants and animals that exist in a particular						
	area or in the wo	orld generally.					
	a) Conservation	b) Zoology	c) Biodiversity	d) Botany			
6	Wheat is a vital a	nd widely-used	for millions of p	eople across the wor			
	a) crop	b) diary	c) spice	d) species			
7	Most people in C	ameroon speak Fren	ich as it was a former	French African			
		b) attorney		d) space			
8	When you take a	iny test, you'll have a	time to foll				
	a) border	b) limit	c) mark	d) remark			
9			of our count				
			c) agriculture				
10	The company ha	s chosen a new	for its office buil	ding.			
	a) scenery		c) site	d) scene			

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

around big cities	حول المدن الكبيرة	have a bath	يأذذ حمامنا
at the same time	في نفس الوقت	keep clean	يحافظ على النظافة
go on a trip/journey	ينعب في رحلة	make sure	يتأكد
apply for	يتقدم بطلب	happen to	بحدث ل
care for	یعتم بـ	interested in	ممتم ب
difference between	اختلاف بين	involved in	منذرط/مشارك في
fight for	يحارب/يناضل من أجل	ready for	مستعد ل

Derivatives

Vei	rb	Nou	n	Adject	ive
behave	يتصرف	behaviour	سلوك التصرف	behavioural	سنوكى
challenge	يتحدي	challenge	تصي	challenging ننبغ	متنائمت لا
conserve	يحفظ	conservation	مفاط اوقاية	conservative	واق اعتضط
preserve	يحفظ	preservation	مفاظ لوقاية	preservative	واق امتاعظ
recognise	يتعرف على	recognition	تعرف/تمييز	recognisable	يمكن تعييزه
recycle *	يعيد تدوير	recycling	إعادة تدوير	recyclable recycled	يعكن شويره معند تسويره
support	يدعم/يساند	support supporter	معم/مساندة مدانع/مساند	supportive/si	pporting
survive	ينجو	survival survivor	النجاة تلجى	surviving	الجي
vary	يتنوع	variety	تنوع	various variable	متوع متغبر

⁻ These materials are recycled into other packaging products.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	المرابف Synonym	العظاد Antonym
complain	يشكو	protest/disapprove/criticise	approve/agree ينتصن
conservation	حفاظ on	preservation/protection	destruction/negligence تىمىرابىمال
ensure	يضمن	guarantee/assure	deny/endanger يتكرايعرض لخطر
monitor	يراقب	observe/supervise	ignore/neglect يتجلعل
preserve	يحفظ	keep/care for	abandon/harm يترك ليعجر ليضر
rewarding	مُجْزِ/مُرْضِ	profitable/valuable	worthless/valueless بلاقيمة
support	دعم	backing/encouragement	disapproval عدم استحسان hindrance اعتقة

⁻ There should be a recycling plant in each town to protect the enveronment.

⁻ The blue basket in the park is for recyclable garbage.

task	محمة	duty/assignment	irresponsibility/aid	
- task	*****	uuty/assignment	اعدة	مساولية/م
unique	متميز	extraordinary/exceptional	common/familiar	سالمارين
variety	تنوع	diversity/variation	similarity	4

Vocabulary Check point 2

1	Employees com of the word "cor	plained about wor	king conditions in th	e factory. The synon		
		•	c) agree	d) deprive		
2			during the vacation a			
			c) made			
3	They took steps	to ensure the safet	y of the passengers. T	The verb "ensure" is		
	the opposite of		,			
	a) guarantee		c) assure	d) deny		
4	To apply		card, just fill in this fo			
	the main office.					
	a) on	b) off	c) for	d) out		
5	The club has im	proved under his ur	nique style of leaders	hip. The antonym of		
	the adjective "unique" is "".					
	a) extraordinary	b) exceptional	c) common	d) respective		
6	In Thailand, elep	hants are used to ta	ake tourists on rides	big cities.		
		b) down				
7	The majority of	ordinary citizens dic	not support the war.	The adjective of		
	the verb "suppor	rt"is"".				
	a) supports					
	c) supportive		d) supportively			
8	The captain coul	ldn't understand wh	at was happening	the boat and it		
	began to sink.					
	a) of	b) on	c) in	d) to		
9	Food prices can i	fairly vary from shop	to shop. The noun of	the verb "vary" is		
	a) variable	b) variety	c) various	d) variously		
10		-	gnificant contribution			
	conservation. The	noun "conservation	"is similar in meaning	g to "".		
			c) expedition			

Reading Text

Book your conservation volunteer trip today!

Are you interested in conservation? Are you ready for a new challenge? If your answer to both of these questions is 'ves', we have some excellent volunteer programmes for you.



بدُلِصِفِ التُحقِيقَ 4

السكان الأصليون (رُ

منحة مراسية (6)

A - New Zealand

Come to New Zealand and help us preserve⁽¹⁾ the country's unique biodiversity(2). You'll plant trees so that endangered birds have a far better environment to live in. You'll also help us to monitor changes in a variety of plant species⁽³⁾ in different areas. Another slightly more challenging(4) task is cleaning beaches and helping to run recycling centres where local people can bring their waste.

Twenty-one days/Prices with flights from \$3,799

B-Thailand

Here in Thailand, we're involved in caring for elephants who used to take tourists on rides around big cities. You'll monitor these elephants' progress as they start their new lives in the forest to make sure that they're healthy and happy. These unique and beautiful creatures love to play with our volunteers almost as much as they love having a bath in the river with them!

Fourteen days/Prices with flights from \$2,599

C - Brazil

Brazil is well-known for its amazing biodiversity. However, the native inhabitants⁽⁵⁾ of the Amazon face exactly the same threat as the rainforests they are also fighting for their survival. You can help the native inhabitants to preserve their languages in digital form for future generations. What is more, you can apply for a scholarship 61 for the costs of this rewarding trip.

Sixteen days/Prices with flights from \$2,599

Listening Text (

My name's Mohamed Mansour, and I'm reporting from a small town on the Red Sea coast in Egypt. It's an area that has been popular with tourists from all the over world for a long time, but a few years ago, it became clear that tourism was causing damage to the local environment.

The biggest problem was that too many tourists would visit diving - centres at the same time. Local companies didn't use to put a limit 3 on how many people could dive. During the summer, they used to take ten divers at a time to explore one reef. That's just too many.

However, things have changed since the local council 4 decided اقتصاد 🤌 to take action. There are now rules 3 about how many divers can be in one area at the same time. Divers also have to pay a small amount of money which goes towards projects which help to protect the local environment.

Another problem that the local people had in the past was that hotel companies would buy the best land in the town, remove any buildings already on it and build hotels instead. In places where there used to be facilities for local people like sports fields., cafés and a cinema; there are now hotels. Fortunately, the council now has new rules for how much land hotel companies can buy.

Local people used to complain about tourists in their town because it changed the lives that they were used to, but now they realise that the tourists can help local businesses, and they're a lot happier to see them. This should help tourists to enjoy their visit even more, and then, they will return to the area more often, helping to support the local economy 9 into the future.

Mr/ Hossam Elnaggar Teacher of English iscerning Text (2) (Workbook)

presenter : Welcome to programme. Today, I'm reporting from the Great Barrier Reef in Australia and I'm going to be talking about the problems this beautiful place is facing. The Great Barrier Reef is an area of coral which lives under the sea in an area that is 2.600 kilometres long. People love visiting the reef because there are so many colourful fish that live here.

لتبدر لعربش الكبير 100 مستعون نته ليتر !

In the past, all of the reef used to have beautifully coloured coral. Today, things are changing and much of the coral is white. Why is this?

سلمل ا

القطس ء

حداقيد (

مجلس :

قواعد 🗎

مشکو 🥽

يرجع/يعود 8

ملاعب رياصية

Interviewee: First, let me explain what coral and reef is for your listeners. Coral is made from millions of very small sea animals. Corals live in groups called colonies. Very large colonies are called reefs, like the Great Barrier Reef. Now, you asked me why the coral on the Great Barrier Reef is white. Well, it's partly because the sea didn't use to be as warm as it is today. Global warming is starting to kill the coral, which turns white when it dies. Another problem is starfish 1. In the past, there used to be many species of fish that ate the starfish. But people have caught so many of these fish that they have disappeared. There is nothing to eat the starfish, so today, the starfish actually eat the coral.

> Another problem, I'm afraid, is people! The area did not use to have so many tourists visiting the Barrier Reef. Now, about two million people visit every year. Boats damage the reef and pollution is not good for the coral either.

Presenter

:So life is difficult for the coral here. In next week's programme, we will be looking at what we can do about this problem.



Let's read these note check the difference

Although the train journey to Aswan was tiring journey we enjoyed the sights.

trip

My father went on a business trip to China to bu new machines رحلة قصيرة (تغرض معين-لمكان محيد)

expedition

بعثية (رحلة منظمة خاصة إلى مكان خطر أو

The soldiers were sent into a military expedition behind enemy lines.

realise

- Do you realise you're an hour late?

٢- بحقق (شيئًا كان يتمناه)

٢- يقبل ويعرف أهمية شيء

She never realised her ambition of winning - ۱ - يدرك (يعرف أو يفهم شيئًا) an Olympic gold medal.

recognise ١- يتعرف على أيعرف شخصًا أو شيئًا لرؤيته أو سماعه أو المرور به من قبل)

- I didn't recognise you in your uniform.

-The new doctor tried to get his work recognised by the medical profession.

We set up many tourist villages along the north coast سلحل (مسلحة من اليابسة قريبة من البحر) coast of the Red Sea.

shore

شاطئ (جزء من اليابسة مُحاذ لحافة البحر)

The ship reached the shore after a long voyage.

beach

بلاج (شاطئ ممعد)

People like to sit relaxed under umbrellas on the beach.

bank

ضفة (ندر أو بحيرة)

The hotel is located on the river bank.

help

يستخدم الفعل (help) بمعنى يساعد بأكثر من صبغة بعيم

- My teacher helped me do my research.
- My teacher helped me to do my research.
- My teacher helped me with my research.

(I can't help + v-ing)

ولاحظ أيضاً الاستخدام التالي: لا استطيع أن أمنع نفسي من:

- I can't help laughing every time I see my funny neighbour.

Vocabulary Check point 3

1	Lamia took a good book to read as	sne knew it was a long, boring
	a) journey	b) trip
	c) expedition	d) mission
2	A lot of water flooded the river	after heavy rain last month.
	a) coasts	b) banks
	c) beaches	d) harbours
3	The famous artist put on a large ha	at and glasses as a disguise and hoped no one
	in the mall wouldhim.	
	a) forget	b) organise
	c) recognise	d) realise
4	We always help our mother	the housework when we have free time.
	a) by	b) at
	c) with	d) for
5	Unfortunately, many illegal immig	rants' boats sank near the Mediterranean
	of Spain and Greece.	
	a) coast	b) beach
	c) bank	d) ocean





Vocabulary General Exercises

1	The panda was them left.	listed as a threatened	dbecause t	here are only a few of
		b) species	r) snice	d) pace
2	A camera crew	accompanied the evr	olorer on his last Arc	tic to record;
_	a) flight	h) duty	clexpedition	d) picnic
3	It is believed th	at few living	can survive without	d) picnic water or with little of
	a) creatures	b) features	c) cultures	d) materials
4	The art heliefs	hehaviour and ideas	of a particular societ	y or group of people
·	are their		or a particular socie	bldond a decide
		b) agriculture	c) commerce	d) culture
5	Many people h	elieve that we should	n't invest in any com	pany that pollutes
	the	cheve that we should	Te mirese in any com	pany mark and co
		b) involvement	c) replacement	d) improvement
6	When his team	lost the match, the co	nach had to	the consequences o
	his bad decisio			1
	a) involve	b) fetch	c) face	d) enjoy
7		e working overtime to	finish the engineeri	ng on time.
	a) message	b) project	c) object	d) career
8	My teacher adv	ised me to fo	r a charity in order t	o help the communic
	and spend my f	free time usefully. b) deny	,	
	a) enlist	b) deny	c) volunteer	d) fight
9	Regular tests er	nable teachers to moni	tor the of e	each student.
	a) decrease	b) failure	c) effect	d) progress
10	The assistant at	the gallery pointed or	that non يلفت النظر ut	e of these paintings is
	but the	ev are copied cleverly.		
	a) fake	b) original	c) stolen	d) normal
11	I'm going to	to the customer ser	vice about the sales	sman's bad treatment.
	a) complain	b) explain	c) greet	d) salute
12	Galapagos Island	d has morein	plant life than othe	r islands nearby.
	a) biology	b) biodiversity	c) biochemistry	d) terrorism
13	I think it's import	tant tolocal b	usinesses by buying	g local products.
		b) import		
14	The native	of the Amazon dep		
	a) pioneers	b) discoverers		
15				is artists' latest works.
	a) common	b) unique	c) simple	d) ordinary
[

- 16	The resort in	the New Alamein has	a beautiful golden	where you can
	enjoy marvelle	ous time.		4
	a) coast	b) beach	c) bank	d) side
17	The report cor	mmented on the poor.	of the old road	ls.
	a) state	b) series	c) scenery	d) exhibition
18	The students in	n Faiyum planned to ta	ke a picnic on the east	of Lake Qaroun.
		b) bank	c) beach	d) bay
19	All tourists enj	oy the wildlife	e of the deserts in Sinai	and Siwa Oasis.
	a) common	b) awful	c) exotic	d) terrible
20	The museum is	s a part of the local his	tory and should be pre	served. The verb
-	"preserve" can	be the antonym of "	#	
	a) conserve	b) waste	c) keep	d) value
21	Teaching youn	g children is considere	ed a/an and re	warding job.
-	a) challenge		b) challenged	
	c) challenging		d) unchallengeable	
-0	It is very kind o	f you to care		
	a) in	b) at	c) by	d) for
	My mother insi	sts that we all should	a bath before	going to bed.
23	a) have	h) give	c) do	d) devise
	Ali has improve	ed hissince h		
24	All rias improve	b) behaving	c) hehaviour	d) hehaved
		agrees with the idea		
25			that women can hav	e chilaren ana a joz
		me time.	c) with	d) of
	a) in			
26		ting a degree doesn't		ne word guarantee
	is similar in mea	ning to the word "	***************************************	.15 - L -
	a) ensure	b) ignore	c) refuse	a) snow
	_	e new job is really	, and the salary	
	the old one.			Congres
		b) rewarding		
8	A good teacher	should the b	ehaviour of young ch	ildren so that he/sh
,	can learn much	about their character	S.	clonges
	a) monitor	b) interrupt	c) stop	d) corrupt
		oon; I have won a/an		
	Cambridge.			ilonomo
		b) lightship	c) scholarshin	
		nmunities are keen o		
		iniunities are keen o		or resources. Foreign
	a) observation		b) reservation	
- (c) conversation		d) conservation	

Comparative phrases

المقارنة بين الأشخاص والأشياء نستخدم مجموعة من التعبيرات التي تبين ما إذا كان الشيئان أو الشخصان متساويين أم ين فارق كبير أو صغير في الصفة المشتركة ببنهما:



exactly the same (noun) as

مه المقارنة الثاني + exactly the same (noun) as + وجه المقارنة الأول وزيم هذا الشكل لبيان أنه لا فرق بين شخصين أو شيئين.

Your bag is exactly the same as my bag. Your bag is exactly the same colour as my bag. Ola is as old as Hala. They are exactly the same age. My father does exactly the same job as your father.

almost as + adj. ميفة + as

than + صفة مقارنة + than

جنيم هذا الشكل لبيان أن الفارق ليس كبيرًا بين شخصين أو شبئين.

I'm almost as tall as my brother.

We're almost as good at maths as you.

The trip to New Zealand is slightly more expensive than the trip to Brazil.

far + صفة مقارنة + than

ستخدم هذا الشكل لبيان أن الفارق كبير بين شخصين أو شيئين.

d) so bia

In my opinion, playing football is far more interesting than watching it on TV. ننيه هام: يجب مراجعة درس الصفات والمقارنة والتفضيل من الوحدة الثانية.

Language Check point 4

c) almost as big

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The movie is almost as _____ as the book. c) the best d) well a) better b) good 2 You look like your brother, but he isthan you. b) more tall c) more taller d) as tall a) slightly taller 3 The red bicycle is ___ as the blue one. a) less expensive b) more expensive d) slightly expensive c) the same price 4 His timetable is the same as yours. a) almost b) far c) slightly d) exactly 5 My new flat is ... as the old one. b) slightly bigger

Past habits

للتعبير عن عادات الماضي بمكن استخدام:

Past simple

نستخدم الماضي البسيط مع أحداث وعادات الماضي المتكررة ونستخدم معها عادة فلروف التكرار مثل، Always, often, every day, etc. when I was young, I always walked to school.

used to + inf.

نستخدم to Used بمعنى اعتاد على للتعبير عن المواقف الدائمة وعادات الماضي والروتين والحقائق التي كانت قديدا ولكنها لم تعد الأن.

tused to have a bike, but now I don't. My father used to be an accountant, but now he is a manager at a big company. Jused to play for the school team on Fridays when I was a student.

في السؤال والنفي نحذف d ونستخدم use بعد Did/didn't

			Yes/No questions			
Did	Subject	use to	base fo	rm		
	you			you	were	
Did	she	use to	have a mobile phone when	she	was	young?
	they			they	were	

			Negative			
Subject	didn't	use to	base fo	rm		
1				-	was	
She	didn't	use to	have a mobile phone when	she	was	young.
They				they	were	

ويمكن النفي بـ .never used to + inf

My father never used to have a mobile phone when he was young.

نستخدم used to أيضنا للأشياء التي كانت دائمًا حقيقية ولم تعد الأن:

This building is now a furniture shop. It used to be a cinema.

leans used to come only in blue. Now, you can buy them in any colour.

Subj. + used to + inf., but now + present simple. He used to sleep early, but now he sleeps late.

- لا تُستخدم used to للتعبير عن الماضي القريب

We can't say: I used to get up early last week.

But we can say: I got up early last week.

Part (1) Lessons 1 & 2 113

a) slightly as big



would +inf التعبير عن العادات والسلوك النمطى المتكرر في الماضي وليس عن الشيء الدائم وثوابت الأشياء. At weekends, my father would go and buy fruit, and also he would buy me sweets.

البجملة تعبر عن سلوك متكرر لشخص وليس عن مواقف وأشياء حقيقية مثل امتلاك شخص لشيء أو وظيفة لديه.

I used to have a bike when I was ten years old. (Not: I would have a bike......)

Hotel companies would buy the best land in the town. There used to be a lot of tourists. (NOT: There would be a lot of tourists.).

used to لا تستخدم مع would لأنما أنعال ثابتة وتدل على الحالة ولكنما تستخدم مع state verbs مثل I didn't use to know about plants before joining the Faculty of Agriculture.

و نستخدم wouldn't know مَى المثال السابق.

Language Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	When we had a problem, ou	r teacherus.
	a) used to helped	b) was helping
	c) helps	d) would help
2	My uncle me a glass	of juice every time I went to his office.
	a) used to offer	b) offers
	c) used to offering	d) would be offered
3	Imy leg in a horse ri	ide when I was 25.
	a) would break	b) used to break
	c) broke	d) was breaking
4	When I was a teenager, I	my grandparents and help them bake bread.
	a) was visiting	b) would visit
	c) visit	d) am used to visiting
5	Therea train station	near my house, but now there is one.
	a) didn't use to be	b) used to be
	c) would be	d) didn't use to have



1 She's a lovely li	ttle girl. I think that she's	going to be almost _	her mother.
a) more pretty t	han	b) prettier as	
c) so pretty as		d) as pretty as	
2 Your phone is e	xactly mine.		
a) better than		b) so good as	
c) the same qua	ality as	d) much better than	1
3 My laptop is	more powerful th	nan Osama's.	
a) exactly	b) slightly	c) the same	d) almost
4 The exam was s	lightly than I e	xpected.	
a) easier	b) as easy	c) much easier	d) easy
5 When I visited t	he city centre, it was	less crowded t	han usual.
a) so	b) many	c) slightly	d) as
6 Strangely, this fo	ood has exactly	meat.	
a) much tastier	b) the same taste as	c) a good taste as	d) tastier than
7 Whenever we st	ay at this hotel, we slee	ep exactly in	. room.
a) the same	b) same	c) the same as	d) as the same
8 Petrol is	expensive as it was la	ist year.	
a) slightly	b) far	c) almost	d) almost as
9 My leg hurts. Ca	n you walk m	ore slowly?	
a) almost	b) as	c) slightly	d) lot
10 It's strange to fir	nd that BMW is exactly	the same price	Toyota.
a) than	b) as	c) from	d) at
11 Their house is	two times as b	ig as ours.	
a) almost	b) almost as	c) slightly	d) much
12 Going by train is	slightly thar	driving your own c	ar.
a) much expensi		b) expensive	
c) more expensiv	/e	d) as expensive	

13 When I was younger, I swimming with my friends and spend a nice ting	23 My flat overlooks two streets. Each is 20 metres wide. This means that
on the beach.	a) the two streets are exactly the same wide
a) am used to go b) would go c) went d) go	b) one street is wider than the other
14 When I was a student, I always finished my homework and thenTV for	c) the two streets are exactly the same width
an hour.	d) the two streets are not as wide as each other
a) used to watch b) watch	24 When I was young,
c) watching d) watched	a) I was used to be slim, but now I don't.
15 When he was young, he his bike to school.	b) I would visit my friends every weekend.
a) used to ride b) was riding	c) I would be slim, but now I'm rather fat.
c) rides d) had ridden	d) I was used to being slim, but now I'm rather fat.
16 On holidays, mum me a big breakfast.	25 One of the following is grammatically correct.
a) was making b) is making	a) Our new car is much more bigger than our old one.
c) had made d) would always make	b) Our old car was much more smaller than our new one.
17 Did she cry a lot when she was a baby?	c) Our old car was much smaller than our new one.
a) use to b) used to c) using d) be used to	d) Our old car was as almost smaller as our new one.
18 When he was a driver, my dadhome from work at 7 pm.	
a) had arrived b) arrives	
c) would always arrive d) used to arriving	Teacher: No, African ones are slightly larger.
19 Ola's laptopvery good. But now she can't download photos from	a) small than b) the same price as
the Internet.	c) the same size as d) as tall as
a) didn't use to be b) used to be c) wasn't d) would be	27 There a lot of tourists visiting that historic place. Now, the number of
20 He used to send letters to his friends, but now hee-mails.	tourists is a lot lower.
a) was sending b) used to send c) sends d) is sending	a) will be , b) used to being c) would be d) used to be
21 When we were children, mother accompany us to bed and read us	28 My fathergo to work by car, but now he does.
a bedtime story.	a) didn't use to b) isn't used to c) is used to d) used to
a) would b) was used to c) wasn't used to d) didn't used to	29 Your bag is mine. It is the same colour, size and price.
22 Your car is expensive and so is Hany's. This means that	a) almost as expensive as b) exactly the same as
a) Hany's car is slightly more expensive than yours	c) not similar to d) slightly different from
b) your car is slightly more expensive than Hany's	30 You aren't careful, Amir; you make mistakes you have made before. Acongmon
c) your car is far more expensive than Hany's	a) exactly same b) a slightly different
d) your car is exactly the same price as Hany's	c) exactly the same d) a completely different
	117

Test yourself



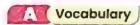
(Lessons 1 & 2)

10-	-	Vocabulary
	J	vocabular y

1	We need to ta	ke action to help	fish stocks in t	he Nile.			
	a) damage	b) pollute	c) deserve	d) preserve versities in England.			
2	The young ma	in won a for	one of the best unit	versities in England.			
	a) race	b) fair	c) scholarship	d) tournament			
3	I bought a mo	del of the Eiffel Towe	r as a of my	d) tournament visit to Paris.			
	a) souvenir	b) memory	c) reward	d) trophy			
4	The teacher se	et a time of 30	minutes for the test	he gave us this morning			
	a) border	b) limit	c) quota	d) amount			
5	It is believed t	b) limit hat the older	. tends to have more	e traditional views.			
	a) generation	b) provision	c) prohibition	d) invention			
6	We need to fin	d ways to avoid unne	ecessary wl	hich causes pollution.			
	a) crop	b) waste	c) diet	d) entry			
7	Many young r	nen and women bec	ame actively involve	d) entry edpolitics after			
	the revolution						
	a) on	b) out	c) in	d) for			
8	The animals' te	emperature and hear	tbeat are regularly r	monitored. The synonym			
	of the verb "me	b) improvise					
	a) neglect	b) improvise	c) ignore	d) observe			
9	It is important to encourage environmental and awareness among						
	ordinary peop	le.					
	a) accommoda	l e. tion	b) convention				
	c) conservation		d) scholarship				
10		age where e	verything can be do	ownloaded from			
	the internet.						
		b) ordinary					
11		e species are added to	o the list of	animals and plants on			
	our planet.						
	a) preserved	b) endangered	c) lasting	d) banishing			
12		an be taken in the					
	a) device	b) figure	c) equation	d) form			
13	Nurses in the In	tensive Care Unit are	constantly	the patients' condition.			
	a) appearing	b) monitoring ast is well-known for t	c) designing	d) devising			
4	The Red Sea coa	ast is well-known for t	he amazing	reefs.			
	a) coral	b) shark	c) dolphin	d) turtle			
		for even the n					
	a) challenge	b) changing	c) challenging	d) challengeable			

)	Language			
	When we work	ed in the same office,	we coffee tog	ether.
,-	a) didn't used to	have	b) often have	
	c) were used to		d) would often have	e
17	Our present lea	der is than th	e last one.	
	a) slightly more	experienced	b) almost as experi	enced
	c) exactly more	experienced	d) much experience	
18	What food	like when you we	re ten?	
	a) do you use to	b) you used to	c) did you use to	d) would you
19	My father is alm	ost my moth	ier.	
	a) more enthusia	estic than	b) as enthusiastic a	35
	c) so enthusiasti	cas	d) the same enthu	siastic as
20	Sara a r	novel every week whe	en she was young.	
	a) would reads	b) was reading	c) reads	d) read
21	Tamer has	number of books	as Osama. Their bags	are the same weight.
	a) slightly the sar	ne	b) almost the sam	e
	c) slightly much		d) exactly the sam	e
22	My father	slim, but now he s	uffers from obesity ដ	السم.
		b) had been	c) used to be	d) wasn't
23	Let's walk. It's alr	nost taking	the bus!	
	a) as quick than	b) as quick as	c) as quickly as	d) quicker as
24	When my uncle	visited us in the past,	, he us swee	ts and give us money
	a) would buy			d) used to buying
25	My brother leave	s home exactly at	time as my fa	ther.
		b) same	c) good	d) the same
		much hair, but now l	he is almost bald.	
		b) would have	c) almost has	d) didn't have
		complicated	than it seems.	
		b) slightly more	c) as	d) much
		syesterday		
	a) almost as cold		b) almost as cole	d
) almost as cold		d) almost as col	
-		nged a lot. There	•	
) are	b) would be	c) will be	d) used to be
	•	•		•
		ring sentences is gr oung, I would go shop		
				ierevery rinday.
		ung, I would have bl		
		nds would you have		
d) As a child, I wo	uld hate having to g	et up early.	





Vocabulary on Reading and Listening Texts

achieve (v) (d)	حقق <i>ا</i> ینجز	organisation (n)	قمة
arise (v)	نشا	e organise (v) (d)	Phi
benefit (n) (v) (ed)	نائدة/يستفيد	pick up (v) (ed)	لتقطرايجمع
career (n)	حياة مهنية	positive (adj)*	دباب
certain (adj)	عحدد	program (n)	ونامخ
community (n)	مجتمع	psychological (adj)	زيسا
consequently (conj.)	بناء على ذلك	purpose (n)	رض
contacts (n)	اتصالات/معارف	related (adj)	رتبط
contrast (n)	تناقض	relax (v) (ed)	سترخى
cost (v) (n)	يتكلف/تكلفة	repair (v) (ed)	صلح
discussion (n)	مناقشة	sign (n)	علامة/لافتة
enjoyable (adj)	ممتع	skateboard (n) (v) (ed)	لوح تزلج/يتزلج بلوح
exist (v) (ed)	يوجد	skatepark (n)	منتزه للتزلج
explain (v) (ed)	يشرح/يفسر	solve (v) (d)	يحل
goal (n)	مدف	sound (v) (ed)	يندو
inspire (v) (d)	یلهم/یحث/یوحی ب	specific (adj)	محدد
laptop (n)	كمبيوتر محمول	suggest (v) (ed)	يقترح
lead (v)	يقود/يؤدي	suitable (adj)	مناسب
leader (n)	قائد	valuable (adj)	قَيِم
majority (n)	أغلبية	visible (adj)	مرئى
mental (adj)	عقلی/نمنی	volunteering (n)	تطوع
operating system (n)	نظام تشغيل		
opportunity (n)	فرصة	youth (n)	ښاپ

We must take positive steps to solve the water problem.

Workbook Vocabulary

argue (v) (d)	يجادل	gain (v) (ed)	يحصل على/يكتسب
charity (n)	عمل خیری/مؤسسة خیریة	necessary (adj)	ضروري
definition (n)	تعريف	result in (v) (ed)	يؤدي إلى/يسفر عن
eventually (adv)	أخيرًا/في النهاية	reward (n) (v) (ed)	مكافأة/يكافئ
expert (n)	خبير	shade (n)	ظل
expression (n)	تعبير	solution (n)	حل
formal (adj)	رسمى	sunny (adj)	مشمس

Vocabulary Check point 1

b 1	The volunteers	at Misr El Khir provide	e a service	to the poor people all
	over Egypt.			
	a) valuable	b) vaiueless	c) devalued	d) unvalued
2	Windows is pro	bably the most popula	ar system;	it is used by millions of
	computers all o	over the world.		
	a) sports	b) operating	c) research	d) building
3	The office	a car to meet the c	onference guests a	at the airport.
	a) popularised	b) realised	c) organised	d) recognised
4	I couldn't sleep	well at the hotel room	n as a neon	flashed on and off in
	the window.			
	a) project	b) note	c) scene	d) sign
5		generations of scie		
		b) inspired		
6	My parents alw	ays advise me to spen	d my money on so	mething that will
-	me.			
	a) harm	b) injure	c) heal	d) benefit
7	The doctor susp	pects that my headach	ne is purely	as he couldn't find any
	physical reason	-		
		b) psychological	c) defective	d) optional
8	It took my friend	d a long time to	enough confid	lence to speak in public.
		b) inquire		
9	The Cairo Tower	is from a far	away area in Cairo	and Giza.
	a) realised	b) distant	c) visible	d) acceptable
10	The young boy	doesn't take the scho	ol bus. He	to school every day and
	now he needs a			
	a) walks	b) skateboards	c) hurries	d) inspects

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

as a result مثلث		make contacts	يون صداقات/معارف	
give the opportunity	يعطى الفرصة	take turns	يدل الأدوار	
go diving	يمارس الغطس	the pros and cons of	يها وعيوب	
aim of	مدف اد حدف اد	contrast between	نين بين	
arise from	ينشأ من	download from	نه راه	
benefit for	فائدة لـ	lead to	ريا إلى	
contact with	اتصال مع	result of	الد	

Derivatives

Verb		Nou	Noun		Adjective	
achieve	يحقق/ينجز	achievement	إنجاز	achieved achievable	رققى يمكن تحقيقه	
argue	يجادل	argument	جىل	argumentat arguable	بىلى tive تابل للجدل	
define	يعرف	definition	تعريف	defined	مددامعرف	
exist	يوجد	existence	وجود	existing/exis	موجود stent	
explain	يفسرايشرح	explanation	شرح/تفسير	explanatory explicable	تفسيرى قابل للتفسير	
express	يعبر عن	expression	تعبير	expressive	معبر	
inspire	يلهم/يحث	inspiration	إلهام/إيحاء	inspiring inspirational	ملھم/موحی ب ملھم	
relax	يسترخى	relaxation	استرخاء	relaxing relaxed	مریح مسترخ	
solve	يحل	solution	حا،	solved solvable	محلول قابل للحل	
value *	يقنر	value	اقيمة	valuable	قيم	

- During my illness, I learned to value the ordinary things in life.

words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	المرانث Synonym	العنك Antonym
argue	يجادل	dispute/quarrel	agree/surrender يوانق ليستسلم
arise	ينشا	emerge/appear	disappear/end يختفي لينتمي
contrast	تناقض	contradiction/difference	agreement/harmony التفاق الثنافم
inspire	يلحم/يحث/يوح	motivate/stimulate	discourage/depress يثبط يحبط
necessary	ضريري	essential/basic	extra/minor/unnecessary بضائض/غیر هام
psychologic	al نفسی	mental	physical جسمانی
reward	مكافأة/يكلفئ	honour	penalty جزاء/عقوبة
specific	محدد	definite/particular	شائع غير منند common/indefinite

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

b) went

1	The young mo	other expressed sur	prise at her son's rude l	behaviour. The noun of
			c) expressive	d) expressively
2	We are here to	give help and supp	ort when necessary. Th	
1	the adjective "r	necessary" is "		
	a) essential	b) basic	c) suitable	d) minor
3	The young acto	or has a lot	of contacts in the med	lla who help him a lot.
2) made	b) done	c) given	d) built
4 1		cumentary about th	ne events that led	
a) with	b) of	c) to	d) in
	even copies of he verb "exist" i		are still known to exist.	The adjective of
a	exists	b) existence	c) existing	d) existed
6 T		ro has inspired us t	o lead better lives. The	
a)	motivate	b) discourage	c) deny	d) express
7 W	hen we visited	Dahab, we	diving on the magn	ificent coral reefs.
			c) did	

⁻ It is believed that cars go down in value quickly.

⁻ The thieves took three pieces of valuable jewellery.

8	B N	Mariam joined a	book club to get a l	ittle contact	, other people of he
	0	wn age.			-
	a) for	b) on	c) in	d) with
9			the contrasts between the noun "contrast"	een his early books a	nd his later books.
			b) agreement	c) harmony	d) deviation
10		Oifficulties arise when werb "arise" is		consult their colleag	jues. The opposite o

Reading Text (1) (Workbook)

c) disappear

Can volunteering benefit young people today?

Several research studies have proven that significant psychological benefits that can arise from volunteering, for people of any age. For young people though, there are many reasons why volunteering would benefit them. In my opinion, the most important benefit is that it simply makes them feel good about themselves.

b) appear

ينشأ من (1) ليس فقط (2) ولكن أيضا (3) يؤدي إلى (4) لكي (5) بناء على ذلك (6)

d) intend

I believe that a further important benefit is that young people can develop useful skills and valuable experience.

These can prove extremely useful not only 21 at school, but also (3) in their careers.

For example, a volunteer job with an organisation may lead to haid work. Volunteering could also provide the opportunity to find out if working in a certain area would be enjoyable and suitable.

The third and final benefit of volunteering is that it gives young people the opportunity to make useful contacts. A majority of volunteers work together in order to other very well and team leaders may then put volunteers into contact with people who can offer them other interesting opportunities.

In conclusion, it is clear that volunteering brings several important benefits for the volunteers involved. However, as I explained above, the most important benefit is the positive effects that volunteering has on the volunteers' mental health.

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

The problem

Many students at your school take the bus home at the end of each day.

The problem is that the bus stop is always very sunny. It is very hot waiting for the bus and some children don't feel well if the bus is late.

Possible solutions

- 1. Give sun shades to all the students, so that they can stay out of the sun. You can also advise them to wear hats.
- 2. Plant trees around the bus stop, so that students can stay out of the sun while they are waiting.
- 3. Move the bus stop next to a building, so that students can stay out of the sun while they are waiting.
- 4. Tell the students to wait inside the school until they can see the bus arriving.

Reading Text (3) (Workbook)

We should reward all volunteers

Some people argue that we should reward volunteers by giving them some money for their work. **However**, I believe that this is not necessary. Why is this?

The definition of to volunteer is to work or help someone without being paid. Many charities need volunteers in order to help people who have problems or who are very poor. In my opinion, the charities need all the money they receive to help these people. **Consequently**, they do not have enough money to pay volunteers.

So, why should volunteers work for no money? **Not only** do volunteers gain valuable experiences from volunteering, but they also teach them skills that they can use in their careers. I believe that voluntary work can eventually **lead to** a volunteer getting a good job.

In conclusion, I would say that there are many benefits that **arise from** volunteering rather than being paid.

a) emerge

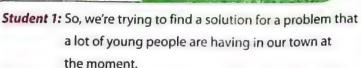
Listening Text (1)

مئتزه للتزلج (١)

التزلج باللوح (2)

ينظم (4)

بتكلف (5)



Student 2: Yes, there aren't enough facilities for young people in our town. When you're not at school or doing your homework, the only things you can do are: to go for a walk, go shopping or go swimming.

Student 1: Yes, I think we should have a far wider range of facilities for young people here.

Student 2: We could ask the local council to build a skatepark". That wouldn't cost very much money, and it wouldn't take up very much space either.

Student 1: That's true, but not all young people like skateboarding, and what if there's a storm or it's too hot outside?

Student 2: That's a good point. Do you have any other suggestions?

Student 1: Well, what about starting a youth(3) club in a building that's already there? The council wouldn't have to build anything new and the youth club could offer lots of different activities, so there's something for everyone.

Student 2: Well, the council would still need to pay some people to organise(4) the youth club, so it wouldn't be completely free.

Student 1: OK, but it might not cost a lot and they could ask for volunteers.

Student 2: OK, but what activities could we do at the youth club? Playing games and drawing aren't very interesting for older kids.

Student 1: OK, so we have two possible solutions so far. It seems like we need to find something that doesn't cost(5) very much money, but which is interesting and a lot of young people will find interesting.



-		
presen	ter: In today's programme, we listen to your computer problems, then ask three experts to suggest(1)	يقترح (1)
ola	a solution. First, we have Ola. What's your problem, Ola? : Hi. I have an old laptop ⁽²⁾ which used to be really good.	كمبيوتر محمول (2)
01-	At school, we did a project for homework about sea life. All my friends could download photos and information	يبدو (3)
	from the internet, but now my laptop won't do this. What should I do?	يصلح (4)
present	er: OK, let's ask our first expert. What do you think Ola should do, Amal?	نظام تشغیل (5)
Amal	: Well, it sounds like your computer is very old. Why don't	you buy

a new one? Then, I think your problem will be solved. presenter: Thanks. Do you agree, Dina? : No, because new computers are expensive! Even an old laptop should

be able to download photos, so perhaps there is a problem with it. I think you should take it to a shop. I'm sure they can repair(4) it.

presenter: OK. What about you Manal? What advice do you have?

: I think you can solve the problem yourself. You probably just need Manal a new operating system.⁵¹. This is a program you can download from the internet; I think this will solve your problem.

Video Script

Conservation isn't only something people do in exotic(1) places. We need to preserve biodiversity in our own community too.

There are hundreds or even thousands of different plant species in your community. Stay on the path when you're walking outside, so you won't walk on the plants. Find out about the plant species in (3) ماشية your area and grow them in your garden so there are more of them.

Try to buy meat, vegetables and dairy products from your area. This will help the farmers who produced them to continue to grow (5) the same crops⁽²⁾ and keep the same livestock⁽³⁾ on their farms.

Try not to use too much water at home. Take a shower instead of a bath, and turn the water off while you're brushing your teeth.

von't	be a	dde	at is made of glass, paper or plastic. Then it I rubbish site ⁴⁾ which can pollute the soil
-		4)	• • • •
			•

مثير/غريب (1)

Notes | On Vocabulers

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات وانية واستخداماتها

1	present		My little brother has received a lot of present	s on
		هدية	his birthday.	
	prize		I won this new bike as a prize in the sports	
2 -9+		جائزة	competition.	
	reward		The young clerks were given a reward for help	inq
1		مكافأة	complete the project in a short time.	
	award		The young actor is hoping for the best actor	
1		وسام/جائزة رسمية	award in the film festival.	
	award		The young actor is hoping for the best actor	

	work عمل/مكان العمل (اسم لا يعد)	I like this company very much. The work is really easy.
}	works أعمال فنية أو أدبية (اسم يعد)	A collection of Shakespeare's works is offered for a cheap price at the book fair.
2	job وظيفة (اسم يعد)	The young man has applied for several jobs recently.
	career (مهنة) الحياة العملية للفرد	My father received a lot of honours during his career as a doctor.
١	profession (مھنة) تحتاج إلى مؤھلات وتدريب	(the medical القضاء /egal) القضاء /nursing/teaching profession) - People who work in the medical profession receive much appreciation.

J	argue for يناضل من أجل/يؤيد	Dr Aisha Abdel Rahman, the Egyptian writer, always argued for women's rights.	
3	argue against پناضل ضد/یعارض	He argued powerfully against capital punishment.	
	argue with یجادل مع شخص (فی الرأی)	Don't argue with me, Emad. Just do what I tell you.	

rise (rose	/rise	n)
--------	------	-------	----

يرتفع من تلقاء نفسه/تشرق/يزداد/يستيقظ/ يقف/يتصاعد (لا يأتي بعده مفعول)

- The river has risen by several metres.
- -The price of petrol has risen by 3 per cent.

arise (arose/arisen)

يحدث (لا يأتي بعده مفعول)ايظمراينشا

- Several problems have arisen recently.
- Some learning difficulties arise from the way children are taught at school.

raise (raised/raised) يزيد (يأتى بعده مفعول)ايربى ايجمع ايرفع ايثير

- I've never heard him even raise his voice.

- We are raising money for charity.

arouse (aroused/aroused) يثير (يسبب رد فعل معين/عاطفة لدي الناس) بأتى بعده ممعول

/مخاوف fears/اهتمام interest/مشاعر fears/مشاعر شکوك (doubts) شکوك

- The event aroused considerable interest and media coverage.

because of the increased cost of new cars.

Yocabulary Check point 3

4, Used car sales have

Cho	ose the correct a	swer from a, b, c or a:
1	The famous acti	ess is a feminist activist whose films argueswomen
	rights.	
	a) in	b) for
	c) against	d) with
1	It's sad that so m	ny young people are unable to find these days.
	a) jobs	b) works
	c) careers	d) professions
3	The police offere	a/an for any information about the robbery.
	a) present	b) award
	c) reward	d) prize

b) raised a) risen

c) aroused d) arisen



Vocabulary General Exercises

•	1	To be successful to reach.	ul, you must ensure	that you do not set	that are difficult		
			b) presents	c) goals	d) destinations		
	2			e new project, but the v			
		of it.					
		a) minority	b) priority	c) seniority	d) majority		
	3	Egypt has mair	ntained trade	with India for more t	han fifty years.		
				c) facts			
4	4	successful.		et which good			
				c) failed			
	5			if the heart stops p			
				c) aside			
	6			anking facilities to peop			
				c) communities			
7	7	Winning the g	old medal is conside	ered the highlight of a	ny successful athlete's		
			b) task	c) work	d) career		
	8	The writer's no	vels wereb	y his long experience	working as a diplomat		
		The writer's novels wereby his long experience working as a diplomat in many countries.					
				c) designed	d) devised		
	9			ning for the preservati			
		a) community	b) band	c) organisation	d) league		
	10	We should upg	rade the computer t	o make it to o	ur new powerful		
		We should upgrade the computer to make it to our new powerful software.					
		a) affordable	b) suitable	c) possible	d) achievable		
	11	The new progra	m makesv	ideos from websites fas	ster.		
				c) uploading			
				nes are aimed at a			
				c) vague			
	13	Many people b	elieve that small com	panies will cease to	in a few years'		
			hard business comp		III a ICVV years		
				c) exist	d) vanish		
	4.4	*	•	healthy lifestyle is the	•		
	14	preventing dise		i nearing mestyle is the	key element of		
				al ramanta	al\ +======		
		a) exports	b) experts	c) reports	a) trainees		

45 Stress has a	in effect on both your pl	nysical andl	health.
a) bodily	b) imaginative	c) improper	d) mental
16 If the bank	lends us the money we	need, all our problen	ns will be
a) solved	b) dealt	c) caused	d) cared
17 More and n	nore businessmen dona	te to work	to relieve the effects of
the econom	ic prices.		
a) popularity	b) corporation	c) charity	d) ability
18 My uncle is l	peginning tost	rength again after h	iis long illness.
a) rise	b) gain	c) earn	d) deal
19 The tempera	iture can reach 40°C in t	hein Uppe	er Egypt especially in
summer.			
a) shadow	b) shade	c) figure	d) moisture
o From the pla	ne, the tops of the mou	ntains were	above the clouds.
a) available	b) accessible	c) visible	d) obtainable
Many progra	ms have been produce	ed with the aim	increasing public
awareness of	the disease.		
a) for			d) of
	y provides a clear, simp	le of word	s that can be easily
understood.			
	b) definition		
3 In the park, ch	nildren have to	turns on the swing	and other game tools.
a) take	b) give vious واضح contrast	c) add	d) provide
4 There is an ob	contrast واضح vious	the cultures of	f East and West.
a) in	b) between	c) at	d) for
	beach under an umbre		
a) relax	b) relaxation	c) relaxing	d) relaxed
6 The children s	hould be the	opportunity to mak	e their own choices.
a) taken	b) turned	c) denied	d) given
	s failure was a direct re		
a) of	b) in	c) at	d) for
8 If she felt he w	as right; she would agi	ree with him. The ve	erb "agree" can be
	of the verb "".		
a) express	b) approve	c) argue	d) excite
ltisnecessary t	o answer all the questic	ons on the exampap	er.The word "necessary
	of		
	b) essential	c) trivial	d) unacceptable
	eople like football; the		
El Zamalek tea			(Longma
	b) general	c) majority	
-,	w, general	c,a,o,	a, p



Important Notes



رع بالإضافة إلى ما تم شرحه في الجزء الأول، هناك كلمات أخرى تستخدم لبيان الفارق الكبير والصغير في درجة

المقارنة ومنها:

1. a bit/a little/even/rather + صفة مقارنة + than

يستخدم هذا الشكل لبيان أن الفارق ليس كبيرًا بين شخصين أو شيئين.

Travelling by train is a little/a bit/even/rather cheaper than travelling by car.

2. much/a lot/ far + صفة مقارنة + than

يستخدم هذا الشكل لبيان أن الفارق كبير بين شخصين أو شيئين.

Gold is much/a lot/far more expensive than salt.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	Wood is	than gold,	but in sor	ne cases, it is more use	ful.
	a) as cheap			b) more cheaper	
	c) cheapest			d) far cheaper	

- 2 I'm 18 and my brother is 30, so he's me.
 - a) much older than
 - b) almost as old as
 - c) exactly the same age as
 - d) the oldest of
- 3 When I'm with you, I'm ...
 - b) happier than a) more happy d) as happy c) a lot happier
- picture than the one we saw yesterday. 4 This TV has got a ...
 - a) good

b) much better

c) more better

- d) best
- 5 I think French is ... than English.
 - a) difficult

b) much difficult

c) as difficult

d) much more difficult



1. Be (get) used to + v.ing

(Be used to) means "be accustomed to", "be in the habit of".

- تعبر be(get) + used to + v-ing/noun/pronoun عن عادة في الحاضر.

My father is very active. He is used to getting up early. I didn't like my job at first, but I'm (get)used to it now.

She isn't used to living in hot climates.

2 Object + (be + used to) + Inf. = passive

- إذا جاء قبل be used to مفعول فيأتي بعدها المصدر، وفي هذه الحالة يكون المعنى (يستخدم) وليس يعتلن This knife is used to cut onions.

2. Object + (be + used for) + ing.

- وتستخدم be used for + v-ing للإشارة إلى الاستخدام العام للأشياء:

Knives are used for cutting things. Pens are used for writing.

4. No longer/any longer

- نستخدم no longer وبعدها مُعل مضارع أو any longer معها مضارع منفي بدلًا من used to

Osama no longer smokes.

Osama doesn't smoke any longer. = Osama used to smoke.



ا) في النفي دائمنا نجد didn't use to ولكن هناك نفي صحيح أيضنا وهو used not to Long time ago, clothes used not to be expensive.

۲) هناك used التي تستخدم صفة بمعنى مستخدم (مستعمل) وهي من الفعل use بمعنى يستخدم. It's very dangerous to buy used clothes nowadays because of diseases. used cars are always much cheaper than the new ones, and they need repairing.

kanguage Check point 5

1 On summer ev	enings, theyou	t in the garden and	d having cold drinks.
a) used to sit	b) are used to sitting	c) would sit	d) sat
2 This dictionary	is used toup th	e new and difficult	t words.
a) look	b) looking	c) looks	d) being looked
3 She never	to eat soup when sh	ne was young.	
a) would like	b) use to like	c) used to like	d) likes
4 The dentist	out two of his teet	h. One of them wa	s quite good.
a) used to pull	b) would pull	c) was pulling	d) pulled
	lives in the country	rside.	
a) used to	h) no longer	c) would	d) any longer



Language General Exercises

1	It was difficult to	o live in the hot clima	ate at first, but I soon	it,
	a) got used to	b) get used to	c) changed to	d) used to
2	My cat is a bit	than my dog.		
	a) friendly		b) slightly friendly	y
	c) more friendlie	f	d) friendlier	
3	When I was a stu	udent, schools	having more child	ren in the class.
	a) no longer		b) were used to	
	c) were using to		d) were use to	
4	His behaviour w	as than wh	at we thought at first.	
	a) strange		b) slightly strange	
	c) much stranger		d) almost strange	
5	I study in London	n, so I abro	ad.	
	a) was used to liv	ring	b) would live	
	c) used to live		d) am used to living	ng
6	For me, science i	s difficult tl	nan history.	
	a) slightly more	b) slightly much	c) slightly as	d) almost as
7	Shimaa	long dark hair, but s	he looks different nov	v.
	a) would have	b) has	c) used to have	d) was having
8	All my friends are	e than me d	uring races.	
	a) far quickly	b) far quicker	c) more quickly	d) quick
9	I've started drink	king tea recently. I ne	verlike it bel	fore.
	a) didn't use to	b) no longer	c) used to	d) any longer
10	She in t	ropical climates. Whe	en she does, she suffe	rs a lot.
	a) would live		b) used to live	
	c) is used to living	g	d) isn't used to livir	ng
11	You'd better wea	r your coat. It's	yesterday.	
	a) much colder th	nan	b) colder as	
	c) cold as		d) almost colder as	
12	He used to live in	Italy, but he	lives there.	
	a) used to	b) no longer	c) any longer	d) still

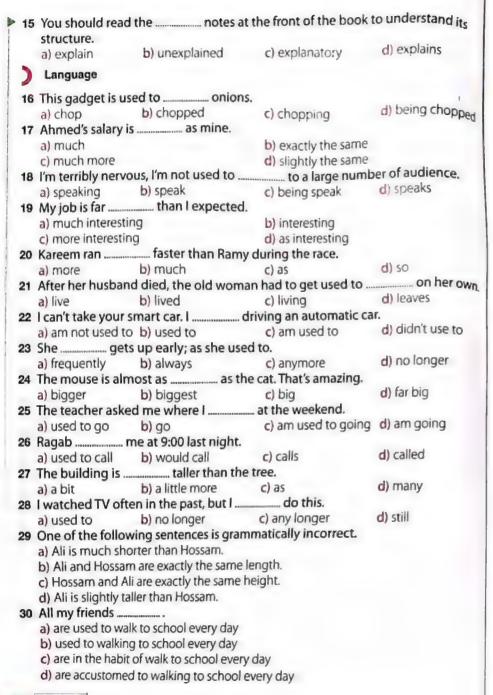
13 I a lot, but I do now.						
a) am used to reading	b) used to read					
c) didn't use to read	d) am not reading					
14 She used to eat a lot of sweets	She used to eat a lot of sweets, but she doesn't do					
a) any more	b) hardly					
c) no longer	d) longer					
Her illness was than we thought at first.						
a) serious enough	b) far more serious					
c) as serious	d) slightly serious					
16 Every evening, local people	out onto the streets and sell souvenirs.					
a) are used to going	b) had gone					
c) use to go	d) would go					
17 My brother be a bette	er swimmer than me and healways wi					
a) used to Avould	b) would used to					
c) used to/used to	d) would would					
18 He behaves worse that	an before.					
a) slight by as	c) more d) even					
19 He made his money from buyi	ng and selling cars.					
a) used to b) used	a) would use d) is used to					
20 Which sentence is NOT gramm	Which sentence is NOT grammatically correct?					
a) I didn't use to like cheese wh	a) I didn't use to like cheese when I was younger.					
b) I didn't use to walk home after	er school					
c) As a child, I would hate havin	ia to get up early					
d) I was used to studying in my	small room					
21 When I was young, I a	lot in bed.					
a) was reading	b) was used to reading					
c) used to reading	d) didn't use to reading					
22 One of the following sentence:	s is grammatically incorrect.					
a) When I was young, Lahvays w	ent to the public library with my friends					
b) When I was young, I used to d	go to the public library with my friends.					
	to the public library with my friends					
d) Last week. Lused to an to the						

2	23	The cheapest thing in this shop is the blue suit. This means that:						
		a) Everything in the shop is exactly the	·					
		b) Everything in the shop is slightly cheaper than the blue suit.						
		c) Everything in the shop is more expensive than the blue suit.						
		d) The blue suit is almost as cheap as	everything in the shop.					
	24	Osama and I have bought two small	T-shirts size 8. This means that i	ny T-shirt				
		is						
		a) exactly the same size as Osama's.	b) slightly smaller than Osan	na's.				
		c) much smaller than Osama's.	d) almost as big as Osama's					
	25	I had difficulty in driving cars in the past, but now I can drive well.						
		This means that:						
		a) I used to drive cars well in the past.						
		b) I was used to driving cars well in the	e past.					
		c) Driving cars in the past wasn't so eas	· ·					
		d) I no longer drive cars well now.						
	26	I think we should have a wid	er range of facilities in primary	schools.				
				(Longm				
		a) farther	b) many					
		c) far	d) lot					
	27	I used to catch fish when I was young, but now I don't do						
		a) any more	b) some more					
		c) no more	d) lot more					
	28	There as many people living of	on that isolated island as we see	nowaday				
		the number of people has greatly increased.						
		a) didn't use to have	b) used to be	(Longman				
		c) used to have	d) didn't use to be					
	29	My father no longer smokes as he	•	(Longman				
		a) used to be	b) used to have					
		c) is used to	d) used to					
		Which of the following ISN'T structural	ly correct?	(Longman)				
		a) Is your mobile phone the same price a		(Longinia)				
		b) A lot of people think that Arabic is mo						
		c) A train is far faster than a tram.						
		d) No invention is more important than t	he Internet.					
_								



	the	correct	answer	from	a,	b,	C	or	d
~PV03e						-			

1	Vocabulary			
-	The	of the summer festival	is to attract more touri	sts to the new city.
) argument	Di reason	r) degree	di nurnose
9	During the er	nergency, a lot of peop	ple to work thr	ough the night.
	vi-mintatec	i nivolunteered	c) dublicated	CO TO IDC
3	She pointed t	o her watch as a	that it was getting	late and she wanted
	a) comment	b) traffic	c) sign	d) note
4	Mohamed has	s been arole	c) sign model for his brother a	nd helped him to
	succeed.		c) defective	
	a) positive	b) negative	c) defective	d) relative
5	Thanks to a lar	rge gift from an anony	mous donor, the	was able to
,	continue its W	ork.		
	a) stock	b) charity	c) identity	d) popularity
6	The sales of el	ectric devices droppe	ed anda resu	Ilt companies' profits
	have declined.			
	a) at	b) with	c) as	d) for
7	Amateurs play	games more for the le	ove of sport than for fir	nancial reward.
	The antonym o	f the word "reward" is		
	a) honour	b) trophy	c) immigration y to consider the world	d) penalty
8	World	should meet regularl	y to consider the world	d problems and
	encourage pea	ce.		
	a) readers	b) citizens	c) leaders	d) clients
9	Our teacher alw	ays tries to make his	lessons for all	students.
	a) avoidable	b) enjoyable	c) detestable	d) perplexing
		are a seri اضطرابات النوم	ous problem	, but they aren't very
	hard to cure.			
	a) physical	b) herbal	c) psychological with each other. They a	d) scientific
1 (Our new neight	ours rarely	with each other. They a	are a perfect couple.
i	a) agree	b) argue	c) support	d) discuss
2 7	There was a wor	ried on my t	c) support father's face when I tol	d him about
Г	ny difficult iour	nev.		
ê	a) intention	b) description	c) aviation	d) expression
V	Ve should all wo	ork to find an effectiv	e to the city's	traffic problem.
8) ambition	b) impression	c) solution	d) condition
			onth, he was able to	
	the company.			•
) do		c) practise	d) avoid







95 للمزيد من الشرح والتجيبات برخى الرحوع لمنحق المهارات

Opinion essay: مقال الرأي

مقال الرأى هو مقال توضع فيه رأيك في موضوع ما، ويجب ذكر رأيك بوضوح خلال المقال. كما تقدم حجبًا وأسبابًا و وجعات نظر مختلفة حول الموضوع وتدعمها أدلة أو أمثلة:

Outline of an Argumentative Essay

المقدمة يجب أن تدعم بيان رأيك. اكتب عند أيلك المقدمة يجب أن تقوم بتقديم موضوعك وابداء رأيك بوضوع فيها التعبير عن رأيلك باستخدام فقرات، كل منها يقدم وجهة نظر منفصلة مدعومة تأكد من أنها لاتبدأ فقرة جديدة الأن الموضوع أي جملة الخصا النقطة للخصاء الموضوع أي جملة الخصا النقطة كلما الساد أفقرة مديدة أو الرنجوع عن رأيك الذي جديدة فقط عندما تريد مناقشة فكرة جديدة.

The benefits of volunteering

troduction

Volunteering is important for many reasons that benefit both the community and the volunteers themselves. When someone donates a handful of time, the difference made is tremendous and it shapes a community for the better, while the experience improves the person who donated the time.

Volunteering is what makes a community because it brings people together to work on a goal. Whether it is to cure a disease that affects the whole world, or to help a local family who has fallen in a time of calamity; volunteers make it happen. Community life is improved by helping others and giving a hand to get a job done more effectively. More people working equals less work for each person and less time for the project. So, when it comes to getting the job done, like a community clean up, the more the better.

Aain body

Donating time will also help volunteers themselves in the future. Volunteering strengthens present skills and also shows an employer that an effort has been made to make an improvement. Such skills include communication skills, ability to work with others, ability to take direction and lead others, dedication and time management. Employers realise that as a volunteer you must be able to prioritise your timetable in order to devote time for activities that benefit others. When employers see active volunteer work, they are much more likely to hire such a person rather than someone who doesn't volunteer. Employers are aware that most people who offer their time are conscientious, honest and hardworking individuals.

3.

These are just a few reasons why volunteering is important. Not only does it bring hope and happiness to people, but it also leads to spiritual and personal growth. It is an experience that cannot be bought with any amount of money.

Practice Practice Skills Exercises

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Hala and Salwa were best friends. They were together so much of the time that people say that they were like an inseparable twin. They did everything and went everywhere together. One day, however, something happened that almost caused their friendship to break.

Hala had already made plans with Salwa to watch a show. At the last minute, Hala's mother had an errand it to run, and someone had to look after her sister. Salwa was disappointed, but said that she would still wait for Hala and watch the show together. The next morning, Hala overheard Salwa telling another friend, "it was a wonderful show. I saw it last night and it was fabulous ii." Hala got upset. She walked past Salwa and gave her an angry look. Salwa was puzzled. Why was Hala angry with her? When Salwa called out to Hala, she ignored her. After school, Salwa waited for Hala, as usual, for their walk home together. However, Hala just walked on alone, Salwa ran after her and asked, "What's the matter, Hala? Why are you avoiding me like this?" Hala answered angrily, "You broke your promise. Friends aren't supposed to do that." Salwa realised what the problem was and laughed. "I went to a different show. I will never break my promise to you. You are my best friend." Hala apologised to Salwa and they were best friends again.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The phrase "had an errand to run" i	means			
a) go for a ride	b) to go for a walk			
c) to solve a problem	d) to do a task			
2 The antonym of the word "disappoi	nted" is "".			
a) frustrated b) satisfied	c) furious d) free			
When did Hala and Salwa come to be friends again?				
a) When Hala looked angrily at Salwa	 b) When Salwa lied to Hala. 			
c) When Salwa laughed at Hala.	d) When Salwa told Hala the truth.			
4 Why did Hala have to cancel watching	ng the show with Salwa?			
a) To look after her sister.	b) To go to another show.			
c) To make Hala angry.	d) To go with her mother.			
(Ch				

(2) مشورر

c) they can't leave each other	d) they work in different places
Hala was wrong when she	
a) apologised to Salwa	b) looked after her sister
c) ignored her friend	d) walked home with Salwa
Good friends	
a) shouldn't depend on each other	b) shouldn't think badly of each other
c) should live together	d) should break their promises
The best title to the passage is "	ecesse e
a) Friends should be strict to each other	
b) Friendship could be broken because	e or doubt
c) How to end friendship	
d) Friends should watch shows togeth	er
) Choose the correct Arabic translat	
Being successful is not an easy ta	isk. However, having a set of clear aims
and giving priority to the urgent	ones are vital to achieve success.
ة من الأهداف المعقدة وإعطاء الأولوية للأهداف	 آلنجباح ليس بالمهمة السيفة، و لذلك، فإن امتبادك مجموع الماجلة أمر حيوى لتحقيق النجاح.
سْ مِن الأهداف الواضحة وإعطاء الأولوية للأهداف	 أحقيق التقدم ليس بالمهمة السلملة. ومع ذلك، فإن امثلاك بعد المؤقتة أمر حيوى لتحقيق النجاح.
عة من الأهداف الواضحة وإعطاء الأسبقية لل <u>أهداف</u>) تأجيل النجاح ليس بالمهمة السهلة. ومع ذلك، فإن امتلاك مجمو الدائمة أمر حيوى لتحقيق النجاح.
	d) تحقيــق النجـاح ليس بالمهمة الســهلة. ومع ذلك، فإن امتلاك للأهداف العاجلة أمر حيوى لتحقيق النجاح.
	become one of the most important issues
that need to be discussed to figh	it climate change and global warming.
Sustainable development can sa	ve the earth from pollution.
المواجهة تغير المناخ والاحتباس الحرارى، ويمكن	 a) لقد أصبح الحفاظ على البيئة إحدى أهم القضايا التي يجب نشره للتنمية المؤقتة أن تنقذ الأرض من التلوث.
قشيتها لمواجهة تغير المناخ والاحتباس الحراري.	 لقد أصبح الحف اظ على البيئة إحدى أهم القضايا التي يجب منا ويمكن للتنمية المستدامة أن تنقذ الأرض من الثلوث.
سُاقشتها لمساندة تغير المناخ والاحتباس الحراري.	 لقد أصبح الحفاظ على الكائنات إحدى أهم القضايا التي يجب ه ويمكن للتنمية المستدامة أن تنفذ الأرض من الازدحام.
ا لمواجهة تغير المناخ والاحتباس الحرارى، ويمكن	 لقد أصبح دعم البيئة إحدى أهم القضايا التي يجب تجاهلهم للتنمية المستدامة أن تنقذ الأرض من التلوث.
3 Volunteering and tolerance are to	wo of the most important social values.
	a should aim at training children on them
at an early age.	2

العمل التطوعي والتسامح قيمتان من أهم القيم الثقافية. ويتبغي أن تهدف المدارس والمناهج التعليمية إلى تدريب

) العمل التطوعي والتسامح قيمتان من أهم النظام الاجتماعية. وينبغي أن تهدف المدارس والمناهج التعليمية إلى

d) العمل الخيرى والتسامح خاصيتان من أهم القيم الاجتماعية. وينبغي أن تهدف المدارس الأهداف التعليمية إلى

b) they hate each other

5 "Hala and Salwa were like an inseparable twin". This means that

a) they live together

6

7

8

تدريب الشباب في سن مبكرة.

تدريب الأطفال في سن مبكرة.

الأطفال في سن متأخرة.

- 4 Many projects will be built on the banks of the New Suez Canal. This will add to the national income and offer many job opportunities.
 - مسيتم بناء العديد من المصانع على ضفاف قناة السويس الجديدة. سيضيف هذا إلى الدخل القومي ويوفر العديد من المتجات.
 تم بناء العديد من المصاريع على ضفاف قناة السويس الحديدة أضاف هذا إلى الدخل القومي ووفر العديد من فرس العمل.
 مسيتم بناء العديد من المصاريع على ضفاف قناة السويس الجديدة. سيضيف هذا إلى الدخل القومي ويوفر العديد من فرس العمل.
 مسيتم بناء القليل من المصاريع على ضفاف قناة السويس الجديدة. سيضيف هذا إلى الأمن الثومي ويوفر العديد من فرس العمل.
- 5 Poverty and social problems may cause some children to live in the streets and become homeless. So, we must try to solve these serious problems.
 - قد يتسبب الفقر والمشاكل الاقتصادية في أن يعيش بعض الأطفال في الشوارع وأن يصبحوا بلا وملن. لذلك، يجب
 أن تحاول حل هذه المشاكل الخطيرة.
 - قد يتسبب الفقر والمشاكل الاجتماعية عن أن يعيش بعض الأطفال في الشوارع وأن يصبحوا بالا مأوى، لذلك، يجب إن تحاول حل هذه المشاكل الخطيرة.
 - قد يتسبب الفقر والمشاكل الاجتماعية في أن يعيش بعض الشباب في الشوارع وأن يصبحوا بلا مأوى. لذلك، يجب
 - b) قد يتسبب الجهل والمشاكل الاجتماعية في أن يعيش معظم الأطفال في الشوارع وأن يصبحوا بالا مأوى. لذلك، يجب إن تحاول حل هذه المثاكل الخطيرة.

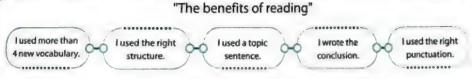
(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- لا يحب الكثير من الشبياب مشاهدة الأفلام الوثائقية التى تثرى معارفهم ووعيهم بالعالم من حولهم، بل يفضلون مشاهدة أفلام الحركة و الرعب التى قد تسبب المشكلات لبعضهم.
- a) Many young people don't like watching documents which enrich their knowledge and awareness of the world around them. They prefer active and horror movies which can cause problems for some of them.
- b) Many young people don't like watching documentaries which enrich their knowledge and awareness of the world around them. They prefer action and horror movies which can cause problems for some of them.
- c) Many young people don't like watching documentaries which offer their knowledge and awareness of the world around them. They dislike action and horror movies which can cause problems for some of them.
- d) Many young people don't like watching documentaries which enrich their ambitions and awareness of the world around them. They prefer action and sorrow movies which can cause problems for some of them.
- وَ يجب أن تكون المنتجات المصرية عالية الجودة لكى تتعكن من منافســـة المنتجات الأخرى في الأســـواق العالمية؛
 لذا تعتم الحكومة بتدريب كل العاملين على أحدث طرق الإنتاج.
- a) The Egyptian production should be of high quality so as to be able to complete the other products in the international market. So, the government is interested in treating all workers in the latest production methods.
- b) The Egyptian products should be of high quantity so as to be able to compete with the other products in the national market. So, the government is interested in training all workers in the latest production styles.
- c) The Egyptian products should be of high quality so as to be able to compete with the other products in the international market. So, the government is interested in training all workers in the latest production methods.
- d) The Egyptian products should be of high quality so as to be able to compete with the other products in the international market. So, the environment is interested in training all workers in the latest production systems.

8 تُعتبر الشعاب المرجانية أهم عوامل جذب السياح لمنطقة البحر الأحمر؛ لذا يجب الحفاظ عليها حتى تحلفظ على استدامة السياحة في هذه المنطقة العامة من مصر.

- a) Coral reefs are the most important distractions for tourists in the Red Sea area; so, we should serve them to keep tourism sustainable in this important area of Egypt.
- b) Coral reefs are the least important attractions for tourists in the Red Sea area; so, we should preserve them to keep tourism attainable in this important area of Egypt.
- c) Coral reefs are the most important attractions for tourists beside the Red Sea area; so, we should deserve them to keep tourism sustainable in this important area of Egypt.
- d) Coral reefs are the most important attractions for tourists in the Red Sea area; so, we should preserve them to keep tourism sustainable in this important area of Egypt.
- و تعتمـــد طــرق التعليم الحديثة على أدوات التكنولوجيا الحديثــة مثل الكمبيوتر والإنترنت لذلك تسعى وزارة التربية و التعليم إلى توفيرها في كل مراحل التعليم و خاصة المرحلة الثانوية.
- a) Modern methods of education depend on modern technology tools such as computer and the internet, so the Ministry of Education seeks to provide them at all stages of education and especially at the secondary stage.
- b) Modern methods of education depend on old technology tools such as computer and the internet, so the Ministry of Education seeks to provide them at all stages of education and especially at the primary stage.
- c) Modern methods of education depend on modern technology tools such as computer and the internet, so the Ministry of Health seeks to prevent them at all stages of education and especially at the secondary stage.
- d) Modern methods of education depend on modern technology instruments such as smart phones and the internet, so the Ministry of Education seeks to provide them at all stages of education and especially at the secondary stage.
- 10 يجب أن تعتم المدارس بمواهب الطلاب ومحاولة تنميتها مـــن خلال الأنشطة المنتلفة التي تعزز عملية التعلم وتجعل التعليم ممتع.
- a) Schools should be interested on students' talents and try to develop them through similar activities that enhance the learning process and make education fun.
- b) Schools should be interested in students' talents and try to develop them through different activities that enhance the learning process and make education fun.
- c) Schools should be interested in students' hobbies and try to develop them through different activities that enhance the learning cycle and make education fun.
- d) Schools should be interested in students' talents and arrange to develop them through different activities that weaken the learning process and make education fun.

3) Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:



Question Bank

Al-Adwaa Test

C	noose the correct	answer from a, b, c	or d:	
1	There should be	more laws to help	our natu	iral resources.
	a) damage	b) reserve	c) deserve	d) preserve
2	Doctors believe	that children abuse J	can lead to الإساءة للأطفا	serious
	and emotional p			
	a) fictional		b) psychological	
	c) economic		d) criminal	
3	Up till now, there	e is no	proof that life exists o	on other planets.
			c) positive	
4	_		ne that attracts only a	
			c) fragile	
5			a bath before going t	
	a) give			d) make
6	My teacher is a ve	olunteer in an organ	isation working on w	ildlife conservation
	The synonym of	the word "conservati	on" is	
	a) destruction	b) negligence	c) protection	d) doubt
7	Kamal is exactly.	as Nad	er.	
	a) the same age	b) old	c) so old	d) older
8	After the trip, my	brother was	tired as my fat	her.
	a) so	b) almost as	c) almost so	d) slightly as
9	I liked the museu	ım. It was	more interesting t	han I expected.
	a) lot	b) almost	c) many	d) far
10	This bag is	than the oth	er one.	
	a) slightly heavier		b) slightly heavy	
	c) almost heavy		d) as heavy	
11	Tourists	to dive in this ar	ea, but now they do.	
	a) used to come		b) didn't use to com	e
	c) would come		d) came	
12	You're driving too	fast. Can you drive	?	
	a) far slower		b) much slower	
	c) too slowly		d) a bit slowly	

a It's to learn a	language in a country where it is spoken.
a) more easier	b) as easy
. Let easier	d) almost easiest
. loans in diffe	rent colours, but now they do.
a) are used to conning	b) didn't use to come
seed to come	d) used not coming
when I was young, I	thin and had a lot of health problems.
a) was	b) used to be
- would be	d) didn't use to be
the following passage,	then answer the questions:
A robot is a special kind of	of machine. It is a machine that moves, It follows
The instruction	ons come from a computer. It does not make
instructions	d or complain unless you tell it to!
Robots are all around us. help explore volcanoes. Co robots can even recognise v calls. Some robots look like look like machines.	Some robots can help make cars. Other robots can ertain robots can help vacuum ³ your house. Some words. They can be used to help answer telephone humans. But most robots do not. Most robots just
imagined robots. The poet's cleaned and made things. But	ed robots. Over, 2,000 years ago, a famous poet name was Homer. His robots were made of gold. They ut they were not real. They were imaginary ⁴⁴ . Nobody ot. The first real robot was made in 1961. It was called

Unimate. It was used to help make cars. It looked like a giant arm.

In the future, we will have even more robots. They will do things that we can't do. Or they will do things that we don't want to do. Or they will do things that are too dangerous for us. Robots will help us fight fires. They will help us fight wars. They will help us fight sickness. They will help us discover things. They will help make life better.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 The robot doesn't make mistakes,	get tired or complain because it
a) is made of plastic	b) is a machine



(3) يكنس

d) looks like a human

c) can't speak

17 As used in paragraph 1, we can understand that solities that golden has a specific golden has a pacifying golden has a pacifyi	
18 What is the main purpose of paragraph 2? a) To show how easy it is to make a robot. b) To tell what a robot is. c) To describe the things a robot can do. d) To explain the difference between a robot and a machine. 19 Using the information in the passage as a guide, which of these gives the best use of a robot? a) To help explore Mars. b) To help make a sandwich. c) To help replace Mars. b) To help make a sandwich. c) To help read a book. d) To help it is snow. 20 How does the author of this passage feel about robots? a) Robots are harmless. d) Robots are harmless. d) Robots are dangerous. 21 The robot receives the instructions from	- للعوب
b) To tell what a robot is. c) To describe the things a robot can do. d) To explain the difference between a robot and a machine 19 Using the information in the passage as a guide, which of these gives the best use of a robot? a) To help explore Mars. c) To help read a book. d) To help the shoes a Boots are harmless. d) Robots are harmless. d) Robots are harmless. d) Robots are dangerous. 21 The robot receives the instructions from a) computer b) man c) another robot d) a poet a) Robots have been in man's thoughts for over	محن پد
b) To tell what a robot is. c) To describe the things a robot can do. d) To explain the difference between a robot and a machine 19 Using the information in the passage as a guide, which of these gives the best use of a robot? a) To help explore Mars. b) To help make a sandwich. c) To help read a book. d) To help the sinces 20 How does the author of this passage feel about robots? a) Robots are foolish. b) Robots are dangerous. 21 The robot receives the instructions from a) computer b) man c) another robot 22 Robots have been in man's thoughts for over years. a) 60 b) 62 c) 1961 d) 2000 23 The robot is different from man as it a) needs carbon dioxide to live b) doesn't mistake even if the instructions are wrong	
b) Hobbies have a positive affection on our health. Reading is a very useful because it motivates your mind, and experts say it has a specific effect. I lower stress levels and help you relax. c) To help read a book. d) To help make a sandwich. c) To help read a book. d) To help the snoes. 20 How does the author of this passage feel about robots? a) Robots are foolish. b) Robots are helpful. c) Robots are harmless. d) Robots are dangerous. 21 The robot receives the instructions from	- 2
d) To explain the difference between a robot and a machine 19 Using the information in the passage as a guide, which of these gives the best use of a robot? a) To help explore Mars. b) To help make a sandwich. c) To help read a book. d) To help the snoes 20 How does the author of this passage feel about robots? a) Robots are foolish. b) Robots are helpful. c) Robots are harmless. d) Robots are dangerous. 21 The robot receives the instructions from a) computer b) man c) another robot d) a poet 22 Robots have been in man's thoughts for over years. a) 60 b) 62 c) 1961 d) 2000 23 The robot is different from man as it a) needs carbon dioxide to live b) doesn't mistake even if the instructions are wrong	
19 Using the information in the passage as a guide, which of these gives the best use of a robot? a) To help explore Mars. b) To he'p make a sandwich. c) To help read a book. d) To help the snoes 20 How does the author of this passage feel about robots? a) Robots are foolish. b) Robots are harmless. d) Robots are harmless. d) Robots are dangerous. 21 The robot receives the instructions from a) computer b) man c) another robot d) a poet 22 Robots have been in man's thoughts for over years. a) 60 b) 62 c) 1961 d) 2000 23 The robot is different from man as it a) needs carbon dioxide to live b) doesn't mistake even if the instructions are wrong	
the best use of a robot? a) To help explore Mars. b) To help make a sandwich. c) To help read a book. d) To help tie snoes 20 How does the author of this passage feel about robots? a) Robots are foolish. b) Robots are harmless. d) Robots are dangerous. 21 The robot receives the instructions from a) computer b) man c) another robot d) a poet 22 Robots have been in man's thoughts for over a) 60 b) 62 c) 1961 d) 2000 23 The robot is different from man as it a) needs carbon dioxide to live b) doesn't mistake even if the instructions are wrong	can
because it motivates your mind, and experiences say it has a pacifying each lit can lower still seed a book. b) To help make a sandwich. c) To help read a book. d) To help tile snoes b) Robots are foolish. b) Robots are helpful. c) Robots are harmless. d) Robots are dangerous. c) Robots are harmless. d) Robots are dangerous. c) Robots are harmless. d) Robots are dangerous. c) Answer the following questions: 1. If you were Cone divoid you agree to let Regan open Cordelia's letter Edmund? 2. What do you think Regan's message to Edmund is? 3. What do you think Regan's message to Edmund is? 3. What do you think Regan's message to Edmund is? 4. Whit do you think of Edgar's behaviour with his father? why is the preservation of biodiversity on Earth important?" "Why is the preservation of biodiversity on Earth important?"	
a) To help explore Mars. b) To help make a sandwich. c) To help read a book. d) To help tile shoes 20 How does the author of this passage feel about robots? a) Robots are foolish. b) Robots are helpful. c) Robots are harmless. d) Robots are dangerous. 21 The robot receives the instructions from a) computer b) man c) another robot d) a poet a) Computer b) man c) another robot d) a poet a) 60 b) 62 c) 1961 d) 2000 23 The robot is different from man as it a) needs carbon dioxide to live b) doesn't mistake even if the instructions are wrong	Oy
c) To help read a book. d) To help tie snow 20 How does the author of this passage feel about robots? a) Robots are foolish. b) Robots are helpful. c) Robots are harmless. d) Robots are dangerous. 21 The robot receives the instructions from a) computer b) man c) another robot d) a poet years. a) 60 b) 62 c) 1961 d) 2000 23 The robot is different from man as it a) needs carbon dioxide to live b) doesn't mistake even if the instructions are wrong	SCI
20 How does the author of this passage feel about robots? a) Robots are foolish. b) Robots are helpful. c) Robots are harmless. d) Robots are dangerous. 21 The robot receives the instructions from a) computer b) man c) another robot d) a poet 22 Robots have been in man's thoughts for over a) 60 b) 62 c) 1961 d) 2000 23 The robot is different from man as it a) needs carbon dioxide to live b) doesn't mistake even if the instructions are wrong	inni
a) Robots are foolish. b) Robots are helpful. c) Robots are harmless. d) Robots are dangerous. 21 The robot receives the instructions from a) computer b) man c) another robot d) a poet. 22 Robots have been in man's thoughts for over a) 60 b) 62 c) 1961 d) 2000 23 The robot is different from man as it a) needs carbon dioxide to live b) doesn't mistake even if the instructions are wrong	
c) Robots are harmless. d) Robots are dangerous. 21 The robot receives the instructions from a) computer b) man c) another robot d) a poet. 22 Robots have been in man's thoughts for over years. a) 60 b) 62 c) 1961 d) 2000 23 The robot is different from man as it a) needs carbon dioxide to live b) doesn't mistake even if the instructions are wrong	
21 The robot receives the instructions from a) computer b) man c) another robot d) a poet 22 Robots have been in man's thoughts for over a) 60 b) 62 c) 1961 d) 2000 23 The robot is different from man as it a) needs carbon dioxide to live b) doesn't mistake even if the instructions are wrong	
a) computer b) man c) another robot d) a poet. 22 Robots have been in man's thoughts for over years. a) 60 b) 62 c) 1961 d) 2000 23 The robot is different from man as it a) needs carbon dioxide to live b) doesn't mistake even if the instructions are wrong	5
22 Robots have been in man's thoughts for over	
a) 60 b) 62 c) 1961 d) 2000 23 The robot is different from man as it	
23 The robot is different from man as it	
a) needs carbon dioxide to live b) doesn't mistake even if the instructions are wrong	owing
b) doesn't mistake even if the instructions are wrong	
d) doesn't need space to move	
24 Choose the correct Arabic translation:	
- Our society needs more individuals that possess good moral values in	
order to grow and develop the right way. Morals are really the best sign of	
a civilised society.	
(a) يحتاج مجتمعنا إلى القليل من الأفراد الذين يمتلكون قيمًا أخلاقية حميدة من أجل النمو والتطور بالطريقة الصحيحة. فالأخلاق هي حقًا أفضل لافتة للإقليم المتحضر.	Management (1)
ندريه عن العمال الذين يمثلكون قيمًا أخلاقية حميدة من أجل النصو والتطور بالطريقة الثقليدية. فلاخلاق عن منافع المتحضر فلاخلاق عن حقاً أفضل إشارة للمجتمع المتحضر.	
ع) يحتاج مجتمعنا إلى المزيد من الأفراد الذين يمتلكون قيمًا أخلاقية حميدة من أجل النمو والتعلور بالعلريقة الصحيحة. * تابع دور على المراج على ا	1000
progress < 50% 50:64% 65:84% 85	100% Identi



The News

Unit 10

Objectives

: Online news stories Reading

: A news report Writing Listening: News stories

Speaking: Presenting news stories

Language: Past perfect and past perfect passive

Life Skills : Critical thinking recognising facts and opinions; Self-management: weighing up

situations and taking the appropriate actions









Teacher of English Lessons 1 & 2

Mrl Hossam Elnaggar



Key Vocabulary

broadcast (n) (v)	نشر/إناعة/ينشر/ينيع	photographer (n)	مصور فوتوغرافي
editor (n)	محرر/رئيس تحرير	reporter (n)	مزاسل عستقى
fact checker (n)	مراجع حقائق	search engine (n)	محرك بحث
interview (n) (v) (ed)	مقابلة/يجرى مقابلة	course (a)	
newsreader (n)	مذيع/قارئ الأخبار	source (n)	مصدر

the whole country.

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

accurate (adj)	ىقىق	flame (n)	لهب/شعلة نار
admit (v) (ted)	يعترف ب	headlines (n)	عناوين الأخبار
alarm (n)	إنذار	identify (v) (y ied)	يحددايثعرف على
Caribbean Islands	جزر البحر الكاريبي	investigator (n)	محقق/مفتش
channel (n)	قناة	journalist (n)	صدفي
collect (v) (ed)	يجمع	Lebanese (adj)	لبناني
contain (v) (ed) .	يحتوى على	online (adj) (adv)	عبر الإنترنت
correspondent (n)	مراسل صحفى أو تليفزيوني	opportunity (n)	فرصة
deliberately (adv)	عمدًا	originally (adv)	اسانا/أملا
digital nomads (n)	الرحالة الرقميون	perfect (adj)	كامل/ممتاز
disaster (n)	كارثة	photography (n)	التصوير
fear (n) (v) (ed)	خوف/يخشي	print (v) (ed)	يطبع
fire service (n)	خدمة الإطفاء	printing press (n)	الطباعة/المطبعة

Part (1) Lessons 1 & 2 149

produce (v) (d)	يتنع .	social media (n)	التواصل الاجتماعي	
range (n)	مجال/معدل	traditional (adj)	critic	
record (n) (v) (ed)	تقرير/رقم قياسى/يسجل	trust (n) (v) (ed)	نة ايثق ض	
regularly (adv)	بانتظام	truth (n)	غقيق	
responsible (adj)	مسلول	unclear (adj)	نير واضح	
scene (n)	مشعد/موقع حدث	unreliable (adj)	پېر موثوق فیه	
select (v) (ed)	ينتقى/يختار	unland (v) (ad)	-1.13N H 4	
serious (adj)	جاد/خطير	upload (v) (ed)	يُحمِلُ إلى الإنترنت	

Workhook Vocabulane

nggan a mere. I neligne to redo

Workbook Vocabu	lary		
astronaut (n)	راثد فضاء	onboard (adj)	على متن (سفينة/طائرة)
bomb (n)	قنبلة	origin (n)	لصل/مصدر
competition (n)	مسابقة	photography (n)	التصوير
confirm (v) (ed)	يؤكد	politician (n)	رجل سياسة
crash (n) (v) (ed)	تحطم ايرتطم ايتحطم	press conference (n)	مؤتمر صدفى
crime (n)	جريمة	professional (adj) (n)	مدترف
digital (adj)	رقمى	properly (adv)	بشكل صحيح
discovery (n)	اكتشاف	recent (adj)	غيث
find (n)	اكتشاف	satellite (n)	تمر صناعي
fix (v) (ed)	يصلح	space walk (n)	السير في الفضاء
frequently (adv)	غالبًا/بشكل متكرر	species (n)	نوع/فصيلة (حيوانية)
income (n)	بخل	suffer (v) (ed)	يعانى
inform (v) (ed)	يبلغ	talent (n)	موهية
injury (n)	إصابة	title (n)	عنوان/لقب
leader (n)	قائد	zoom in (v) (ed)	
meteorite (n)	نيزك	200mm (v) (ed)	يقرب الصورة

Vocabulary Check point 1

1 A government this morning.	spoke to the	he press about the plane	e crash early		
	b) section	c) voter	dienerry		
2 A large crowd wedding was h	of collected	d outside the hotel who	ere the famous actor		
a) consumers	b) reporters	c) fighters	d) inspectors		
The funeral of	Queen Elizabeth II w	as live to the v	vhole world.		
		c) broadcast			
4 The Prime Min		ous person that the pre	esenter has ever		
a) offered	b) tested	c) searched	d) interviewed		
Our new next-door neighbour is a former of Al-Ahram Newspaper.					
a) editor	b) reader	c) investigator	d) inventor		
6 Farming is the	main source of	in this village, but it a	lso has a small factor		
		c) income			
The police thin	k that the fire had be	en started and	lit wasn't an acciden		
		c) accidentally			
		e of the night which w			
		c) extinguisher			
		safety of its passenger			
		c) responsible			
o The invention o	f the press	is considered the mos d science to next gener	t important invention		
a) printing	b) sewing	c) cutting	d) we'a ng		
Evaressions Phi	rases & Prepositio	ns			

cause serious proble	يسبب مشكلات خطيرة ms	in charge of	مسئول عن
come true	يصبح حقيقة/يتحقق	take photographs	يلتقط صورا
care about	يعتم ب	send out	***
crash into	يصطدم ب	share with	يشارك مع
hear about/of	يسمع عن	turn to	يتحول إلى
look into	يفعص	upload to	يحمل إلى
range of	سلسلة من	worried about	قلق عن

Derivatives

Ve	rb		Noun		Adje	ective
D#1900uouedas	5-0-5-marketen	accuracy		JE.	accurate	
compete	يتنانس	competition competitor		مسابقة متنافس	competitive	
fear	يخشى	fear		خوف/خشية	fearful	خف
identify	يصد	identity		هوية/شخصية	identifiable	مىيىت نىلىر
inform*	يبلغ	information informer		معلومات مخبر	informative	معلوماتی
investigate	يحقق/يفتش	Investigation investigator	•	تحقیق محقق/مفتش	investigatory	/ رينيشي/اتحقيقن
select	ينتقى/يختار	selection		اختيار	selective	يتقالى

⁻ The leaflet informs customers about healthy eating

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	المرانف Synonym	Antonym -	المضا
accurate	ىقىق	precise/exact	inaccurate/false	نپرىقىق/مزيف
broadcast	ينشر/ينيع	announce/transmit	hide/conceal	يذفى
collect	يجمع	gather/accumulate	scatter/separate	پېعثر/يفصل
fear	يخشى	worry/fright	face	يواجه
frequently	غالبًا/بشكل متكرر	generally/often	rarely/seldom	نادرًا
identify	بدد	recognise/determine	confuse/disguise	يربك
professiona	محترف ا	efficient/skilful	amateur/inexperienced	ماوٍ/بلا خبرة
properly	بشكل صحيح	correctly/appropriately	wrongly/improperly	بشكل خاطئ
select	ينتقى ايختار	pick out/choose	refuse/reject	يرفض/يئبذ

source	مصدر	origin/root	outcome/result
traditional	تقليدي	conventional/old	مبیث modern/up-to-date
trust	ثقة	confidence/faith	طنت/سم ناکد doubt/uncertainty
unreliable	غیر موثوق فیه	inaccurate/untrustworthy	موتون ميه dependable/reliable

Vecabulary Check point 2

	the	correct	answer	from	a,	b, c or d:	
ah anse	LIIG	Feires				~, ~ ~	•

36	10 1 1				
The witness ider	ntified the suspect in th	ne crime. The verb "id	lentify" is the opposite		
a) confuse	b) determine	c) recognise	d) defy		
'I'd always dream	ned of owning my ow	n home, and now m	ny dream has		
true.					
a) gone					
Scientists believ	e that a large meteori	may have cras نيزك te	shed		
a) to	b) into				
The police are sti	ll investigating the mu	ırder. The adjective o	f the verb "investigate"		
15					
a) investigates	b) investigation	c) investigator	d) investigatory		
a) take	b) do	c) paint	d) design		
Our old car's becoming very unreliable. The synonym of the adjective "unreliable"					
Passengers complain that trains are frequently cancelled. The antonym of					
With the econom	nic situation, many p	eople always seem	to be worried		
money.					
The school will o	only select 12 applic	ants for enrolment	. The noun of the verb		
"select" is	oce 8				
a) selected	b) selection	c) selective	d) selectively		
			0		
a) correctly	b) wrongly	c) doubtfully	d) occasionally		
	The witness ider of "" a) confuse I'd always dream true. a) gone Scientists believ the Earth 65 mill a) to The police are stills	The witness identified the suspect in the of "	The witness identified the suspect in the crime. The verb "identification" a) confuse b) determine c) recognise I'd always dreamed of owning my own home, and now me true. a) gone b) taken c) come Scientists believe that a large meteorite with may have crast the Earth 65 million years ago leading to dinosaurs' dying a) to b) into c) of The police are still investigating the murder. The adjective of is		

⁻ How can I get information about enrolling on the course?

⁻ This book is very informative about local customs in Africa.

Reading Text (1)

It seems that today less than 50% of us get our news from traditional sources.1) like newspapers and television. Everyone is turning to the internet and social media(2) for news, and some experts fear that we might



مصادر (1) يبائل التواصل (2) غير موثوق به ال محركات البحث (4)

accept some unreliable "news stories as fact because we read social media sites which share our opinions. But is this true?

Search engines lead us to a wider range of sources which means we can read the news from many different places. However, we should always question what we read and never just accept it as true.



(5) Juen



Secondary school students in the UK have had the chance to become news reporters(1) for the day. Students created a news website and produced a news report. They selected reporters and photographers (2) who went





out to look for interesting news in their community. When they had interviewed people and had written their stories,

the reporters gave their work to the newsreaders who then recorded the news. The videos were uploaded to the news website and some were broadcast on local television.





Saeed Yousuf is a fact checker(1). He checks the facts in reports before they are sent to the editor'2). Saeed explains that news stories can use both facts and opinions, but it must be clear which is which. Facts can be checked, but opinions are the points of view held by the writer. He believes that it's very important for the public to trust the information in the story, but some newspapers, he admits³³, are better at checking facts than others. It can cause serious problems if newspapers print stories without checking the Information carefully first.





Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

Astronauts(1) have made yet another amazing discovery in space. During a recent space walk to fix part of a satellite, which had been damaged after a meteorite(2) had hit it, they saw an unexpected shape on the moon. Using their onboard digital



cameras, they zoomed in to discover what appeared to be a plane, which used to carry bombs during World War 2 and had crashed into the moon. After reporting the find, NASA confirmed that there are still 124 planes which were lost during the Second World War, and they believe this may be one of them.

Listening Text



Newsreader:

Good morning. Here are today's headlines on Monday, 5th October.

A fire started in a supermarket late last night and 20 fire fighters are still at the scene. Investigators say it is unclear how the fire began, but the police think it had been started deliberate,



1

.The police and fire services had been called earlier in the evening,

but left when everything appeared to be OK. At the time they believed it was yet another false alarm⁴. At midnight, a wornan phoned again and said she had seen flames sat the back of the supermarket, and by the time the fire fighters arrived, the fire had moved to the front of the shop.

A Lebanese photographer has won a top photography competition for his photo of a desert sunrise. Twenty-two-year-old, Marwan Hamed told journalistthat he had used an old digital camera to take his photo and was surprised that if

had looked so good. Marwan entered his first photo competition when he was only eight years old after he had been given a book about photography by his uncle. He didn't win that time, but has continued to take photos and is now working as a professional photographer for a news channel.



Antigua and Barbuda is the latest country to offer digital nomads, people who can work anywhere in the world on their computer, the opportunity to live and work there for two years. Until Covid-19 arrived, the country's main income had been tourism, but now with people having fewer holidays, the government has offered digital nomads a fantastic opportunity to enjoy life on their Caribbean Islands Our Caribbean correspondent, Melody Smith, told us if you want a relaxing place to work, then this is perfect.





investigator

the scene of the explosion. الحقائيق في الأحياث وخاصة الجرائيم

والحوادث)

A team of special investigators have gone to محقق امفتش (شخص وظيفته اكتشاف

inspector

يفتش/مرلقب (شخص وظيفته التأكد من أن الناس يؤدون أعمالهم يطريقة صحيحة) Last year, school inspectors reported that 20% of young pupils were unable to read or write.

conductor

مفتش القطار أو الأتوبيس (كمساري)

As the train pulled out, the senior conductor came around.

admit

يعترف/يقر (والمصدر هنا admission)

سيتخدم الفعل (admit) بمعنيين مختلفين ويختلف المصير المشيتق منه

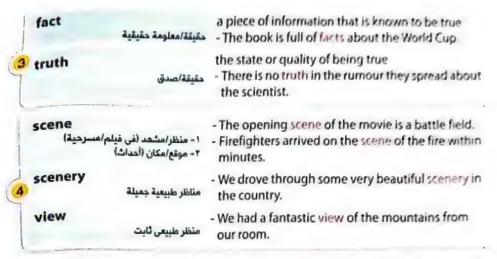
- She admitted (that) she had made a mistake.

-In court, he admitted (to) lying about the accident.

admit

(admission/admittance (a

You will not be admitted to the theatre after the performance has started.



record سجل (معلومات عن شيء ما في صورة مكتوبة)

I have to keep a record of all my spending when I'm travelling on business.

file

He began reading the file on the case.

ledger

دفتر الحسايات (لشركة/ مؤسسة)

The costs have been moved from one column of the ledger to another.

Vocabulary Check point 3

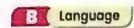
1	After confessing	his guilt, the crimin	al agreed to coopera	te with the police			
		b) conductors	c) employers	d) leaders			
2	Leaving the con losses.	npany is a clear	that he was res	ponsible for the great			
	a) admittance	b) admission	c) affection	d) invention			
3	My father always speaks the whether people like it or not.						
	a) lie	b) fact	c) truth	d) truce			
4	Ais a b		siness keeps the doc	ruments of how much			
	a) record	b) ledger	c) file	d) folder			
5	The movie opens	s with ain a	New York skyscrape	r.			
	a) view	b) scenery	c) landscape	d) scene			



Vocabulary General Exercises

- 1	Around 2001, the Google search		.بروز/شعرة rose to prominence						
	a) engine	b) power	c) motor	d) page					
2	The ceremony o	of the Olympic Game	es opening was	to most countries n					
	the world.	,							
	a) consumed	b) downloaded	c) broadcast	d) reported					
3	The press	with the Preside	nt was published in a	I national newspapers					
			c) seminar						
4		I've always thought you have the right voice to be a/an							
	a) photographer	b) programmer	c) editor	d) newsreader					
5	A/Anis	a person who is in	charge of a newspape	er or magazine, or pa-					
	of a newspaper	A/Anis a person who is in charge of a newspaper or magazine, or part of a newspaper or magazine, and decides what should be included in it.							
	a) editor	b) seller	c) newsreader	d) inventor					
6			that he was going to	resign after					
	the accident.								
	a) programmers	b) reporters	c) influencers	d) podcasters					
7	Journalists were	on the of t	the plane crash within	minutes to cover it.					
	a) view	b) scenery	c) scene	d) landform					
8			company's website a						
	finished working	g on it.							
	a) set	b) made	c) downloaded	d) uploaded					
9	The press room	was a valuable	of information for	journalists who were					
		covering the tennis championship. a) result b) source c) reason d) practice							
	a) result	b) source	c) reason	d) practice					
10	The talented pla	yer was to	play for his country's r	national team at					
	the age of only 1	8.							
			c) reformed						
11	A/Anis a person employed by a newspaper, a television station,								
	to report on a particular subject or send reports from a foreign country.								
	a) manager	b) agent	c) correspondent	d) boss					
12		l bus driver didn't hi	t the cat; it m	ust have been an					
	accident.	· .							
	a) hopefully	b) excitedly	c) inventively	d) deliberately					
13			re should not stop us	trying to get success.					
	a) pleasure	b) tear	c) treasure	d) delight					
14	The camera	in on the old ma	n's face hearing the ba	id news.					
	a) zoomed	b) boomed	c) bombed	d) faded					

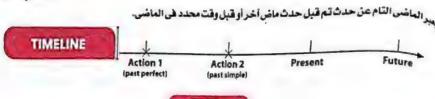
15 Social med world.	ia nave become an impo	rtant advertising tool in	the present
a) false	b) facial	c) digital	d) tranal
The new m	achines were not yet	enough to give us	soful results
a) valued	b) complex	ci bazardour.	diaco cate
- Winning th	e Olympic medal was lil	ke a dream that	true for the karate
player.	e orympic medal was in	ac a dicam that	tide for the kalate
a) came	b) went	c) fell	digenn
- Vou mustn'	t trust the rumours علا	and our country's enen	nies. The antonum of
8 You musti	ust" is	e of our country's enem	mes. The antonym of
	hal analian	c) depend	didout*
a) recognise	ers are lookingtl	ha disappearance of two	o children kidnanned
19 Police office	as are looking	ie disappearance or two	o children kidilapped
yesterday.	b) of	c) into	diup
a) for	(abo Organisation mut th	C) INIO	of the research
20 The Head of	f the Organisation put th	ie young scientist in	Of the research
team.	13.1		di balance
a) change	b) charge	c) account	O) Dalance
21 The	ة النشرة الإخبارية newsletter	it the British Council is	published once every
two months			At the formand on
a) inform	b) informed	c) informative	d) information
	eople have turned	social media for ne	ws and information.
a) with	b) on	c) at	d) to
23 Big stores ha	eve to for custo	mers in the Christmas	season.
a) compete	b) competed	c) competition	d) competitive
24 The Presiden	it's speech will be broad	Icast on all channels at	t 6.00 this evening.
The verb "bro	oadcast" is similar in me	aning to "".	
a) transmit	b) download		d) watch
25 After the box	er won the champions	hip, he turned professi	onal. The word
"professional	"can be the opposite o	f "	
a) academic	b) smart	c) amateur	d) experimented
My uncle is a	/an He collec	ts and reports the new	s for newspapers,
radio, and TV.			leng
a) reporter	b) interviewer	c) photographer	d) newsreader
7 A/An	is a person who make	s sure the information	is true.
a) newsreader	b) interviewer	c) newspaper selfe	er difact checker
B It is importan	t to know the	of each piece of news	to make sure it is true
•		•	76.7270 g
a) reason	b) result	c) source	d) end
	ice arrived at the		
run away.		and the second of the	
a) vision	b) view	cleant	diererie
O The of r	news stories are usually	about the most imp	ortant events
	b) headphones		
4111644111163			and the report of recovering the



Past perfect

إلماضي التام

For an action which happened before another past action or before a stated time in the past.



FORM

Affirmative

· Subi.+ had + P.P.

الإثبات

· By yesterday, I had read 5 stories.

Negative

- Subj.+ hadn't + P.P.

النقى

· I hadn't seen him before he talked to me.

Interrogative

Had + subj. + P.P.? Had Osama bought the tickets by yesterday?

الاستفعام

• Wh-question + had+ subj. + P.P.? What had she done before going out?

Passive المبئى للمجھول - Obj.+ had been + P.P.

By the time I reached the cinema, all the tickets had been sold.

الاستخدام USAGE

For an action which happened before another past action or before a stated time in the past.

يعبر عن حدث تم قبل حدث ملضِ آخر أو قبل وقت محدد في الماضي: الحدث الأول تام والثاني بسيط. I showed my mother what I had bought from the market.

He admitted that he had lied to his father more than once.

For an action which finished in the past and whose result was visible in the past. يستخدم لحدث انتهى في الماضي ونتيجته كانت واضحة في الماضي.

There was glass on the floor as Osama had broken the window.

For duration before something in the past.

يستخدم لحدث كان مستمرًا لفترة في الماضي قبل حدث آخر مع الأفعال التي لا تستخدم في الاستمرار. I had had the bike for ten years before I bought a car.

By the time I got used to life in Cairo, I had been there for five years.

The past perfect is used with the following time expressions:

Key Words before, after, till/until, when, by, by the time, as soon in



After I had looked both ways, I crossed the street.



Refore I crossed the street, I had looked both ways.



- didn't + inf.

بى تتمعنوم

- wasn't - weren't + P.P.

لض بسيط منفى في المبنّى للمجمول

- couldn't + inf.

عدم استطاعة في الماضي

- refused - denied -

كلمة تعطى معنى النفي

• My son didn't buy the phone until he had taken the money.



إذا لم يوجد فاعل بعد After أو Before نستخدم

- After finishing his work, he helped me. = After he had finished,
- · Before helping me, he had finished his work. = Before he helped,

When + Past simple, Past perfect

• When I reached the station, the train had left. القطار قبل وصولى (لم الحق به)

When + Past simple, Past simple

• When I reached the station, the train left. فادر القطار عند وصولي (ربما لحقته أو رأيته)

When + Past perfect, Past simple

• When I had reached the station, the train left. وصلت المحطة قبل مغادرة القطار (لحقته)

.: 1) Lessons 1 & 2 161

لاحظ الفرق بين جمل when الأثية:



When he entered the flat, he took off his shoes.

After he paid the driver, he got out of the taxi.

Before he left, he asked me to close the door behind him.

As soon as he read the story, he gave it to me.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

-	1	I called you at 8:00, but you	out.				
		a) have just gone	b) had just gone				
		c) just gone	d) just went				
	2	Tamerall his exams	before he travelled abroad.				
		a) had passed	b) passes				
		c) has passed	d) had been passed				
	3	He felt that heit wro	ong.				
		a) has made	b) made				
		c) was made	d) had made				
	4	4 The weather was worse last year than I it to be.					
		a) expect	b) have expected				
		c) had expected	d) was expected				
	5	I my homework when my mother came.					
		a) already did	b) had already done				
		c) have already done	d) already do				

Yed)

اكا وجد أكثر من حدثين في الجملة فيجب تحديد الحدث الأول ليوضع ماضيًا تامًا والأحداث الباقية إما ماض بسيط وإما مستمر
 حسب المعنى،

- As soon as I saw Ahmed, I realised that I had met him before.
 - لم نضع الماضي التام بعد as soon as مباشرة لأنه ليس الحدث الأول وأن الحدث الأول هو (المقابلة)
- After he got to the station, he realised that he had left the train ticket at home.
 - لم نضع الماضى التام بعد After مباشرة لأنه ليس الحدث الأول وأن الحدث الأول هو (ترك التذكرة في المنزل)
- I was shopping with my friend when I realised that I had lost my wallet.
 - الحدث الأول فقدان المحفظة.

- ٢٥ بستندم العامى النام مع أفعال مثل think/say/know/realise عند استخدامها قبى الماضى للحديث عن اعتقادات ومدانثات ومعرفة وأبراك لشرره سابق
- . I thought I had finished my homework, but I realised I had forgotten the last page.
- I knew where I had put the keys.
 - ٢) يجب ملاحظة العبنى للمجعول جيدا إذا بدأت الجملة بالمفعول وهنا نستخدم had been + P.P. للماضى التام was/were + P.P.a
- After the food had been cooked, it was eaten.
- Before the e-mail was sent, it had been written.

٤) يمكن استخدام الاسم بعد after/before/until وليس جملة كاملة.

- My friends visited me after lunch yesterday.
- . Before the war, the two countries had threatened each other.
- و) يمكن أن يستخدم الماضى التام للإشارة إلى حدث تم في وقت محدد على عكس المضارع التام وفي هذه الحالة يمكن استخدام
 الماضى البسيط بدلًا منه .
- He had been to Aswan once in 2000 before he moved there in 2015.
- He went to Aswan once in 2000 before he moved there in 2015.
 - ولكن إذا أشار الملضى التام إلى خبرة وليس حدثًا محيدًا لا يمكن استخدام الماضي البسيط.
- He had never seen snow until he moved to Europe. NOT He never saw snow...

Language Check point 5

1) I couldn't buy the new phone u	ntil the money
a) had been saved	b) saved
c) had saved	d) has been saved
2 When I got to the office, I realise	ed that I the key at home.
a) forget	b) had been forgotten
c) forgot	d) had forgotten
3 /I couldn't imagine what	to her.
a) had been happened	b) has been happened
c) had happened	d) has been happening
(4) The criminaluntil he h	ad tried to leave the country.
a) arrested	b) wasn't arrested
c) didn't arrest	d) had been arrested
(5) I that kind of fig until I	visited Sinai in 2015.
a) had never eaten	b) never ate
c) wasn't eating	d) have never eaten



Language General Exercises

1	I arrived at the b	ous station late yest	terday. Unfortunately,	when I got there, h
	bus			
	a) left	b) has left	c) leaves	d) had left
2	It was dark and o	old. At one momen	t, he thought that he	his way,
	a) lost	b) will lose	c) had lost	d) was lost
3	When I counted	my change, I realise	d they me 100) pounds.
	a) gave	b) had given	c) have given	d) had been giver
4	I left the	office, I had writter	5 reports.	
	a) By the time	b) After	c) As soon as	d) Having
5	We the :	station before the tr	ain arrived.	
	a) had reached	b) were reaching	c) would reach	d) reach
6	As soon as she	out of bed, sl	he got dressed.	
	a) would get	b) gets	c) has got	d) had got
7	He a car	mel before he came t	to Siwa.	
	a) has never seen	b) did never see	c) had never seen	d) will never see
8	I wasn't hungry a	t four because I	a big meal at one.	
	a) was having	b) had had	c) have had	d) have
9	It was the first tin	ne shea pri	ze.	
	a) had won	b) has won	c) is won	d) would win
10	He continued his	journeyhe	had changed the tyre.	
(43)	a) before	b) ago	c) since	d) after
11	When Ie	nough money, I bou	ight the smartphone.	
	a) had saved	b) was saving	c) have saved	d) would save
12	After my	work, I went back he	ome with my friends.	
	a) finish	b) finished	c) finishing	d) had finished
13	I knew that she	Luxor before, s	so I asked her to recom	mend a good hotel.
	a) visited	b) had visited	c) has been visiting	d) has visited

After the nouse, we turnish	ed it.
a) is painted	b) has painted
c) had painted	d) had been painted
15 By the time Marlam was 26, she	married for three years,
a) has	b) had been
c) has been	d) was being
16 I was doing my homework when I re	ealised that I to study 2 pages.
a) had forgotten	b) forgot
c) was forgetting	d) have forgotten
17 She said that the robberhe	er when she was opening the door to her
apartment.	
a) had been attacked	b) was attacking
c) has attacked	d) attacked
18 They waited patiently until the hear	dmasterspeaking.
a) was finishing	b) has finished
c) finished	d) finishes
19 At first, I was very nervous, but afte	r a while I to feel more confident.
a) began	b) begin
c) have begun	d) had begun
20 He the Nobel Prize until he	e had written 100 novels.
a) awarded	b) hadn't awarded
c) didn't award	d) wasn't awarded
21 My father read the article which	about cloning.
a) had written	b) written
c) had been written	d) has been writter
22she cooked the food, she	washed the dishes.
a) Until	b) After
c) No sooner	d) By
23 Ali looked both ways, and then he	crossed the street. This means
a) Ali crossed the street after lookin	g both ways.
b) When Ali had crossed the street	he poved both ways
c) After crossing the street, Ali had!	boked both ways
d) Before looking both ways, Ali cro	ossed the street
<u> </u>	

•	24	Which one of the following i	s correctly structured?				
		a) As soon as Samy phoned n	ne, I visited him.				
		b) As soon as Samy had phon	ed me, I had visited him.				
		c) As soon as Samy phoned m	ne, I had visited him.				
		d) As soon as Samy phones m	e, I visited him.				
	25	Which one of the following is					
			mother had cooked the dinner.				
		·	my mother cooked the dinner.				
			mother finished cooking the dinner.				
		•	my mother had cooked the dinner.				
	26	Finally, I finished the task you		ilong			
		a) had asked	b) had been asked				
		c) ask	d) will ask				
	27	He refused to lend me his camera until I to return it on the same da					
				(Longme			
		a) had been promised	b) had promised				
		c) promise	d) have promised				
	28	When I went to the service centre, I was pleased to find that my car we					
				(Longma			
		a) has been repairing					
		b) was repairing					
		c) had repaired					
		d) had been repaired					
4	* .	After the plane off, I fe		(Longman)			
	Œ.	a) had taken	b) had been taken				
	4	c) is taking	d) has taken				
3		Which of the following is struct	·	(Longman)			
			mother had already prepared lunch.				
		b) By the time I visited Hatim, I ha					
•		c) I met my friends as soon as I w					
	9.100	d) I didn't return home until I hav	e finished my work.				

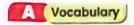


(Lessons 1 & 2)

-				
)	Vocabulary			
1	As an amateur	, he compiled	remarkable shots of fo	rests and their
	by-products.			
	a) reporter	b) correspondent	c) photographer	q1 11e.
2	The lazy studer	nt was ashamed to	his mistakes to th	ne teachers.
	a) admit	b) deny am have been	c) deploy	d, ags /
3	The research te	am have been	data from various so	urces for months.
	a) scattering	b) spreading	c) telling	discienting
4	The earthquake	was the worst natural	to hit the cit	y for over 50 years.
	a) disaster	b) achievement	c) acceptance	d, trend
5	The marketing	leaflets were sent	to all of the email a	addresses on the list.
	a) in	b) out	c) away	d) off
6	'Capitano' is a T	V programme where fo	otball scouts are look	ring for new
	all over Egypt.			
		b) talents		
7	The announcer	nent of the new Capit	al was made in an in	iternational
-	conference.			
	a) scientific	b) code	c) dress	d) press
8	We often cook t	raditional Egyptian me	eals for our guests. Th	e synonym of
	the word "tradit	ional" is "".		
	a) conventional	b) modern	c) relied	d) designed
9	The President ac	ddressed the nation in	a television	after the elections.
		b) spread		
0	Mrs Mary is a/an	for a small p	ublishing fashion ma	gazine in Oxford.
_		b) discoverer		
1	The famous TV a	announcer has	an مشامير celebrities	d political leaders on
-		for over 25 years.		
		b) interviewed	c) replied	d) recovered
		ears, there has been		
		on't cause pollution.	J .	
	a) causes	•	c) consumptions	d) sources
		ers still use fa	•	
	hundreds of yea		mining memous win	
	•		c) traditional	d) applied
	a) developed	b) modern	C) traditional	a) applied

14	There are plan	s to send	and some ordinary peo	ple to Mars by 203
	a) collectors	b) sailors	c) astrologers	d) astronauts
15	You can enjoy	an excellent	c) astrologers of leisure and sporti	ng facilities in Shan
	El-Sheikh.			
	a) range	b) queue	c) row	d) line
)	Language			
16	The woman	for a taxi be	efore her friends arrived.	
			c) phoning	
17	After he had w	ritten the e-mail, h	e it.	, , , ,
		•	c) was sending	d) was sent
18	He said that the	ev each o	ther for many years.	2,
	a) have known	cy cacii o	h) had been know	vina
	c) had known		b) had been knowd) have been know	wina
19	As soon as the	hell thes	tudents left the classroor	n.
	a) rang	b) didn't ring	c) rings	d) was ringing
20			k I graduated.	
		b) while		d) as soon as
21	The facts	by the reporter	before he wrote his repo	
-	a) had checked	h) had been che	ecked c) are checked	d) are checking
22		days before she		9
	a) immigrates	b) had immigrat	red c) immigrating	d) immigrated
23	By the time we	got to the stadium	, our team two	goals.
	a) has scored	b) were scoring	c) had scored	d) will score
24	la radi	o programme abou	ut William Golding last w	eek.
	a) heard	b) was hearing	c) had heard	d) am hearing
25	After se	chool, Mahmoud w	c) had heard rorked in a restaurant for	a year.
	a) had left	b) leaving	c) being left	d) leave
26	Once the journa	lists had asked all t	their questions, the politi	cian
	a) was left	b) was leaving	c) left	d) had left
			company before he quit	
	rivals			
É	a) was working -	on on the	b) is workingd) had worked	
	c) has worked		d) had worked	
28	l didn't go with y	ou to the cinema b	ecause I that file	
	a) already see	b) have already se	en c) had already seen	d) didn't see
29	The student deci	ded not to make tha	it mistake again after	by the teacher.
	 a) being punisher 	d b) punishing	c) had punished	d) punished
30:	When they	the theatre, the	play had already started	
	a) reach	b) reached	c) had reached	d) will reach





Vocabulary on Reading and Listening Texts

adults (n)	كبار/بالغين	lucky (adj)	منظوظ
agree (v) (d)	يوافق	pronunciation (n)	نطق
brilliant (adj)	متميز/رائع	speed (n)	سرعة
coastal (adj)	ساحلي	stick (v)	يعلق/يلتصق
compare (v) (d)	يقارن	teenage (n)	مرحلة المراهقة
creation (n)	خلق/إنتاج	teenager (n)	مراهق
education (n)	التعليم	tone (n)*	نغمة/نبرة صوت
emergency (n)	طوارئ	uninjured (adj)	غير مصاب
grateful (adj)	شاكر/ممتن	unknown (adj)	غير معروف
involved (adj)	متورط	wave (n)	موجة
journalism (n)	صدافة	website (n)	موقع إنترنت
keen (adj)	دریص/متحمس	witness (n) (v) (ed)	شاهد/بشعد
aunch (v) (ed)	يطلق	Withess (ii) (v) (ed)	وموسده المستحد

The answering machine asked to leave a message after the tone.



Workbook Vocabulary

artist (n)	فنان	necropolis (n)	المارة يمنترو
barrier (n)	حاجز	objects (n)	14
bury (v) (yried)	يدفن	order (n)	444
cave (n)	كمف	overhead (adj)	موالى
century (n)	قرن (۱۰۰ عام)	permission (n)	نناتصريح
consequences (n)	نتائج/عواقب	recent (adj)	جنب
council (n)	مجلس/هيئة/معهد	remains (n)	بقايا الثاد
erect (v) (ed)	يبنى/يشيد	remarkable (adj)	رائع
exploration (n)	استكشاف	route (n)	طريق
historian (n)	مؤرخ	sculpture (n)	تمثال/نحت
incident (n)	حابث	spokesperson (n)	متحدث رسعى
location (n)	موقع	successful (adj)	نابح
monument (n)	أثر	whale (n)	موت د

Vocabulary Check point 1

1	The police fou	nd a plastic bag con	taining some	of a dead man whose		
	body was four	d two weeks ago.				
	a) remains	b) heritage	c) specks	d) cells		
2	The key	The key for the case was offered police protection after he received				
	death threats.					
	a) inspector	b) criminal	c) witness	d) author		
3	According to the rules, no child is allowed out of the school during the day,					
	unless accomp	anied by a/an	******* 4			
***	a) friend	b) adult	c) driver	d) advocate		
4	A new Egyptian scientific satellite was from a Chinese base in 2023.					
1900 B	a) attacked	b) competed	c) consumed	d) launched		

nappy about سعيد بـ	spokesperson for	. ۔ ۔ ۔ . تحدث ل				
example of	keen on	حریص علی حریص علی				
able to قادر أن	interested in	مهتم ب				
cover the important information يغطى/يتناول المعلومات الهامة	in the hope of	على أمل أن				
call for help يطلب/يتصل للمساعدة	give permission	يمنح إننًا/تصريحًا				
Expressions, Phrases & Preposition	S					
	c) coastal d) mountain					
a) desert	b) empty					
	because of the changes caused by global warming.					
	Scientists believe that many areas are in danger of being flooded					
c) wasted	d) affected					
a) spread	b) stuck					
9 My book got wet in the rain and all th	My book got wet in the rain and all the pages have together.					
c) hateful d) grateful						
a) regretful	b) useful					
8 We were to our neighbours f	for letting us use their gard	len for the party.				
c) valley						
a) palace	b) necropolis					
	in Saggara where they found his mummy.					
7 Archaeologists have recently uncove	red a of an ancien	t Egyptian king				
c) education	d) punishment					
a) treatment	b) surgery					
	A good university is often the best way to get a good job.					
c) currant	d) shot					
a) wave	e ship and killed 10 people who were in it. b) drought					

Derivatives

V	erb	Not	ın	Adjec	ctive
bury	يدمٰن	burial	ىقن	buried	نون
compare	يقارن	comparison	مقارنة	comparative	نارن/ نسبی
educate	يعلم	education	التعليم	educational	٠٠٠
explore	يستكشف	exploration explorer	استکشاف مستکشف	exploratory	مفلش
locate	يحدد موقعًا/يقع	location	موقع	located	إموضوع
permit	يسمح	permission	إنن/تصريح	permitted	294
succeed	ينجح	success	نجاح	successful	24

- I compared several cars before buying one.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	المرادف Synonym	Antonym -	المضا
barrier	حاجز	obstruction/blockade	assistance opening	قعدا نتتاح
brilliant	متميز/رائع	outstanding/distinguished	ordinary/common	عادي/شائع
compare	يقارن	contrast	discard	بعبتس
consequer	ices نتائج/عواقب	results	causes/reasons	أسباب
erect	يېنى/يشيد	build/construct	destroy/demolish	يدمر
keen	حريص/متحمس	eager/enthusiastic	unconcerned/indiffe	rent غیر ممتم
launch	يطلق	initiate/introduce	end/stop	ينهى/يوقف
permission	إذن/تصريح ا	agreement/license	denial/refusal	إنكار/رفض
remarkabl	رانع 9	extraordinary	familiar ordinary	مانوف عادی

Vocabulary Check point 2

יטו		
1	The police have launched a	an investigation into his activities. The synonym of
	the verb "launch" is "	
	a) initiate	b) end
	c) stop	d) explore
2		tired, the teacherher permission to go home
	early.	
	a) followed	b) relied
	c) took	d) gave
3	Many photographers waited photos for the famous coup	d outside the hotel the hope of taking some
	a) on	b) off
	c) in	d) for
		taken with the permission of the person. The noun
4	"permission" is the opposite	
	a) agreement	b) license
	c) selection	d) refusal
_		gy, but she's not keenphysics.
5	• •	b) on
	a) up	d) by
	c) at	ried with full military honours. The noun of the verb
6	• •	ned with full military nonours. The noun of the verb
	"bury" is "".	hat be usined
	a) buries	b) buried
	c) burial	d) briefly
		arkable for their accuracy. The antonym of
	the adjective "remarkable" is:	
	a) extraordinary	b) odd
	c) ordinary	d) delayed
8	The patient managed to	for help before he fainted as a result of
	the heart attack.	
	a) fight	b) call
	c) refuse	d) reply

⁻ He's a well-behaved child in comparison with his brother,

⁻ He's a well-penaved clink in the study of classical and modern art.

Reading Text (1)

A teenage world!

A new website has just been launched by teenagers for teenagers.

Our World is the creation of Jake and Amy Hope who wanted a news website that other teenagers would enjoy. 'Adults think teenagers are only interested in music and sport,' explained Amy, 'but that isn't true!'



يطلق (1)
خلق/إنتاج(2)
 تعلیم(3)
 کبار/بالغین (4)
(5)

بقاية الثار (1)

معقون (2)

إذن/تصريع (3)

مقبرة كبيرة (4)

Our World has news, technology, education⁽³⁾, music and sport, but what makes it different is that all the reporters are teenagers.

Teenagers sometimes see the world differently to adults⁽⁴⁾, Jake told us and it seems he's right. 'It's brilliant,' said 13-year-old Henry, 'It's much more interesting than most websites.' His sister agrees, 'I really like the fact that all the reports are by teenagers who are keen⁽⁵⁾ on the same things as me.

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

Two days ago historian, José Galán and his team discovered the ancient remains of a 15 or 16-year-old girl who had been buried of for 3,600 years. José was part of a team of Spanish and Egyptian experts, who had been given permission to explore a necropolis on Luxor's West Bank, in the hope of finding out more about the history of the area. What makes the discovery so amazing is that the teenager had been buried with lots of interesting objects.

been buried with lots of interesting objects.

The Egyptian government was very happy about the new discovery. The government said it was one of the most remarkable discoveries in recent years. 'We plan to show the objects in a museum very soon for everyone to see,' a spokesperson for the government said.

Listening Text (1)





1. Two walkers had a lucky "escape last night after a storm hit the small coastal" village of Largs in Scotland. Heavy rain started at 5pm and by 6pm strong winds had blown a lot of water onto the footpath on the sea front. Witnesses say that the walkers were halfway along the path when a huge wave knocked them over. Police believe that the walkers were two local women, but no names have been given, and the women have been returned safe and well to their families.



2. Police were called to a house in Beedon yesterday to help a teenager stuck in a bathroom window. Neighbours saw the feet of 13-year-old Leila Tahar sticking out of the window and thought it was a thief. When the police managed to free the teenager, they discovered that Leila lived at the house, but had forgotten her keys! She said, 'The only window open was the bathroom one, but it was a bit small!'

Listening Text (2) (Workbook)

Newsreader:

Welcome to the Rotterdam local news. Today we have an amazing story of how a sea animal saved the lives of many adults and children by stopping a train ten metres in the air in the middle of a city. Yes, you heard me correctly. The plastic sculpture(1) of a whale's tail, which had been created twenty years earlier by a local artist, had been erected by the Local Council at the end of an overground railway line. Little did they expect the work of art to save lives. However, last

تمثال (1) غير معروف (2) حواجز (3) غير مصاب 🕒 شاكر/ممتن (5)

week when, for some unknown(2) reason, the train could not stop at the final station on its route, it crashed through the safety barriers(3). The sculpture at the end of the railway line was able to catch the runaway train and prevent it from falling into a park below where parents with their children were playing happily.

Luckily, the train had been emptied just moments before, so the only person onboard was the train driver. As he got off the train uninjured 4, he said he was glad that nobody had been hurt and was very grateful⁽⁵⁾ to the artist who had created the tail.

So, it just goes to show you; art can save lives! In other news ...

Video Script

Have you ever thought about what the word 'news' actually means? Well, it means new information, usually about something that has happened recently and it's constantly changing as new information is discovered. We may think of the news as being about bad things, such as crime(1) or national disasters(2), but the news can be about good things such as sport or something fun. The news is responsible for telling us about the world we live in, (4) الساست الصلا be it good or bad.

الطباعة/المطبعة (5) Originally people got the news by word of mouth - travellers going through towns passed on the news they heard to people they met. When the printing press(5) was invented, it was easier (6) بانتظام and cheaper to produce newspapers and the news spread wider

and faster than ever before. For centuries, most people got their news from newspapers, but with access to the internet, sales of newspapers have fallen by half. This doesn't mean that people don't read the news though.

Many people still use newspapers, but they read them online. Social media sites have also become very popular, and people find news on these sites which post regularly. But can we trust this news?

11 >1 4() 0:00



Notes on Vocabulary



nermission (uncountable)

(تصريح) موافقة/رضا

Osama drove his father's car without his permission.

permit (countable)

People from other countries require work permits.

recent

their CV. حدیث (مصنوع/تام منذ فترة قصیرة)

All applicants should send a recent photo with

modern حبيث/متطور (نتيجة لاستخدام طرق أو

Modern technology has had a huge impact on all

location

موقع/مكان (للتصوير مثلًا)

- We have not found a suitable location for the new offices.

- Most of the movie was shot on location in Africa.

position

وظيفة/مركز في الملعب

- First, get yourself into a comfortable position.

- I'm not sure what I would do if I were in your position.

exploration

استكشاف (مكان)

Scientists from all over the world have plans for space exploration.

discovery

اكتشاف (شيء لم يكن معروفًا من قبل)

The discovery of oil has shared in the development of industry.

invention

اختراع (شيء لم يكن موجود ا من قبل)

No other invention had a greater effect on people's life than the internet.

proud of

فخور بـ (يتبعما اسم/ضمير أو (verb + ing))

The company is proud of its achievements.

proud to

فخور أن (يتبعها الفعل في صبغة المصبر)

I'm proud to say we made the right decision.

proud that

the competition. فخور أن (يتبعما جملة كاملة)

We're proud that they chose our school for

Vocabulary Check point 3

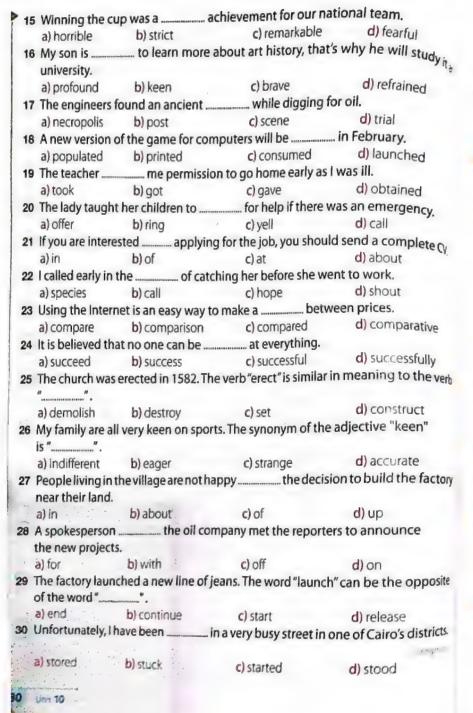
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	One by one the old build	ings in the city have been demolished and repla	
	with tower blocks	j.	
	a) old	b) recent	
	c) modern	d) vague	
2	I'm very proud	take part in this great project.	
	a) of	b) to	
	c) in	d) that	
3	The of the computer has revolutionised the business world.		
	a) discovery	b) invitation	
	c) exploration	d) invention	
4	The exact of the hotel where the royal couple is staying is a secret.		
	a) site	b) location	
	c) position	d) sight	
5	Parents have to give their .	for their children to go on school trips.	
	a) permission	b) grade	
	c) licence	d) degree	





1 Historians ha	ve not always	about the exact date of	of Ramses II's
یج coronation	تتو.		
a) accepted	b) agreed	c) expected	d) explored
2 Yehia El-Fakhi	rany gave a/an	performance as King	Lear. All the audience
liked him.			
a) brilliant	b) awful	c) amazed	d) temble
3 This school is	to the خصصت devoted	of children wit	h reading difficulties.
a) practising	b) prohibition	c) education	d) obligation
▲ "Teen Stuff" n	nagazine is very popul	ar amongas it	deals with their
interests.			
	b) infants	c) teenagers	d) directors
		for police, the fire depa	
ambulance.			
a) evaluation	b) emergency	c) accuracy	d) presentation
6 In Paris, I met	a group of young	: poets, film-maker	rs and painters.
a) fans	b) explorers	c) enemies	d) artists
7 Electric cables	are usuallyb	eneath the streets gro	und.
a) excavated	b) buried	c) drilled	d) deployed
		one of the direct	
a) purposes	b) causes	c) consequences r the facilities at the cit	d) reasons
9 The hotel is in	a centralnea	r the facilities at the cit	y centre.
a) post	b) location	c) destination	d) posture
10 Ancient	are protected by la	w as part of the humar	civilisation.
a) regulations	b) mountains	c) monuments	d) points
11 You must get	from the own	ers before viewing the	flat offered for rent.
a) position	b) treaty	c) contract	d) permission
12 The new	revealed the artist	's skilful hand.	
a) intention	b) invention	c) sculpture	d) scene
13 We found that	the motorway is the n	nost directou	tside the city.
a) street	b) route	c) road	d) avenue
14 The driver slow	ed down as he appro-	ached the police	at which licences
were checked.	• •	•	
a) officer	b) station	c) state	d) barrier





Past perfect (Extra points)



No sooner had Marwa found the money than she reported the police. No sooner did Marwa find the money than she reported the police.

إِنَا جَاءِتَ هَنْهُ الْكُلُمَاتُ فِي أُولَ الْكُلُامُ تَكُونَ القَاعِدَةُ السَابِقَةِ، وإذا لم تأت في أول الكلام يكون الآتي:



Marwa had hardly found the money when she reported the police.

On looking at the question, I knew the answer. = When I looked, I knew

By yesterday بحلول امس, he had applied for the job.

Having booked the tickets, I took the train to Assuit. = After I had booked

It was only when he had finished his work that he helped me.

It wasn't until he had finished his work that he helped me.

استخدامات أخرى للماضي التام (other uses)

من غعل شرط المالة الثالثة من أأ

If our team had played well yesterday, they would have won the cup.

ربهه Wich/If Only للتعبير عن الندم أو اللوم في الماضي.

I wish I had studied harder last year.

ا في حالة وجود فاعل بعدها لتعبر عن اللوم والندم في الماضي. إنهاء l'd rather you hadn't done that = I wish you hadn't done that.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	No sooner had Mona cooke	ed the food than shea shower.			
	a) will have	b) had			
	c) had had	d) has			
2	Hardly the phone of	Hardly the phone down when it started ringing again.			
	a) have I put	b) will I have put			
	c) did I to have put	d) had I put			
3	By yesterday, sheto quit her job.				
	a) decided	b) has decided			
	c) had decided	d) was decided			
4	Ontired, he went back home.				
	a) feeling	b) had felt			
	c) felt	d) being felt			
5	It wasn't until last week that	hethe money he had borrowed.			
-	a) had returned	b) returned			
	c) has ratured	d) will return			



		d the next one.	
a) 'd finished		to, tries	
c) have finishe	d	a commence	
He th	e film until he had bo	oked the ticket.	
a) had seen		by west's rest	
c) hadn't seen		d) couldr's see	
		ne.	
	ishing	b) finishes	
		d, had finishes	
typed	the report, the secre	tary handed it to the ma	inager.
			di Africa
	he stepped on n		sed to me.
a) did	b) had	c) has	d) शहेंS
in a big	g city before you mo	ved to Alexandria?	
a) Have you wor		b) Were you workin	-
c) Had you work	red	d, Nould you nork	
My cousin	to a big city befo	re he visited Cairo.	
a) wasn't been		b) has never been	
c) won't be		d) had never been	
We weren't allow	wed to take the plan	e because we1	the tickets.
a) forget		b) had forgotten	
) have forgotter	1	d) forgetting	
lardly had he fo	ound a good job	he told his father.	
ı) than	b) then	c) when	d) what
Ramy was hung	ry because he	anything all day.	
a) hasn't eaten	b) wasn't eaten	c) never eats	d) hadn't eaten
		•	d) working
) joined	b) had joined	c) joining	d) have joined
	a) 'd finished c) have finished He th a) had seen c) hadn't seen He hi a) had been fin c) has finished typed a) Having No sooner a) did in a big a) Have you work My cousin a) wasn't been c) won't be We weren't allow a) forget c) have forgotter hardly had he for a) than Ramy was hung a) hasn't eaten After in a) works The police had s	a) 'd finished c) have finished He	c) have finished He

1:	3 They al	I the doors before the	ey left.	
	a) have locked		P) Mill lock	
	c) had been lock	ing	d) locked	
14	I didn't want to l	nave lunch because I	with my frier	nds at a restaurant
	a) have eaten		b) had eaten	
	c) was eating		d) hadn't eaten	
15	The children wer	en't allowed to watch	TV because they	their homework
	a) had done		b) haven't done	
	c) must have dor	ne	d) hadn't done	
16	It was only when	he the instr	uctions that he knew h	now to operate
	the machine.			
	a) was reading	b) had read	c) has read	d) reads
17	When we got the	e bill, Mohamed	on paying.	
	a) has insisted	b) had insisted	c) insisted	d) insists
18	After the parcel .	, I received it.		
	a) has arrived	b) arrives	c) had been arrived	d) had arrived
19	had he f	finished the report wh	nen he handed it to the	e boss.
	a) No sooner		b) Scarcely	
	c) After		d) It was only when	
20	we had l	booked the tickets th	at we took the train to	Aswan.
	a) No sooner		b) Hardly	
	c) By the time		d) It was only when	
21		ey, she bought the ki		
	a) Having saved			
	c) After had saved		d) No sooner had she	saved
	my frien			
. 4	a) By the time I me		b) On meeting	
-	c) Having been mi		d) Had I met	
23		ng sentences is grami	•	
			s to write on the walls.	
		pnans nad used hierog otlans had built the pyr	llyphs to write on the w	valis.
		otians had built the pyr otians believed in life al		
5"	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	noria peneved in file di	nter they mad died.	

nΔ	Hardly had he made the mista	ke when he was dismissed. This means "	
24	a) He was dismissed at first, the	n he made the mistake	
	b) He didn't make the mistake,	but he was dismissed	
	c) He was dismissed as soon as	he made the mistake	
	d) He was dismissed before mal	king the mistake.	
25	One of the following sentence:	s is grammatically incorrect.	
	a) By the time I came back from	my trip, a lot of things had changed	
	b) By the time I come back from	my trip, a lot of things will have changed	
	c) By the time I had come back f	from my trip, a lot of things changed.	
	d) By the time I have come back	from my trip, a lot of things will have char	iged
26	No sooner had I arrived at the o	office than Ian email to the expo	orting
	company.		werg.
	a) was sending	b) have sent	
	c) sent	d) had sent	
27	I had hardly returned home	my close friends for lunch.	Lorgece
	a) than I met	b) when I had met	
	c) when I met	d) when I was meeting	
28	the factory became rea	ady to produce high-quality cotton clotl	nes.
			contract
	a) Having constructed	b) After constructing	
	c) Before constructing	d) Having been constructed	
29	Which of the following is structu	irally correct?	
i	a) Having decorated, the house b	ecame quite ready for the wedding party	-
l	o) When I reached the office, I rea	ised that I had left my phone at home.	
C) Did you understand the lesson	that had explained again?	
d) Before I go home, I had bought	t the things I need.	
0 W	hich of the following doesn't g	ive the same meaning of this sentence:	
H	aving heard about the bad accid	lent, I contacted my friend.	Longmani
a)	After I had heard about the acci	ident, I contacted my friend.	
b)	I didn't contact my friend until I	had heard about the accident.	
c)	had contacted my friend before	e I heard about the accident.	
d)	As soon as I heard about the acc	cident. I contacted my friend.	

Test yourself



Part (2) (Lessons 3 & 4) · anguage

Vocabula	•		
Beiggonengestesenne '	and their new schools.	e had a difference of opi	
a) defect	b) riches	c) health	d) education
2 The moth	ner's quick thinking in tl	he health saved	the baby's life.
a) facility	b) test	c) emergency	d) talent
3 The dese	rt forms a natural	between many count	ries in Africa.
a) barrier	b) limit	c) building	d) search
4 The Natio	onal Circus isa	big tent for the summer :	shows next month,
		c) detecting	
5 The Minis	stry of Sportpe	rmission for the rally to t	ake place in March.
		c) gave	
6 What we		quences of the war? The	
a) result	b) cause	c) barrier	d) research
7 Mohame	d was very to pa	ass the test because he ha	dn't studied very wel
a) obviou	s b) strange	c) keen	d) lucky
B Ithinktha	t starting your own proi	ect is aidea that	will bring you success
a) brilliant	b) interested	c) minor	d) mean
The viole	nt storm caused	damage to farm build	lings, and they would

take a lot of time to be repaired. a) simple b) serious c) light 10 This dictionary can serve as a guide to English

d) dark

.. as well as meaning. d) communication c) pronunciation a) punctuation b) connection

of voice with old people. 11 You shouldn't use that rude ...

c) syllable b) note a) ton

d) tone

is a large natural hole in the side of a cliff, hill or under the ground. a) tunnel b) gap c) hut d) cave

13 Medical science has made amazing progress in years.

a) old b) ancient c) recent

d) modern

14 You can. the program by double-clicking on the icon.

b) launch a) finish

c) inhibit

d) repair

15 The movie is set in the 19th during the reign of Queen Victoria. a) decade b) calendar

c) millennium

d) century

	people the par		
a) leave	a table because we	one in advance	a) riad diready lett
a) naci booked	the employment age	ncy, twenty other per	ople.
before me.		icy, them, our per	
a) had arrived		b) were arrived	
a ware arriving		d) had been arrived	
c) were through	en better if you	her the truth.	
1 40/0	D) Dag tolg	c) are telling	d) tell
a) (old	Luxor because he	there.	•
a) has already bee	n	b) had already bee	n
c) is		d) would be	
The criminal char	iged his name after h	his home	town.
a) left	b) had been leaving	c) was leaving	d) leaves
- Hany was late for	the meeting and was	angry we	
a) were starting	b) starting	c) had started	d) have started
a) were starting	lirty as people		
a) were leaving	b) have left	c) were left	d) had left
A) Pameses II	over ancient Egyp		years.
a) was ruling	b) had ruled		d) ruled
we Wardly th	ne match when I felt		
a) I played	b) I had played	c) had I played	d) will I play
	his country than h		
a) he had left	b) he left	c) had he left	d) was he leavin
on the b	ad news, he fainted.		
a) hearing	b) had heard	c) heard	d) he had hear
	lot of problems, he	- 4	
a) had had	b) he had had		d) had
	night that I		
			d) was feeling
			a) was recinct
	ng is grammatically		
•	na applied for the jo		
•	Dsama applied for th		
c) No sooner had C	sama applied for th	e job than he took	. I t ,

d) No sooner did Osama apply for the job than he took it.



Part (3) Lessons 5 & 6







A News Report تقرير إخباري A Volunteering Campaign!

A group of teenage students in East Alexandria have started a volunteering campaign to clean the beaches in their area. They have been working for ten hours daily. They have done a great work and people started to know about them and give them all the help they could.

"Summer is about to start and a lot of people are about to visit our city, so it would be suitable to find our beaches clean," said Ahmed Agamy who started the campaign. They collected a lot of rubbish from the dirty beaches and collected them in plastic bags. Some restaurant owners near the beaches provided them with vehicles to take this rubbish to landfill sites.

The beaches are cleaner now and look great. Mariam, one of the participants said, "It was hard work, but we are all delighted to help our society." All the students who took part in the campaign were excited after the work had been done. They said that cleaning the beaches is good for the environment and would help the economy in their city.



Skills Exercises

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

It was a homework-free weekend. Shady suggested going swimming. He had just completed his swimming course and was eager to try out the skills he had Jearnt, His friends readily "agreed. They headed straight for their neighbourhood swimming complex3. It was quite crowded. They changed quickly and leapt1 into the pool. They splashed around on the shallower end. A lifeguard was keeping a watchful eye on all the swimmers. Shady challenged his friends for a swim over in the deep end. They refused as they knew it was dangerous for them. Besides, they did not swim that well after all. Diving to the deep end wasn't easy for them to do. Shady insisted that he was a better swimmer and set out to prove it. He walked over to the deep end and plunged in. At first everything seemed alright and he did well, so all his friends cheered. Suddenly, Shady gave a shout and started flailing his arms. He was having difficulties! His friends were too shocked to react⁽⁹⁾. Luckily, the lifeguard noticed him and quickly dived in. When he was safely out of the pool, the lifeguard gave him a tongue-lashing for fooling around. Shady apologised. All the way home, he had to endure his friends making fun of him. It seemed that he needed a lot of training.

choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Ciliana			
1 Shady and his	friends went swimm	ing during the	
	b) holidays		d) weekend
	ed swimming as he		
a) show off his	swimming skills to hi	s friends	
b) test the lifegu	uard		
c) teach his frier	nds the skills he had	learnt	
d) complete his	swimming course		
3 As it was the we	eekend, the swimm	ing pool was	
a) deep	b) empty	c) crowded	d) free
4 / Tongue lashing	g' means giving a/ar	}	
a) warning	b) scolding	c) encouragement	d) advice
5 The synonym of	f the word "eager" i	S	



a) skilful

(9) يتصرا	
(10) يتم	

c) patient and interested

(5) يثناثر اة؛ ضحل

b) worried

d) keen and impatient



- a) attentive b) rash c) impatient d) eager

 7 Why did Shady's friends refuse his challenge? Because they were
 a) afraid of him b) worried about him c) less skilful d) too shocked

 8 Although Shady was a good swimmer, he needed _______
 a) lots of money b) much training c) a lot of advice d) to be older
- (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:
 - 1 Mass media play an important part in shaping public opinion and public attitudes. Therefore, there are new laws that assure the credibility and responsibility of them.
 - العب وسائل التواصل دورًا محوريًا في صياغة الرأى العام والاتجاهات العالمية ومن ثم هناك قوانين معاصرة تؤكك من قهم ومسئولياتهم. أن مندقهم ومسئولياتهم.
 - ل يلعب الإعلام دورًا عابرًا في تشكيل الرأى العالمي والاتجاهات العامة ولذلك توجد قوانين جديدة تضمن مصداقيتهم . (أ) ومسئوليتهم .
 -) تُشكل وسائل الإعلام دورًا بارزفي صياغة الرأى والاتجاهات العامة ومع ذلك لا توجد قوانيس جديدة لضمان مصداقيتهم ومسئوليتهم.
 - أ) تلعب وسائل الإعلام دورًا هامًا في تشكيل الرأى العام والاتجاهات العامة ولذلك توجد قوانين جديدة التي تضمن مصدا قيتهم ومسئوليتهم.
 - 2 Many young men accept the news they get from social media as a truth. However, much of this news can be misleading and may disturb stability and peace of society.
 - إ. وافق الكثير من الشـــباب على الأخبارالتي يســمعونها من وسائل الإعلام كأنها حقيقة. لكن الكثير من الأخبار قد تكون مضللة وتضر بمصلحة المجتمع وسلامته.
 - ل) يقبل الكثير من الشباب الأخبار التي يحصلون عليها من وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي على أنها حقيقة ومع ذلك فإن كثيرًا من الأخبار قد تكون خادعة وقد تضر الاستقرار والسلم في أي مجتمع.
 -) يقبل كثير من الناس الأخبار التي يمتلكونها من وسسائل التواصل الاجتماعي على أنها صدق. ومع ذلك فإن كثيرًا من الأخبار قد تكون صادقة وقد تضر الاستقرار والسلم في المجتمع.
 - ضراً الكثير من الشباب الأخبار التي تأتيهم من وسائل الإعلام على أنها واقع. ولكن كثير من الأخبار قد لا تكون خادعة وتضر الاستقرار والسلم في أي مجتمع.
 - 3 Due to modern forms of entertainment such as the TV and the internet, young people lack physical fitness and body flexibility.
 - إسبب وسائل الترفيه الحديثة مثل التلفزيون والإنترنت يفتقر الشباب إلى اللياقة البدنية والمرونة الجسدية.
 - أن وسائل الاستمتاع الحديثة غير المعروفة مثل التلفزيون والإنترنت قد تجعل الشباب يفقد اللياقة البدنية والمرونة الجسدية.
 - ς) نتيجة لوسائل الترفية السلبية مثل التلفزيون والإنترنث بفثقد المراهقون إلى اللباقة العقلية والمرونة الجسدية.
 - d) بسبب وسائل الاستمتاع السلبية الحديثة مثل التلفزيون والإنترنت يفتقر الناس إلى الكفاءة النفسية والثبات الجسدى،
 - 4 The life of Taha Hussein, the great Egyptian writer, has always inspired people to improve their lives. His blindness didn't hinder him from great achievements.
 - ألهمت حياة طه حسين المفكر المصرى العظيم الناس لتحسين حياتهم ففقدانه للبصر إعاقة عن الإنجازات الكبيرة.
 - أ) قد ألهمت حياة المفكر المصرى العظيم طه حسين الناس لكى يحسنوا ظروف معيشتهم ففقدائه البصر لم يعقّه عن الإنجازات المهمة.
 - لقد ألهمت حياة طه حسين الكاتب المصرى العظيم الناس لتحسين حياتهم فقدانه للبصر لم يعقه عن الإنجازات الكبيرة.
 - ع) تلهم حياة الكاتب المصرى العظيم طه حسين الناس لكى ينجحوا فى حياتهم ففقداته للبصراء معقهم عن الإنجازات الهامة.

- 5 Education is considered the cornerstone to achieving progress in all fields. That's why schools must be attractive places suitable for educational reform.

 إن التعليم هو العجر الأساسي لتحقيق الرحاء في كل الطرق لذلك من الممكن أن تكون المدارس أماكن جداية موافقة.
 - إن إن التعليم هو التعليمي
 للإصلاح التعليمي
 إن يقتر التعليم مجر الأساس لتحقيق التقدم في كل المحالات لذلك يجب أن تكون المدارس أما كن جذابة مقاسي
 - اللإصلاح التعليمي . ع) يُعلَم القليم ركن الأساس تريادة التقدم في كل المحالات وهذا لأن المدارس من الممكن تكون أما كن جذاية متاسبة
- d) إن التعليم هو حمر الأساس لإنجار التقدم في جعوع العجالات لكن يجب أن تكون العدارس أماكن جذابة مناسبة للإصلاح التعليمي

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- هـــل توافــــق على وضع قوانين لمراقبـة وحظر بعض مواقع الإنترنــت وصفحات التواصــل الاجتماعي خاصة التي أصبحت مصدرًا للشائعات المعددة للمجتمع؟
- a) Do you accept putting laws to watch and prohibit any websites and mass media pages generally those that become a source of rumours which threat society?
- b) Do you agree with making laws to monitor and prohibit some websites and social media pages especially those which have become a source of rumours which threaten society?
- c) Do you agree with making laws to monitor and let some websites and social media blogs specially what have become a resource of facts and threaten society?
- d) Are you for putting laws to watch and ban any websites and social media ads especially those which became a source of truth and threatened society?
- 7 يختلف الناس فى نظرتهم لتطور الاتصالات فمنهم من يرى أنها تطور طبيعى، ومنهم من يظن أن أضرارها تفوق مزاياها وأنها أصبحت تضر بالعلاقات الاجتماعية.
- a) People differ in their view of communication development. Some of them think
 it is a natural development. Others think that its harms exceed its advantages
 and it is harming social relationships.
- b) People are different in their sight of communication progress. Few of them think it is normal development. Some of them believe that its damages pass their advantages and it is hurting social relationships.
- c) People differ in their opinion of connection development. Some of them see it is a usual development. Others guess that its harms exceed its disadvantages and it is damaging social relationships.
- d) People are different in their view of communication development. Some of them say it is a neutral development. Others think that its harms overweight its advantages and it is harmless to social relationships.
- 8 يستغل المنتجون مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي في الإعلان عن منتجاتهم لأنها تجذب الملايين من الناس لكن هذه الإعلانات أصبحت مزعجة لتكرارها ولإعاقتها لمستخدمي المواقع المختلفة.
- a) Producers use mass media in announcing their products as it attracts millions of people. But these announcements have become annoying and that's because of their repetitions and disturbing different websites pages.
- b) Producers use social media in advertising their productions because it attracts millions of people. However, these adverts have become disturbing because of their repetitions and disturbing different websites blogs.

- c) Producers use social media in advertising their products because it attracts millions of people. However, these adverts have become annoying because their repetitions and disturbing different websites users.
- d) Producers take social media in advertising their produce since it attracts millions of people. Though these adverts have become disturbing as a result of their repetitions and disturbing different websites users.

يعتبر اهتمام الشباب بأفلام العنف ظاهرة تستحق اهتمام كل علماء الاجتماع والمفكرين لمحاولة إيجاد الحلول لها. مقول الخبراء إنه ريما يكون لها آثار على ارتفاع معدل الجريمة.

- a) Young people's regards in adventure films is a phenomenon which pays the attention of all sociologists and believers trying to give solutions for it. Expense say that it can have an impact on the rise in crime number.
- b) Young people's interest in violence films is a phenomenon which deserves the attention of all sociologists and thinkers trying to find solutions for it Experts say that it may have an effect on the rise in crime rate.
- c) Young people's interest in funny movies is a phenomenon which deserves the attention of all psychologists and thinkers trying to find solutions for it. Experts say that it may have an effect on the rise in crime number.
- d) Young people's concern in violent films is a phenomenon which pays the attention of all writers and thinkers trying to find solutions for it. Experts think that it must have an affection on the raise in crime rate.

🚓 يعمل الكثير من مراسلي الصحف و القنوات التليفزيونية في مناطق خطيرة مثل مناطق الحروب والكوارث الطبيعية مُذلك بهدف توصيل الأخبار والأحداث الجارية للقراء و المشاهدين في كل أنحاء العالم.

- a) Many newspaper and TV correspondents work in dangerous places such as war and disaster areas with the aim of transmitting the current news and events to readers and viewers all over the world.
- b) Lots of newspaper and TV correspondents have work in dangerous places such as war and disaster areas with the aim of watching the current news and incidents to writers and viewers all over the world.
- c) Some newspaper and TV audience work in dangerous areas such as war and disaster areas with the aim of broadcasting the current news and events to readers and thinkers all over the world.
- d) Many newspaper and TV audience have work in areas of dangers such as fight and disaster areas with the aim of watching the current news and incidents to readers and viewers all over the world.
- Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following: "How can stories about national heroes inspire young people?"

,							
-							
Lused more than	Lused the right	1 luse	d a topic	1 / Iw	rote the	1 /	I used the rig
4 new vocabulary.	structure.	VV	ntence.		nclusion.	90	punctuation
	\		******	-	The state of the		panetation



Al-Adware Test

choose	the	correct	answer	from	a,	b, c	or	d:
--------	-----	---------	--------	------	----	------	----	----

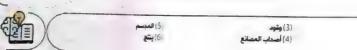
1	Dr Zewail wen	it to America to com	plete his befor	re settling there.
	a) affection	b) education	c) practice	d) fiction
2	The w	ith the new prime m	will be رئیس الوزراء inister	shown on tonight's
	news.			
	a) interview	b) criticism	c) attack	d) truce
3	There are man	y search in co	ompetition, but Goog	le is the most popular.
	a) powers	b) routes		d) motors
4	When my daug	ghter apologised for	her mistake, I felt a	of regret in her
	voice.			
	a) sound	b) tone	c) look	d) song
5	This is the first	time I've heard	this kind of trouble	e in our town.
	a) from	b) at	c) for	d) about
6	The city erecte	d a statue in the grea	it singer's honour. The	e synonym of the verb
	"erect" is	oose û		
	a) deny	b) release	c) construct	d) damage
7	We went to Lor	ndon last year, but w	e there two y	ears earlier.
	a) had also beer	1	b) were being	
	c) have also bee	n	d) would be	
8	Although Karee	m the test n	nany times before, he	was very nervous.
	a) has done		b) had been doi:	ng
	c) was doing		d) had done	
9	Sheunti	il she had done her	homework.	
	a) slept		b) didn't sleep	
	c) had slept		d) wasn't sleepin	ig
10	As soon as it stop	pped raining, the m	atch	
	a) will start	b) started	c) had started	d) has started
11	The boy	photos after the po	lice had left the scen	e.
	a) was taking	b) had taken	c) took	d) was taken

12 I didn't leave I had	taken my pocket money.
a) as soon as	b) because
c) after	d) until
13 He said that his mother we	ould be very upset when she that he han
his job.	
a) would learn	b) learned
c) learns	d) had learned
14 He knew that she had bee	n crying as her eyesred.
a) have been	b) had been
c) are	d) were
15 I met Hesham last week. I	him since 2018.
a) haven't met	b) hadn't met
c) wasn't meeting	d) didn't meet

▶ Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Karl Benz invented the modern car in 1888 in Germany. Emile Roger worked for Benz in France. He made cars in France. By 1900, many people were building cars in France and in the U.S. The first company to build only cars was Panhard et Levassor in France. Panhard started in 1889. The Peugeot car company started in 1891 in France. In the US, Frank and Charles Duryea started the Duryea Motor Wagon Company in 1893. It was the first US car Company. By 1902, Ransom E. Olds started the Olds Motor Vehicle Company. A year later, Henry Ford started the Ford Motor company. It produced the Cadillac. All these early modern cars burned a gasoline or diesel fuel. Ford opened factories in France and Britain in 1911. Then, they opened a factory in Denmark in 1923. Later, they opened a factory in Germany in 1925. Ford was one of the first manufacturers. to use an assembly line. With an assembly line, factory workers could produce.

Most modern cars still burn gasoline or diesel fuel. These cars cause air pollution. They get the air dirty. Now many people are looking for cleaner cars. And many car companies are looking for cleaner fuels.



Choose the corre	ect answer from a	a, b, c or d:	
16 Which compar	ny first built only o	cars?	
a) Benz	b) Ford	c) Panhard	d) D. Duryea
17 Fuel is			
a) what makes	cars move	b) a car producti	on system
c) the price of a	a car	d) no correct ans	swer
18 What is an asse	embly line?		
a) A way of ma	king products.		
b) A safe way o	f making products.		
c) A quick way	of making products	5.	
d) All of the pre	vious.		
19 The Ford Motor	r Company opened	d a	
a) factory in De	nmark in 1911	b) factory in Geri	•
c) factory in Brit	ain in 1929	d) factory in Fran	ce in 1931
20 The Peugeot ca	r company started	in	
a) 1911		b) 1923	
c) 1891		d) 1925	
21 The assembly lin	ne waside	ea.	
a) Panhard et Lev	vassor's	b) Ransom E. Old	ls'
c) Karl Benz's		d) Henry Ford's	
22 The place where	people make thir	ngs is called a/an	con 6
a) factory		b) laboratory	
c) line		d) country	
3 The cars using	are conside	red environmentally-fr	iendly cars.
a) gasoline		b) diesel	
c) electricity		d) coal	
Choose the corre	ct Arabic transla	ation:	
- Young people s	hould appreciate	their elders' sensible a	dvice and wisdom.
They are the out	tcome of their lor	ng experience through	which they have
faced different s			•
حياتهم والتى واجهوها في	ناسىة فهى نتاج خبرتهم في	كلماث وحكمة كبار السن الحس	 a) يجب أن ينجذب الشباب إلى المواقف المختلفة.
ا في المواقف المختلفة.	رتهم في الحياة والتي واجهوه	حكمة كبار السن العاقلة فهي نتاج خبر	-
		د وحكمة من هم أكبر منهم فهي تتاج تج	
		ح وحكمة من هم أكبر منهم العاق	

25 Choose the correct English translation:

المستقبل. والحروب إلى آثار نفسية كثيرة على الأطفال من أهمها فقدان الشعور بالأمان والخوف الدائم من المستقبل. المستقبل المستقبل الحروب بشتى السبل. التي علينا أن نتجنب الحروب بشتى السبل.

- a) Wars and fights lead to many social effects on children; one of them is missing the feeling of security and the constant fear of the future. Therefore, we should spread peace by all means.
- b) Wars and disputes lead to many psychological effects on children; one of which is losing the feeling of safety and the constant fear of death. So, we must avoid wars in all fields.
- c) Wars and disputes bring many social effects on children; one of them is losing the sense of security and the constant pain of the future. Therefore, we don't have to avoid wars by all means.
- d) Wars and disputes lead to many psychological effects on children; one of which is losing the feeling of safety and the constant fear of the future. Therefore, we should avoid wars by all means.

26 Answer the following questions:

- 1. If you were King Lear, would you go mad because of Goneril and Regan's bad treatment? Why?
- 2. Oswald received the punishment he deserved. Do you agree? Why?
- 3. Was Gloucester right to love the King despite the harm he suffered because of him? Why?
- 27 Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following: To your friend Salim telling him about your new school in the United Arab Emirates and about making new friends when you moved there with your family. Your name is Adel. Your email address is adel2024@yahoo.com. Salim's email is salimreda@hotmail.com.

البد من التحريب عن التحريب التعليب المائلة عن التحريب عن التحريب عن التحريب عن التحريب عن التحريب عن القائد ال عند عن التحريب عن القائد التحريب عن القائد التحريب عن القائد التحريب عن القائد التحريب عن التحريب عن التحريب عن التحريب التحري



Unit 11

Objectives



لوجدة الرقيمي

Reading : Online film reviews

: Two film reviews

listening: Interview with a film critic; intonation

Speaking: Explain how a film affects you

language: Tag questions, adjectives and adverbs

life Skills : Critical thinking; listening to others' opinions; recognising differences in opinion



Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

action (n)	حركة	horror(n)	
animation (n)*	الرسوم العتدركة	musical (n)	بر بردية غنائية/فيلم غنائي
comedy(n)	فیلم کومیدی/کومیدیا	romantic (adj)	رسناه
historical (adj)	تاریخی	science fiction (sci-fi) (n)) معلد راين

The website has hundreds of animations you can download for your children to watch.

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

adapted (adj)	مقتبس/مأخوذ	incredibly (adv)	بشكل رائع
approve(v)(d)	يوافق/يستحسن	intonation(n)	نبرة صوت
bestselling (adj)	ذو أفضل مبيعات	lack(n) (v) (ed)	نتصاينقصه
cartoon (n)	رسوم متحركة (كارتون)	Martian (n)	مريخي (متعلق بكوكب المريخ)
certain (adj)	محدد/معین	marvellous (adj)	رائع
choice (n)	اخثيار	mate(n)	زمیل/رفیق
colleague(n)	زمیل (عمل)	mathematician (n)	عالم رياضيات
constantly (adv)	بشكل دائم/باستمرار	meanwhile (adv)	نى غضون دلك/في نفس الوقت
crew(n)	طاقم العمل	mission (n)	مهمة/بعثة
critic (n)	ثاقد	mixed (adj)	مختلط
demonstrate(v)(d)	يثبت/پېرهن	neighbourhood (n)	الجيرة/الحي
director(n)	مدير/مذرج	performance(n)	اداء
documentary (n)	فيلم وثائقي	pity(n)	شفقة/حسرة
enjoyable (adj)	ممتع	recommend(v) (ed)	يوصى بـ/يرشح
fan (n)	معجب	remake(v)	يعيد صناعة
film (v) (ed)	يصور فيلمنا	rescue(n)(v)(d)	إنقاذاينقث

عرض نقدی/ه مرعوب سیناریو/نسخا	surprising (adj) survive (v) (d) typical (adj)	مدھش پندواپیش دی <i>ا</i>	
سيناريو/نسٺا		بددوايش دوا	
	typical (adj)		
		بمودجي/أضلي	
تسجيل صوتر	version (n)	سنبخة الصدار	
مؤثرات خاصا	visuals (n)	مرتبات/مشاهد مرثية	
قصة/سير الأ	secondo (a)	-	
أسلوب	warmtn (n)	مغنو	
تمثيل	positive (adj)	إيجابي	
قاس	powerful (adj)	غوى/مؤثر	
مروب/يمرب	return (v) (ed)	يرجع/يعود	
أصلى	rule (v) (d)	يحكم	
عدائى	space (n)	الغضاء	
سلبى	talented (adj)	موهوب	
	تمثیل قاس هروبد/یهرب اصلی عدائی	visuals (n) مؤثرات خاصا موثرات خاصا مصد/سیر الأد warmth (n) positive (adj) powerful (adj) return (v) (ed) rule (v) (d) space (n)	

Choose the confect ans	wei iroin a, b, c c	n u.	
1) A film is a	film in which ver	y frightening or unnati	ural things happen,
for example dead	people coming to	life and people being	murdered.
a) comic	b) horror	c) romantic	d) musical
2 The new musical's	songs and	are now available or	n CD.
a) soundtrack	b) review	c) revision	d) replay
is a kin الصبار 3 Cactus	d of plants that ca	nnon very little	water or in the desert
a) detect	b) deprive	c) survive	d) derive
4 Sales representativ	es need to be out	goi <mark>ng, because they a</mark>	re meeting
customers.			
a) helplessly	b) gradually	c) temporarily	d) constantly
5: I think that watchin	g the film	of a novel is much n	nore exciting than
reading it.			
a) type	b) version	c) episode	d) animation
6 There were some int	eresting interview	s in theabout th	e 6th of October War.
a) correspondence	b) copy	c) documentary	d) competition

			are read by most acto
B The winning tea	m were loudly cheere	ed by their	when they received
the Cup of Natio	ns.		
a) fans	b) inspectors	c) assistants	d) enemies
9 The famous write Khalid Ibn El Wal	er is currently workin eed.	g on a of a	historical film about
a) wave	b) soundtrack	c) script	d) current
O The court	the sale of the busi	inessman's house to	o repay his debts.
a) discovered	b) applied	c) remade	d) approved

at the same time	في نفس الوقت	of the same name	ينفس الاسم
get lost	يضل الطريق/يتوه	rule over a country	الملام بلذا
adapted from	مأخوذ من/مقتبس من	leave behind	مذلف/يترك خلغه
choice of	اختيار اـ	shout at	بصرخ فی وجه
climb onto	يصعد إلى	similar to	مشابه ك
escape from	يھرب من	take off	يطير/يقلع
go back	يرجع/يعود	type of	يوع من

Derivatives

Verb	Noun		Adjective	
adapt يقتبس	adaptation	اقتباس	adapted	مقتبس
	comedy	كوميديا	comic	كوميدى
يېرمن/يثبت demonstrate	demonstration	إثبات/برهان	demonstrative	توضيحي
بحرك/ يزود بالطاقة *power	power	قوة/طاقة	powerful	توي/مؤثر
یرشع/یومی بـ recommend	recommendation	ترشيح/توصية	recommended	مرشع
rule محكم .	ruler	حاكم	ruling	داكم
يرمب scare	scare	رعب	scared scary	مرعوب مخيف
Survive , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	survival survivor	النجاة ناج	surviving	نام

⁻ The gas station generates enough energy to power a town of 6000 people.

words, Synonyms & Antonyms

word	Meaning	المرابط، Synonym	Antonym a	المضا
cruel	قاس	violent/brutal	merciful/kind	رحيم/عطوف
	يثبت/يبرهن ate	illustrate/prove	confuse disprove	پريا <u>ٿ</u> پمحص
horror	رعب	fear/terror	calmness/delight	هموء/سفادة
hostile	عدائي	unfriendly/unsympathetic	friendly/kind	لطيف/عطوف
incredibly	بشكل رائع	amazingly/astonishingly	normally/slightly	نشكل طبيعي
powerful	قوی/مؤثر	impressive/influential	impotent/dull/power	صعبم/ممل ess
recommen	یوصی بایرشع d	propose/suggest	deny/oppose	بمكر ايغارض
rule	يحكم	govern/dominate	surrender/serve	بستسلم ايخدم
scared	مرعوب	frightened/terrified/afraid	brave/courageous	شماع
talented	موهوب	gifted	untalented/unskille مامر	d غبر مومو <i>تاغ</i> بر

Vocabulany Check point 2

Let's check our memory!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

•			l up like that all the tim	ne. The antonym of the	
	adjective "cru	iel" is "".			
	a) violent	b) brutal	c) merciful	d) strange	

2) In England, the Prime Minister has the right to rule the country and he should be the head of the ruling party.

b) for Clat

3 Some kinds of bacteria can survive in high temperatures. The adjective of the verb "survive" is "...... b) survival C) SUPPLYOR

a) survives 4. The Brazillan team includes some highly talented young players. The synonym of the word "talented" is

a) unskilled b) cufted r) fabulous di romante 5 | wish all teachers would stop shouting ... the children at school.

b) for con a) about d) at 6 The play had been adapted for children. The noun of the verb "adapt" is "

b) adaptation a) adapt d) adaptable c) adapted

7) I have two cousins who are the same name as they were both named after our grandfather. c) of d) for a) out b) off

8 A hostile audience refused to listen to Senator Drummond's reply. The word "hostile" is the opposite of "...

a) friendly b) cruel c) devastated d) unsympathetic

Soler power generation is greatly affected by cloud cover.

Prizes and rewards are a powerful tool for successful encouragement at achools.

Reading Text (1)

The Martian



يبرهن يثبت (١)

مواهب (2)

ينجو (3)

بشكل دائم (4)

خيال علمي (5)

Clever, exciting, and surprisingly funny, The Martian is a brilliant film, adapted from the bestselling book of the same name, and demonstrates⁽¹⁾ the talents ² of actor Matt Damon and director Ridley Scott.

When astronauts take off from the planet Mars, they leave behind Mark Watney (Damon), who they believe had died in a storm. Watney is left with little food or water and has to find a way

to survive on the empty planet. Meanwhile, back on Earth, NASA and a team of international scientists work constantly to bring him home. At the same time his crew mates plan a brave rescue mission.

Unlike most sci-fi films, The Martian has no fight scenes. Instead, it is a clever and powerful film and perhaps the best science fiction. film that I've seen in a long time.

The Lion King

Although the visuals in the 2019 version(1) of The Lion King are quite brilliant, this remake lacks the warmth and energy of the original (2) cartoon film. This is even more surprising when you



أصلي ال قصة ازا بيلم رسوم متدركة . 4 فيلم وثائقي 🖰

نسدة اا

look at the list of talented actors involved. The storyline is the same and the music and songs are great, but it just isn't as much fun and it's difficult to know why.

Like the 1994 film, the story is about the young lion Simba, his unkind uncle who kills Simba's father and Simba's life in the desert with his new friends Timon and Pumbaa. The director Jon Favreau has created an animation which looks incredibly real and maybe that's the problem – it doesn't look like an enjoyable film, more like a wildlife documentary"!

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

Idon't expect to like films about children who get lost, but the film Lion was 1) surprisingly good. It's about a family in India who are 2) constantly trying to find enough work to live well. One day, five-year-old Saroo goes to a town with his older brother, but when his brother doesn't return from a job, Saroo climbs onto a train and becomes lost. The story is about the 3) brave boy as he tries to live in a city where the people are often 4) hostile and unfriendly.

I found the second half of the film less 5) enjoyable, although it is still good. Saroo is now a 6) talented student of 25. He has a good life with a kind family who took him to Australia, but he wants to find out what happened to his brother and family in India. The story is very 7) powerful and I'll always remember it. The acting was totally 8) brilliant and I definitely recommend it.

Listening Text (1)

Adel : Tonight, I'm talking to film critic Seleem about the films he's seen recently. Seleem, welcome.

Seleem: Hi, Adel.

Adel : You've been a film critic for many years, so I guess you love watching films, don't you?

Seleem: I do, and there are some great ones out there. You're a fan⁽²⁾ of action films, aren't you?

Adel : Yes, have you seen any good ones recently?

Seleem: Black Panther. I really enjoyed it, but it's had mixed reviews. The special effects were great and so were the fight scenes, but the dialogue was difficult to follow at times, which was a pity. The best film I've seen lately was the award-winning Hidden Figures. I don't often watch historical films but this one is brilliant. It's the true story of black female mathematicians working at NASA in the 1960s and how hard they had to work to prove themselves.

Adel : They both sound good. Any others?

Seleem: A Beautiful Day in the Neighbourhood¹⁷. This is another true story. It's about Fred Rogers, an American children's TV presenter and a journalist lt's a story of kindness and has a wonderfully positive message.

Adel : Tom Hanks was in that, wasn't he?

Seleem: Yes, and as you know, I'm a big Tom Hanks fan. He's a marvellous actor and his films are so different. He's done comedy, animation, action – you name it, he's done it.

Adel : Very true. So, when you're not working, what kind of film would you choose to watch?

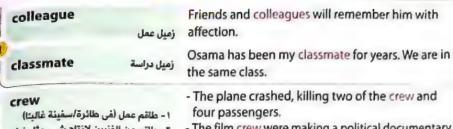
Seleem: Well, believe it or not I love musicals. You thought I'd say action or science fiction, didn't you?

Adel : I did yes, but why not. I mean I love horror films!

Seleem: Really?



Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning.



ا ـ طاقم عمل (في طائرة/سفينة غالبًا) ٣- طاقم من الفنيين لإنتاج شيء مثل فيلم أو مسرحية

ناقد (1)

وشجع (2)

مختلط (3)

حوار (4)

<u>• :تة/حسرة (5)</u>

فاعاء وياضيات رخ

الجيرة/الحي (7

رائع ن

- The film crew were making a political documentary. لاحظ أننا يمكن أن نستندم (cast) في المعنى الثاني.

staff
The school has over 100 full-time staff.

review ۱ - مراجعة/إعادة نظر/مراجعة (دروس) ۲- مقال نقدى - The writer sent the press a review of the research.

- The newspaper published many reviews about the new film.

revision مراجعة/إعادة نظر/مراجعة (دروس) - I'm making some revisions to the book for the new edition.

I know I haven't done enough revision for tomorrow's exam.

documentary

There were some interesting interviews in فيلم وثائة the documentary about Naguib Mahfouz.

podcast

تدويان صوتال (ملاف يمكان ساماعه أو 4

To listen to the podcast, click on the link below.

webcast

البث الشبكي (مباشر عبر الإنترنت)

There will be a live webcast of the total solar eclipse in the country.

approve

يوافق على

The Medical Research Council has approved the use of a new drug for cancer.

pass

يمرر قانونًا (بالتصويت)

Many anti-smoking laws have been passed.

ratify

يصدق على (اتفاق أو معاهدة بالتوقيع عليما فتصبح رسمية) The treaty was ratified by the Parliament.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The famous journalist writes film	for the newspapers.
a) animations	b) revisions
c) talents	d) reviews
2 Most world countries have agreed	tothe treaty about the earth's
environment.	
a) approve	b) pass
c) ratify	d) succeed
3. When my brother started his new jo	ob, all hiswere friendly and helpful
a) colleagues	b) competitors
c) classmates	d) rivals
4 The captain andwelcomed	the famous footballer themselves on
entering the plane.	
a) staff	b) crew
c) cast	d) group
5 We were able to watch a live	of the launch of the first spaceship
to Mars.	
a) documentary	b) podcast
c) webcast	d) musical





Vocabulary General Exercises

Although they	are old, Ismail Yassi	en'sare still like	d by elderly people.
There was a lo	ok of on th	e little girl's face when	she saw the big dog
coming toward	as ner.		
horror	b) historical	c) comic	d) romantic
- When it was fir	rst produced, <i>Jurasic</i>	Park, the famous science	ce film,
-backed many	people.		
- V faction	b) fission	c) fiction	d) fact
Many children	and young people b	ouy books after they have	re been for
- Antovision.			
a) painted	b) adapted	c) viewed	d) reviewed
= Thanks to com	puter, it is n	ow possible to make ca	rtoons much more
- wickly than in	the past.		
a) romance	b) horror	c) animation	d) terror
6 We're having a	small party for one of	of ourwho's le	aving the company
next week.			
a) colleagues	b) classmates	c) fans	d) commuters
- What We	in our new house	is space to store things	5.
a) leak	b) lock	c) lack	d) lick
8 This simplified	of Shakespe	c) lack eare's play is intended fo	or younger children.
a) review	b) version	c) fiction	d) visual
9 The UN team w	ere on a mercy	to take food to the	refugees when they
were attacked.			
a) mission	b) trip	c) fight by a passing cr	d) treaty
10 The crew of the	sinking boat were	by a passing cr	uise ship.
a) reserved	b) rescued	c) preserved	d) deserved
		vas to write a	of a book or a film
we watched.	1 > 1 + 1 1 + 1 .	A	d)
a) revision	b) highlight	c) review	a) scene
	revolves around	a woman who يدور حول أ	is searching for her
missing sister.	la) asiai siasa	a) and down	d) standing
		c) review	
		is known for asking to	
a) interviewer	b) Interviewee	c) simplifier	a) applicant
huses late at mire	r at the bus was ann	ounced, people were .	to use the
buses late at nig	h) offective	c) scared	d) fannad
15 Good teamwork	is a/an too	c) scared I for effective manager	mont
		c) unsuccessful	

16	This restauran	it was a good	, I enjoyed the m	eal very much	λ.
	a) recommend	b) recommer	nded c) recommen	dation d) reco	ommendal
17	without the fr	nap we bought at	the information cent	re, we would i	Jave
	lost easily.				
			c) got		ed
18			igland for more than f	ifty years.	
	a) captured	b) ruled	c) spread	d) surre	ndered
19	The spaceship	tookand	d landed safely back to	the base.	
	a) at	b) off	c) in	d) out	
20	Illegal hunting	is threatening th	e of some ani	mal species.	
	a) survive	b) survival	c) survived	d) surviv	/able
21	My brother wa	s right to recomm	nend watching this exc	iting film. The	antonym
	of the verb "rec	ommend" is "	#		201
		b) relate	c) associate	d) oppos	se
22	The brave soldi	er refused to esca	ape and leave his fellow	w soldiers	******* a
	a) behind	b) off	c) about	d) for	
23	The latest test r	esults clearly den	nonstrate that the vacc	works اللقاح	
			strate" is "".		
	a) improve	b) illustrate	c) disprove	d) approv	/t3
24	Alexander the 0	Great ruled over a	huge empire. The an	tonym of the	vord "rule"
	is"".				
	a) surrender	b) seize	c) conquer	d) aspire	
25	Teachers usually	use aid:	in the classroom; chil	dren like to se	e what is
	being introduce			45 4.	(longman)
	a) unclear	b) visual	c) listening	d) audio	
26	A lot of young p	eople prefer watc	hing films in	which a hero s	trives to
	marry the lady h				dongmo-
			c) economical		
			e idea of closing the fa	ctory; it's very	
	for them to find			15.1	dangman
			c) accepting	d) hostile	
		strument would y			Hongman
	n) musically		c) musician		CI.
29 [he film	had a bitter comn	nent on a lot of fight s	cenes in the n	
	A selelant	And and all of	A - 141 -	45	denamani
20.1	ritical	b) criticism	c) critic	d) critically	
30 1	oon tilke such til 1) fun	ms; i'm a	of action films only.		donama"
e) tuli	D) fall	c) fine	d) van	



Tag Questions

- السؤال المذيل هو سؤال يكون أخر الجملة الخبرية لتأكيد المعنى.
- يتم عمل هنا السؤال من الفعل المساعد أو الثاقص فقط وبعده الضمير العائد على الاسم.
 - اذا كانت الجملة المراد تأكيدها مثبتة يكون السؤال المذيل منفيًا والعكس صحيح.
 - بستخدم لطلب الموافقة أو التأكيد.
 - لابد أن يكون السؤال المنفى مختصرًا.
 - السؤال المثيل يأتى قبله (,).

Positive statement	+ Negative question tag	Negative statement	+ Positive question tag
+		\odot	(+)
You are a student	, aren't you?	Hala is not a nurse	, is she?
You are a student	, aren't you!	riala is not a nurse	, is sne?

+ sentence —	-	- tag	- sentence —	_	→ + tag
Ali is Egyptian		, isn't he?	John isn't Egyptian	,	is he?
You study hard	ļ	don't you?	You don't study hard	,	do you?
He lives in Cairo	,	doesn't he?	He doesn't live in Cairo	,	does he?
You were at home	,	weren't you?	You weren't at home		were you?
Ola visited her uncle	,	didn't she?	Ola didn't visit her uncle	,	did she?
Omar was watching TV		wasn't he?	Omar wasn't watching TV	,	was he?
You have seen my bag	,	haven't you?	You haven't seen my bag	,	have you?
You have dinner at 8 pm	,	don't you?	You don't have dinner at 8 pm	,	do you?
She's finished the report	,	hasn't she?	She hasn't finished yet	,	has she?
She has blonde hair		doesn't she?	She doesn't have blonde hair	,	does she?

He'd finished by 6 p.m.	-	hadn't he?	He hadn't come by 6 p.m.	L	, . had he?
He'd rather leave now		wouldn't he?	He'd rather not come	,	would he
He'd better find a job	,	hadn't he?	He'd better not go now	,	had he?
They'll help us		won't they?	They won't help us	,	will they?
He can ride a horse		can't he?	He can't ride a horse	,	can he?
We need more money	,	don't we?	We needn't more money	,	need we?
He used to get up early		didn't he?	He didn't use to help us	,	did he?
I think he is a thief		isn't he?	I don't think he is a thief	,	is he?
I'm right		aren't !?	I'm not mistaken	1	am I?
		خاصــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ	المراجع المراجع المراجع المراجع		
لقتراح Let's go out	,	shall/shan't we?	ل طلب Let us go out		will/won's
Interesting	,	isn't it?	Beautiful ,	***************************************	isn't she?
This/That is Ahmed's car	,	isn't it?	These are Ali's pens ,	1	eren't they?
There's a celebrity here	,	isn't there?	There're 2 cars here	_	ren't here?
Stop talking	,	will/won't you?	Don't speak loudly ,	. V	vill you?



1) الجملة التي تحتوى على never – rarely – hardly – seldom – nor – neither – few – little – no الجملة التي تحتوى على على 1 تعتبر جملة منفية لذلك يكون السؤال المذيل مثبتًا.

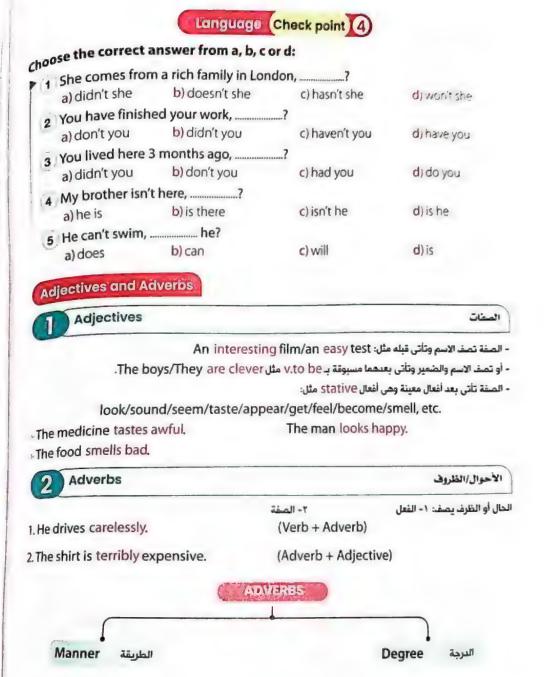
- He can hardly run, can he?
- He rarely visits you, does he?

r) إذا كان الفاعل Everything, Something, Nothing يكون الضمير it يكون الضمير

Nothing can live without energy, can it?

r) إذا كان الفاعـل Everyone, body - Someone, body - No one, body يكون الضمير (٢

Everyone is coming to the party, aren't they?



الظَّرُوفُ التي تبين طريقة أو كيفية حدوث الفعل.

He must take his study seriously.

الصفة. (ly) للصفة. النوع بإضافة (ly) للصفة.

Adject	Adjective Ad		dverb Adject		ive	Adverb	
bad	سيئ	badly	بسوء	nervous	قلق	nervously	ė
correct	صحيح	correctly a	بطريقة صحيد	nice	لطيف	nicely	F. /
foolish	أجمق	foolishly	بحماقة	permanent	دائم	permanently	Ŀ
loud	عالِ	loudly	بصوت عالٍ	quick	سريع	quickly	مرعة
quiet	هادئ	quietly	بعدوء	slow	بطء	slowly	edo
sad	حزين	sadly	بحزن	sudden	مفاجئ	suddenly	ěĹ

رع إذا انتهت الصفة بـ(أ) تضاف (إ) أما إذا انتهت بـ (إe) فندنف e ونضع (y).

Adjecti	ive	Adve	rb	Adject	tive	Adverb	
beautiful	جميل	beautifully	بجمال	careful	حريص	carefully	بدرص
terrible	فظيع	terribly	بفظاعة	horrible	رهيب	horribly	بشكل رهيب
real	حقيقى	really	حقاً/فعليًا	probable	محتمل	probably	من المحتمل

إذا انتهت الصفة بـ(y) تقلب (i) قبل إضافة (إy).

Adjec	tive	Ad	verb	Adje	ctive	Ad	verb
angry	غاضب	angrily	بغضب	easy	سمل	easily	بسمولة
heavy	ثقيل	heavily	بثقل/بشدة	hungry	جوعان	hungrily	بجوع
happy	نسافيد	happily	بسعادة	lucky	محظوظ	luckily	لحسن الحظء

- It was an easy test. (adj)
- The students answered the test easily. (adv)

٤) إذا انتهت الصفة بـ(ic) نضيف (ally).

Adjective		ective Adverb		tive	Adverb
fantastic	وانع	fantastically بشکل رائع	dramatic	درامی	dramatically بشکل درامی
drastic	قاس/عتيف	drastically بشکل عنیف	automatic	أتوماتيك	automatically انوماتیکیا

Adjec	tive	A	dverb	Adj	ective	A	dverb
good	جيد	well	بشكل جيد	fast	سريع	fast	بسرعة
long	طويل	long	ېشكل طويل	low	منخفض	low	بشکل منخفض
fine	جيد	fine	جيدًا	high	مرتفع	high	بشكل مرتفع
straight	مستقيم	straight	بشكل مستقيم	right	صديح	right	بشكل صحيح

Ali is a fast swimmer. (adj)

Ali swims fast, (adv)



بعض الصفات تستخدم كظرف بدون إضافة (y) مثل الصفات في الجدول السابق، ولكن إذا أضيفت لما (ly) يكون لما معنى مختلف مثل:

A	djective	Ad	dverb	Adverb		
late	متاخر	late	متأخرًا	lately	مؤخرًا (منذ وقت قريب)	
hard	صلب/صعب/شدید	hard	بجد/بشدة	hardly	بالكاد/تقريبنا لا	
wrong	خاطئ/مخطئ	wrong	بشكل خاطئ	wrongly	بظلم	
near	قريب	near	بالقرب	nearly	تقريبنا	

She hardly ever goes out of the house. (She almost never goes out of the house).

. You wrongly accused him. = (unfairly بظلم) not incorrectly.

مناك صفات تنتمى بـ y أولا تتغير عند التحويل إلى حال ومنها:

hourly	في كل ساعة	daily	يومى/يوميئا	weekly	أسبوعى/أسبوعينا
monthly	شمری/شمریا	yearly	سنوی/سنویا	early	مبكر/مبكرًا

- My father is reading his daily newspaper. (adj)
- My father reads the newspaper daily. (adv)

التحويل إلى حال تكون كالأتى:
 in a/an + adj-ly + way/manner

elderly	مسن	lonely	وحيدًا/يشعر بالوحدة	ugly	قبيح
fatherly	أبوي	lovely	محبوب	deadly	مميت
friendly	ودود	motherly	كالأم	heavenly	سماوي
lively	مفعم بالحيوية	silly	سخيف	cowardly	جبان
brotherly	اخوى	likely	متوقع/محتمل	sisterly	خاص بالأخت

• He is a friendly man. (adj)

He greets/treats me in a friendly way. (adv)

Part . 213

Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

• 1	The students w	anted to finish thei	r homework	• •
	a) so quick	b) quicker	c) quickly	d) quick
2	The girl sang	and all the a	udience clapped the	ir hands.
	a) as beautiful	b) beauty	c) beautiful	d) beautifully
3	Whoever made	the cake did a	job.	
	a) wonder	b) wonderful	c) wonderfully	d) more wonderfully
4	The room in wh	ich Ahmed sleeps v	vasdecorate	
	a) colourfully	b) colourful	c) coloured	d) colour
5	Although I told	him a silly joke, my	friend laughed quite	Ocodeas@gggoonecorocomp #
	a) loudest	b) louder	c) loudly	d) loud

Adverbs of degree غاروف الدرجة

١) هي الظروف التي تبين درجة الصفة والظروف الأخري.

extremely	للغاية	very	بثا
quite	تمامنا	fairly/slightly	قليلا
Mount Everest is extremely high.		My little brother speaks English very w	
She is quite good at maths.	The question is slightly difficult.		ficult.

الأحوال التي تصف الصفة تأتى قبلها وهي تساوي very في المعنى تقريبًا:

الاسم	لحال		الصفة
	very		
	extremely	للغاية	
The Nile is	fantastically	بشكل منمش	long.
	incredibly	لا يصدق	
	tremendously	جدًا/هائل	

عند تحويل الصفة إلى اسم يتحول الحال إلى صفة ليصف ذلك الاسم ونحذف (أ ونضع a/an قبل الصفة.

1	الصفة		الاسم
	an extreme ly	الغاية	
The Attle been 1	a fantastic ally	بشكل مدهش	
The Nile has	an incredible y	لايصدق	length.
	a tremendous ly	جدًا/هائل	





Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4 YOU don't bio.	h) -1		
v don't VOU	D) does if	c) do you	d) doesn't it
a This winter is	not very cold,	?	
a) does it	DISTIT	c) won't it	d) is it
3 The boy wash	't able to do it alone,	?	
a) wasn't it	b) was he	c) didn't he	d) wasn't he
4 My friend doe	esn't work hard,	?	
a) does he	b) doesn't he	c) he does	d) is he
5 You have a ba	d headache,?		
a) does it	b) isn't it	c) don't you	d) haven't you
6 There are so n	nany people in the stre	et,?	
a) aren't they	b) are there	c) isn't there	d) aren't there
7 He had lunch	at home today,	?	
a) did he	b) didn't he	c) hadn't he	d) had he
8 She has never	been to Egypt,	she?	
	b) does		d) doesn't
	ave now, you		
a) hadn't	b) don't	c) had	d) wouldn't
10 I think he's from	b) don't n India,?		
a) don't	D) COCSITTING	C) 1311 (11C	
	no rain for the last co		
	b) hasn't there	c) isn't it	d) has there
12, isn't it			
a) It's not your o		b) It's very hot	
c) This isn't Ahm		d) It's never co	ld in Aswan
13 aren't			
	inglish teacher		
	sh teacher		
-	fined the terms. The		
h.	b) correction		
_	payments		
4			d) regularisation
	the course as		
a) easily	b) easy	c) easier	d) easiest

17 The footballer played	4	7. The footballer	nlaved to	day. He scored three	goals!			
a) late b) lately c) a late d) latest 19 My brother is a firefighter. He's very a) braver b) bravery c) bravely d) brave 20 At the end of the school year, some students try to make up for the wasted time. a) hardly b) hard c) hardness d) harden 21 Don't touch the machine. It switches itself off a) automatics b) automatical c) automatic d) automatically 22 As there was much time, we walked to school. a) a slow b) slow c) slowly d) slowing 23 He was a very person. He acted very a) sensible/sensibly c) sensibly/sensible d) sensible/sensible 24 Which one of the following is grammatically correct? a) The teachers in my school are friendly. b) The teachers in my school treat us friendly. c) The teachers in my school treat us in a friend way. d) The teachers in my school treat us friendlier. 25 Which one of the following is correctly structured? a) She looked happily last week. b) She looked happy at the children. d) She looked happy at the children. d) She looked happy at the children. d) She looked happy at the children. and punctual worker; the manager is going to promote you. **Longman** a) actively b) activate c) action d) active 26 Lions aren't tame animals, ** a) isn't it b) are they c) aren't they d) don't they 28 He'd come to the party if I invited him, ** **Coorganotes** **Coorganotes** **Longman** **Longman** **Longman** **Longman** **Longman** **Longman** **Longman** **Jungman** **Jung	'		b) brilliant	c) brilliantly	d) brilliancy			
a) late b) lately c) a late d) latest 19 My brother is a firefighter. He's very a) braver b) bravery c) bravely d) brave 20 At the end of the school year, some students try to make up for the wasted time. a) hardly b) hard c) hardness d) harden 21 Don't touch the machine. It switches itself off a) automatics b) automatical c) automatic d) automatically 22 As there was much time, we walked to school. a) a slow b) slow c) slowly d) slowing 23 He was a very person. He acted very d) sensible/ sensibly c) sensibly/ sensible d) sensible/ sensible 24 Which one of the following is grammatically correct? a) The teachers in my school are friendly. b) The teachers in my school treat us friendly. c) The teachers in my school treat us friendlier. 25 Which one of the following is correctly structured? a) She looked happily last week. b) She looked happy last week. c) She looked happy at the children. d) She looked happiness at the children. d) She looked happiness at the children. d) She looked happiness at the children. and punctual worker; the manager is going to promote you. **Liongman** Liongman** A company and isn't it b) are they c) aren't they d) don't they 28 He'd come to the party if I invited him, 20 company and a civongman and punctual him, 20 and a civongman and a civongman and punctual him, 20 and a civongman	11	R Although he a	rrived an hour	he started work	immediately.			
a) braver b) bravery c) bravely d) brave 20 At the end of the school year, some students try to make up for the wasted time. a) hardly b) hard c) hardness d) harden 21 Don't touch the machine. It switches itself off d) automatics b) automatical c) automatic d) automatically 22 As there was much time, we walked to school. a) a slow b) slow c) slowly d) slowing 23 He was a very person. He acted very person. He				c) a late	d) latest			
a) braver b) bravery c) bravely d) brave 20 At the end of the school year, some students try to make up for the wasted time. a) hardly b) hard c) hardness d) harden 21 Don't touch the machine. It switches itself off a utomatic b) automatics b) automatical c) automatic d) automatically 22 As there was much time, we walked to school. a) a slow b) slow c) slowly d) slowing 23 He was a very person. He acted very sensible/ sensibly c) sensibly/ sensible d) sensible/ sensible/ sensible c) sensibly/ sensible d) sensible/ sensible 24 Which one of the following is grammatically correct? a) The teachers in my school are friendly. b) The teachers in my school treat us friendly. c) The teachers in my school treat us in a friend way. d) The teachers in my school treat us friendlier. 25 Which one of the following is correctly structured? a) She looked happily last week. b) She looked happy at the children. d) She looked happy at the children. 26 You're an and punctual worker; the manager is going to promote you. (Longman a) actively b) activate c) action d) active 27 Lions aren't tame animals, for a congramation of the congramation of the party if I invited him, for any congramation of the party if I invited him, for any congramation of the party if I invited him, for any congramation of the party if I invited him, for any congramation of the party if I invited him, for any congramation of the party if I invited him, for any congramation of the party if I invited him, for any congramation of the party if I invited him, for any congramation of the party if I invited him, for any congramation of the party if I invited him, for any congramation of the party if I invited him, for any congramation of the party if I invited him, for any congramation of the party if I invited him, for any congramation of the party if I invited him, for any congramation of the party if I invited him, for any congramation of the party if I invited him, for any congramation of the party if I invited him, for any congramation of the party if I	41		,					
20 At the end of the school year, some students try					d) brave			
the wasted time. a) hardly b) hard c) hardness d) harden 21 Don't touch the machine. It switches itself off a) automatics b) automatical c) automatic d) automatically 22 As there was much time, we walked to school. a) a slow b) slow c) slowly d) slowing 23 He was a very person. He acted very a) sensibly/ sensibly c) sensibly/ sensible d) sensible/ sensibly c) sensibly/ sensible d) sensible/ sensible 24 Which one of the following is grammatically correct? a) The teachers in my school are friendly. b) The teachers in my school treat us friendly. c) The teachers in my school treat us friendlier. 25 Which one of the following is correctly structured? a) She looked happily last week. b) She looked happy last week. c) She looked happy at the children. d) She looked happy at the children. d) She looked happiness at the children. 26 You're an and punctual worker; the manager is going to promote you. (Longman a) actively b) activate c) action d) d) active 27 Lions aren't tame animals, for they a) isn't it b) are they c) aren't they d) don't they	20	At the end of	the school year som	a students try				
a) hardly b) hard c) hardness d) harden 21 Don't touch the machine. It switches itself off				c students try				
21 Don't touch the machine. It switches itself off				c) hardness	d) harden			
a) automatics b) automatical c) automatic d) automatically 22 As there was much time, we walked	2.			•				
22 As there was much time, we walked	_				d) automatically			
a) a slow b) slow c) slowly d) slowing 23 He was a very	22		· ·					
a) sensibly/ sensibly b) sensible/ sensibly c) sensibly/ sensible d) sensible/ sensible Which one of the following is grammatically correct? a) The teachers in my school are friendly. b) The teachers in my school treat us friendly. c) The teachers in my school treat us in a friend way. d) The teachers in my school treat us friendlier. Which one of the following is correctly structured? a) She looked happily last week. b) She looked happy last week. c) She looked happy at the children. d) She looked happiness at the children. 26 You're an	-		·		d) slowing			
a) sensibly/ sensibly c) sensibly/ sensible d) sensible/ sensible 24 Which one of the following is grammatically correct? a) The teachers in my school are friendly. b) The teachers in my school treat us friendly. c) The teachers in my school treat us in a friend way. d) The teachers in my school treat us friendlier. 25 Which one of the following is correctly structured? a) She looked happily last week. b) She looked happy last week. c) She looked happy at the children. d) She looked happiness at the children. 26 You're an	23		,					
c) sensibly/ sensible 24 Which one of the following is grammatically correct? a) The teachers in my school are friendly. b) The teachers in my school treat us friendly. c) The teachers in my school treat us in a friend way. d) The teachers in my school treat us friendlier. 25 Which one of the following is correctly structured? a) She looked happily last week. b) She looked happy last week. c) She looked happy at the children. d) She looked happiness at the children. 26 You're an	_			b) sensible/ sens	ibly			
24 Which one of the following is grammatically correct? a) The teachers in my school are friendly. b) The teachers in my school treat us friendly. c) The teachers in my school treat us in a friend way. d) The teachers in my school treat us friendlier. 25 Which one of the following is correctly structured? a) She looked happily last week. b) She looked happy last week. c) She looked happy at the children. d) She looked happiness at the children. 26 You're an			•					
a) The teachers in my school are friendly. b) The teachers in my school treat us friendly. c) The teachers in my school treat us in a friend way. d) The teachers in my school treat us friendlier. 25 Which one of the following is correctly structured? a) She looked happily last week. b) She looked happy last week. c) She looked happy at the children. d) She looked happiness at the children. 26 You're an	24							
b) The teachers in my school treat us friendly. c) The teachers in my school treat us in a friend way. d) The teachers in my school treat us friendlier. 25 Which one of the following is correctly structured? a) She looked happily last week. b) She looked happy last week. c) She looked happy at the children. d) She looked happiness at the children. 26 You're an				•				
c) The teachers in my school treat us in a friend way. d) The teachers in my school treat us friendlier. 25 Which one of the following is correctly structured? a) She looked happily last week. b) She looked happy last week. c) She looked happy at the children. d) She looked happiness at the children. 26 You're an		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·						
d) The teachers in my school treat us friendlier. 25 Which one of the following is correctly structured? a) She looked happily last week. b) She looked happy last week. c) She looked happy at the children. d) She looked happiness at the children. 26 You're an								
a) She looked happily last week. b) She looked happy last week. c) She looked happy at the children. d) She looked happiness at the children. 26 You're an								
b) She looked happy last week. c) She looked happy at the children. d) She looked happiness at the children. 26 You're an	25	Which one of t	he following is corre	ctly structured?				
c) She looked happy at the children. d) She looked happiness at the children. 26 You're an		a) She looked h	appily last week.					
d) She looked happiness at the children. 26 You're an		b) She looked h	nappy last week.					
26 You're an								
a) actively b) activate c) action d) active 27 Lions aren't tame animals,? a) isn't it b) are they c) aren't they d) don't they 28 He'd come to the party if I invited him,? (Longman)								
a) actively b) activate c) action d) active 27 Lions aren't tame animals,? a) isn't it b) are they c) aren't they d) don't they 28 He'd come to the party if I invited him,?	26	You're an	and punctual wo	rker; the manager is g	joing to promote you.			
27 Lions aren't tame animals,? a) isn't it b) are they c) aren't they d) don't they 28 He'd come to the party if I invited him,?					(Longman)			
a) isn't it b) are they c) aren't they d) don't they 28 He'd come to the party if I invited him,?			•	•				
28 He'd come to the party if I invited him,?	27							
· ·		.,	•					
ardonti prognine craianii drwonianine	28		•					
,	00		•	.,	•			
29 This food tastes; you can share the meal with me. a) delicious b) deliciously c) badly d) bad	29		•					
	30		,		•			
a) surprising / surprising b) surprisingly / surprisingly	30			-				
c) surprisingly / surprising d) surprisingly / surprisingly								

Test yourself



(Lessons 1 & 2)

ese the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

yocabulary Vocabulary			
) Vocaballing	n't like horrer films can	ing that they say	aka pasala panyays
AAV father does	n't like horror films say	ing that they can m	ake people nervous.
The antonymon	b) torror	a) enlanges	d) corrow
a) fear	In "The Seven Comme	C) Cairriness	thrused as
2 The Japanese III	Im "The Seven Samurai	was In rio	mywood as
	(JEVEII.		
a) remade	b) derived	c) depicted	o) rorerors
3 Don't miss the c	class tomorrow – we're	e naving a/an	or chapters three
and four.			
a) research	b) review	c) article	d) inspection
4) The old hotel is	of buildings	built during the late	e 19th century.
a) genuine	b) original	c) take	d) typical
5 A/An IS	responsible for every	thing on making a	film.
a) director	b) officer	c) employee	d) clerk
6 Tamer Hosny, th	e famous singer is far	nous for his excitin	g live concert
a) conferences	b) intentions	c) invitations	d) performances
7) The in 1	the new animation fil	m were so amazing	that all the audience
were very impre	essed.		
a) sights	b) reviews	c) visuals	d) rehearsals
B The final	of the report delete	ed some important	points.
a) scene	b) version	c) site	d) image
g The study	the link between	poverty and malnu	saying سوء التغذية strition
it is clear.			
a) hides	b) develops	c) invents	d) demonstrate
There were some	e interesting inciden	ts in thea	bout President Sadat.
a) horror			
	he plane instructed		
a) crew		c) cast	
-	nd of films v		
	b) romantic		-
	f you to frighten the		•
	b) heartedly		
	t" is thought to be o		
d) lettor	ni romantic	CLCOMIC	ui collabolati\

15	Experts belie	ve that the painting i	s not, but	it is a brilliant copy.
	a) fake	b) subordinate	c) genuine	d) wonderfu
)	Language			
16	Somebody is	knocking at the door	?	
		b) isn't it		d) aren't they
17		t Ali will come soon, l		
	a) don't you	b) aren't you	c) will he	d) do you
18	Give Ahmed	this camera tomorrow	7	
		b) will you		d) aren't you
19		your soup,?		
10		b) is there	c) isn't there	d) isn't it
20	Pass me the s		6, 13111	
20		b) aren't l	c) aren't you	d) won't you
21		live in the New Valley,		, -
21	a) didn't	b) aren't	c) don't	d) did
22		s taken my dictionary		
22	a) hasn't one	b) haven't they	c) don't they	d) doesn't he
23	Which one of	the following is gramr	matically incorrect?	
20	a) Ali is never l	ucky is he?	b) Ali is always li	ucky, isn't he?
	c) Ali is never u	ucky, is he? inlucky, is he?	d) Ali is always u	nlucky, is he?
24	My father was	respected by	those who worked	with him.
	a) great	b) greatness	c) greatly	d) greatest
25		nave been aff		
	a) bit		c) extreme	
26	The witness	recounted ever		
	the robbery.		, , ,	-
		b) accurate	c) accurateness	d) accrete
		tims of the fire were		
		b) quickly		
28		g has risen th		
		b) dramatical		
29		peak		
	a) fluently Engli	sh	b) fluent English	
		fluent 🕏 💮	d) English fluent	
30	As he was found	d the scene of	the robbery with a g	un in his hand, he
	was arrested.			
	a) nearest	b) nearing	c) nearly	d) near



Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

معروض برسوم متحركة	harness (v) (ed)*	يستغل ليستخدم
مزعج	hilarious (adj)	مرح اعضدك جدأ
فظيع/سيئ جدأ	island (n)	جزيرة
ممل	Malawi (n)	مالاوی (بلد إفریقی)
بحرص	partner (n)	شريك
مطاردة/يطارد	personally (adv)	شخصينا
مرح/مبتمج	politely (adv)	بطريقة معنبة
نماية	popular (adj)	شائع/محبوب
قتال/يقاتل	right (n) (adj)	حق/على صواب
بشكل عام	silly (adj)	سخيف
ببلاح ناري/مسدس	windmill (n)	طاحونة هوائية
	مزعج فظیع/سیئ جداً بحرص مطاردة/یطارد مرح/مبتهج نعایة نعایة قتال/یقاتل بشکل عام	hilarious (adj) أنج مزعج island (n) لام Malawi (n) ممل partner (n) personally (adv) politely (adv) popular (adj) right (n) (adj) silly (adj)

Man could harness the power of waterfalls to generate electricity.

Workbook Vocabulary

burning (adj)	مئترق	realise (v) (d)	يدرك
equipment (n)	معدات	scenery (n)	مناظر طبيعية
mistake (n)	خطأ	stupid (adj)	غبى
owner (n)	مالك	war (a)	. 412
prefer (v) (red)	يفضل	war (n)	حرب

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	Most films for k	ids under twelve	arerather tha	an live-action.
	a) animated		b) romantic	
	c) devastated		d) delivered	
2	There is a great	deal of increasing	interest in th	ne wind and waves as
	new sources of			•
	a) discovering		b) harnessing	
	c) exploring		d) expiring	
3	Ais a l	building or structu	re with parts that turn	around, used for
	producing elec	ctrical power or cru	ushing grain.	
	a) waterfall	b) workshop	c) windmill	d) panel
4	We preferred to		to enjoy theo	
	a) site		c) audience	
5	Many people e	njoyed the	BBC comedy series "A	bsolutely Fabulous".
	a) serious		b) hilarious	
	c) dangerous		d) romantic	
6	The manager fi	nallythe	scope of the problem w	hen the sales
	decreased shar	ply.		
	a) realised		b) achieved	
	c) denied		d) respired	
7		ry dull and terribly	l regretted w	asting my time on it.
	a) exciting		b) exotic	
	c) boring		d) marvellous	
8			you should watch "Fas	
		b) shapes		d) vogues
9			very thing to	
	a) fantastic	*	c) silly	,
	a) hatefully		e world's greatest expe c) awfully	
	a) Haterday .	- Divately	c) awiully	d) generally

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

all the time		have the right to	لنيه الحق أن
couldn't stop laug	ning لم أستطع الثوقف عن الضحك	make lots of mistakes	يرتكب أخطاء كثيرة
get married	يتزوج	tell a story	يتكى قصة
hostile to	عدائي/معادر لـ	terrible at	فظيع في
look like	يشبه	think about	يفكر في
opinion about	رأی عن	travel to	يمساغر إلى

Derivatives

V	erb		Noun		Adjec	tive
animate	يصور برسوم	animation		رسوم متدركة	animated متحرکة	معزوض برسوم
annoy	يزعج	annoyance		إزعاج	annoying* annoyed	مزعج منزعج
burn	يحرق	burn		حرق	burning	محترق
prefer	يفضل	preference		تفضيل	preferred	مفضل
realise	يدرك	realisation		إدراك	realistic	حقيقى/واقعي

⁻ The journalist annoyed the speaker with too many questions.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word Meaning	المرابط Synonym	مضاد Antonym	الم
annoying (adj) مزعج	disturbing/irritating	agreeable/pleasant	مقضل/سار
cheerful (adj) مرح امبتهج	joyful/merry	depressed/gloomy	مكتئب
harness (v) سخر/یستخدم	exploit/use/utilise	consume neglect	يستهلك يعمل
hilarious (adj) ىرح/مضحك جدا	humorous/funny	serious/tragic	جاد/درامی
mistake (n) فطأ	error/misunderstanding	correction/accuracy	تصحيح/دقة

⁻ Salim's silly jokes caused great annoyance to his colleagues.

⁻ That noise is very annoying. I can't go on with my studies.

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	We must harne the opposite of	ss the skill and crea	tivity of our workford	ce. The verb "harness";
	a) exploit	b) nealect	c) defy	d) trust
2	People	. a right to know the	truth about the eco	nomic situation in their
	a) have	b) do	c) gave	d) missed
	We realised a sr "realise" is		e of the house. The ac	djective of the verb
	a) realises	b) realisation	c) realistic	d) reality
	She was a cheer "cheerful" is	_		ym of the adjective
	a) developed		c) depressed	, ,
	I think it is accep first year.	otable for a nursery s	student tolo	ts of mistakes in his
i	a) correct	b) make	c) took	d) explored
6 1	t is better to ad	mit your mistake an	d apologise. The noun	"mistake" is
t	the antonym of	000000000000000000000000000000000000000		
	a) error		b) misunderstand	ing
	c) credit		d) correction	

Reading Text (1)

I saw a great film last night. It was called 'The Boy who Harnessed' the Wind'. It was about a boy in Malawi who built a windmill' and helped his village get water. I thought it had a really powerful message about positive thinking and never giving up.



طاحونة هوائية (2) مصور برسوم متحركة (3)

I also saw 'Toy Story 4', which was great fun. It's a brilliant animated⁽³⁾ film, and personally, I think that these kinds of films always make people feel good. They're not too long and the stories always have a happy ending.

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

- 1) If you like musicals, then you'll love the film "We met in Greece".

 It's about a man who travels to a Greek island and meets the daughter of a hotel owner.
- 2) At first, the hotel owner is very hostile to the man, but when he realises (2) he's both kind and talented, he lets his daughter marry him. Then it also becomes a romantic story!
- 3) The music is brilliant and the scenery on the island is beautiful.
 I would definitely recommend this film.
- 1) Some comedies are hilarious *, but I didn't think that "visit to a farm" was funny at all. It's about a young man from the city who goes to help on his uncle's farm one summer.
- 2) The young man is terrible at farming, and makes lots of mistakes all the time. I'm not sure why this was supposed to be funny. Personally, I thought the man was annoying⁽⁵⁾!
- 3) The farmer is a kind man and some of the acting was quite good, but most of the film was too stupid to enjoy. I would not recommend this film.

Listening Text

- Ramy: What kinds of film do you like watching, Dareen? Romantic ones, like Mum?
- pareen: Not really, most of them are a bit silly . I love comedies, especially the old ones, they make me laugh. I always feel happy afterwards. What about you, Tamer?
- **Tamer**: My favourite films are action films. They're really exciting and I love all the car charges and gun fights!
- Dareen: Really? I think most of them are really boring and they don't usually have a good story either.
- Tamer: True, but I don't mind that. It's all about the action for me. You like action films too don't you, Ramy?
- Ramy: Some, but I agree with Dareen that they're generally not very interesting. I don't mind some science fiction films, but I enjoy horror films best.
- Dareen: Aren't you scared?
- Ramy : Yes, but that's what I like about them.

يعرك ،

مناظر طبيعية

مرح/مضحك :

مزعج .

Video Script

After watching a great film, most people don't think about the work that went into making it.

It can take anywhere between a year and five years to create a Hollywood-style¹¹ film, and it is a lot of hard work. Every film starts with a story and the writers produce a script(2) with the words (4) يمانع تصوير the actors need to say. Once the story has been approved (3), the producers start working. They find the money to pay for the film, find the director and choose the actors.

Once the director and the actors have been hired and locations نسجيل موتى (8) found, the filming begins. This can take from a few weeks to several months to complete. It can take this long because some

actors may not be available on certain⁽⁵⁾ days, the locations may have to change or bad weather may mean filming can't happen.

When the filming has finished, the editors get to work, taking all the film that has been made and putting it into the correct order. Surprisingly, films are rarely filmed in the correct order, the last scene might be filmed first and the middle of the film created last. Editors also add the special effects⁽⁷⁾ to the film.

Finally, once the film has been made, the music is added. This is very important as a great soundtrack(8) can make the difference between a film being a success or a disaster.



on Vocabulary Notes

Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning

. . .

نايوانسفة دوار (2)

يصور فيلمنا (٥)

مؤثرات خاصة (7)

realise

١- يدرك (يعرف أو يفهم شيئًا) ٢- يحقق (شيئًا كان يتمناه) Do you realise you're an hour late?

- She never realised her ambition of winning an Olympic gold medal.

recognise

١- يتعرف على (يعرف شخصًا أو شيئًا لرؤيته أو سماعه أو المرور به من قبل) ٢- يقبل وبعرف أحمية شيء - I didn't recognise you in your uniform.

-The new doctor tried to get his work recognised by the medical profession.

prefer

prefer + (v-ing/noun) to + (v-ing/noun) (would) prefer + to + inf. rather than + inf.

بفضل عن يفضّل أن عن أن

- He prefers watching tennis to playing it.

- I'd prefer to stay at home rather than go out.

- I prefer English to physics.

most

- Love is what the children need most.

The Pyramids at Giza are the most interesting monuments for many tourists.

تعبر عن التنصيل بمعنى (اكثر/الأكثر) و قد يتبعما صفة.

Most people think of robots as machines that look like people.

Most business meetings are held at the company's headquarters.

تأتى بمعنى معظم للتعبير عن الأغلبية بشكل عام ويتبعها اسم جمع.

Most of the people who attended the party brought me presents.

- My cousin spent most of his life abroad.

ثاني بمعنى معظم للتعبير عن الأغلبية من عبد أو شيء محدد ويتبعها حرف الجر (٥f) مع اسم مفرد أو جمع.

equipment

معدات (أجهزة أو آلات تستخدم لغرض ما)

We are raising money for equipment for our playgroup.

طاقم أدوات (مجموعة من الأدوات تستخدم لغرض ما مثل الخياطة)

You can buy a special kit for sewing clothes here.

apparatus

حماز (آلة او أداة تسـتخدم لغرض فني مثل الطب والعلم) This experiment can be performed using the apparatus shown in the diagram.

mistake

خطأ (شئ خاطئ في حسابات أو كتابة)

The article was full of spelling mistakes.

flaw

عنب (خطــاً في نظام أو وجهــة نظر تجعله غير مفيد أو غير فعال)

Your argument has a fundamental flaw.

fault

خطاً خلـل (مشكلة فـي آلــة أو تصميم لو نظام يسبب ضررا)

The fire was caused by an electrical fault.

defect

عبد/خلل (مشكلة في منتج أو آلة ناتج عن خطأ في التصنيع أو التصميم) Machines are usually tested for defects before they

are sold.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 When you buy an expensive piece of	f, you need to insure it.
a) kit	b) device
c) equipment	d) apparatus
2 When he watched the TV show, he	he'd seen it before.
a) realised	b) recognised
c) organised	d) forgot
3 Grandfather always prefers	by train saying that it is the safest way
a) travel	b) to travelling
c) travelling	d) travelled
4 the boys I know prefer footb	all to any other game.
a) Most	b) Most of
c) Mostly	d) The most
5 The rocket launch was delayed becau	se of a technical which was
harmful.	
a) mistake	b) flow
c) defect	d) fault







Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

By law, patients	have a to	keep their medical reco	ords confidential.
a) right	b) duty	c) race	d) destiny
Z Today, modern	versions of	, called wind turbines,	are used to create
electricity. a) waterfalls	b) windmills	c) panels	d) stations
- Most companie	s are tech	nology to provide bette	er service to their
customers.		3,	
a) containing	b) wasting	c) consuming	d) harnessing
4 This TV show is	especially	among women as mos	t of the guests are top
chefs.			
a) hateful	b) detesting	c) popular	d) affecting
5 Egypt and Emir	ates have become o	close tradingii	n the last few years.
a) servants	b) partners	c) heroes	d) champions
6 Some people m	nake the fatal	of giving their bank	details to criminals.
a) mistake	b) signal	c) crime	d) mark
	change of	, we decided to take a f	erry out to one of the
islands.			
		c) scenery	
	Beast" was the first	film ever non	ninated for a 'Best
Picture Oscar'.			
		c) apparent	
-		sert road, I suddenly	
		c) replied	· ·
10 All world countr			resorting to
a) tournament	b) race	c) war	d) conference
	is supplying new	play for the p	layground at the sport
centre.			
		c) design	
12. The restaurant's	previous	was unable to make a	profit, so he sold it.
a) consumer	b) owner	c) robber	d) prisoner

1	3 "Robinson Cru	soe" is a novel abo	out a sailor who was sh	nipwrecked متنيفه عملان
	a desert	near South An	nerica.	
	a) beach	b) road	c) island	d) village
14	4 On the horizon	n, a huge cloud of	smoke from	oil tanks stretched acros
	the sky.			102
	a) wealthy	b) luxurious	c) decorated	d) burning
1	5 That noise is ve	ery annoying. The	synonym of the adjectiv	e"annoying" is
	a) helpful		c) romantic	The state of the s
16	Car buyers hav	e recently shown	a growing for :	smaller vehicles.
	a) prefer	b) preferred	c) preference	d) preferable
17	As the athlete	always keeps prac	tising, the coach says th	_
	the tir			3
	a) all	b) in	c) for	d) both
18	Her most	habit was eatir	ng with her mouth oper	n.
			c) annoying	
19	Many of the en	nployees were hos	tile the idea of	closing the factory.
	a) in	b) to	c) at	1). (
20	She greeted us	with a cheerful sm	nile. The adjective "chee	erful" is the opposite of
	the adjective "	#		
	a) merry	b) terrible	c) funny	d) gloomy
21	Leaving school	so young was the	biggest mistake of my l	life. The noun "mistake"
	is similar in mea	ning to the noun	## ### ###############################	
	a) crime	b) state	c) error	d) correction
22	My little sister th	ninks that "Tom and	d Jerry" cartoons are the	e most hilarious.
	The antonym of	the word "hilariou	s"is	
	a) funny	b) irritable	c) hopeful	d) serious
23	Everyone should	d have the right	freedom of expre	ession.
	a) to	b) in	c) out	d) up
24	A is a bi	uilding or structure	with parts that turn ar	ound in the wind,
:	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		3 3	(Longman)
		b) lighthouse		d) factory
25		iusic, please; it's ver		(Longman
	a) pleasant	b) relieving	c) annoying	d) annoyed



Tag questions

لفة المحادثات لها طبيعة خاصة تعتمد على الموقف وطبيعة السؤال ومنهاء

١ ﴾ إنا كانت الجعلة التي نريد تأكيدها مثبتة فالإجابة بـ Yes هي الموافقة و No للرفض مثل:

You like chemistry, don't you?

Yes, Ido. Zabiga

- No. I don't. رفض

إذا كانت الجملة التي نريد تأكيدها منفية فالإجابة بـ No هي الموافقة و Yes للرفض مثل:

You don't like chemistry, do you?

No, I don't. It's very difficult. موافقة

رفض . I like it and I find it very easy. رفض

٣) يمكن أن يكون السؤال أخر الجملة الخبرية موجمًا إلى المخاطب وليس عائدًا على الجملة الأولى مثل:

A) Hove comedy films, don't you?

g) Yes, I do. I like watching comedy films with my family. We can all laugh together. السؤال هنا يعود على المخاطب وليس على المتكلم، وهذا لا يصلح إلا في المحادثات.

٤) نبرة الصوت intonation ترتفع وتنخفض في السؤال حسب طبيعة السؤال وهذا لا يظهر بالطبع في الكتابة ولكن يظهر في الحديث الشقعى:

- عندما يكون المتكلم متأكدًا من صحة الجملة تنخفض نبرة صوته وتتبعها حِركة جسد توضح ذلك.

He's your brother, isn't he?

- عندما يسأل المتكلم عن شيء يريد التأكد منه ترتفع نبرة صوته وتتبعها حركة جسد توضح ذلك.

You eat meat, don't you?

ه) عندما تكون has و have و الملكية يكون النفي بـ hasn't/haven't وعندما تكون بمعنى آخر نستخدم v. to do.

He has a new car, hasn't he?

He has lunch at 3 pm every day, doesn't he?

٦) في الاستنتاج الفعل العائد على must have + P.P. هو mustn't.

Hesham must have won the gold medal, mustn't he?

Adjectives and adverbs

بالإضافة إلى وصف الفعل والصفة فإن الحال يصف أيضًا الحال مثله والحملة،

They started the race slowly.	الحال يصف الفعل
He is an incredibly amazing cook.	الحال يصف الصفة
He cooks really amazingly. (very well)	الحال يصف الحال
Interestingly, he won the first medal.	الحال يصف الجملة

. (very). الظروف التالية قبل الصفات الشديدة بمعنى جدًّا اما في الصفات العادية فنستخدم (very). (terribly – absolutely – awfully – really – completely – totally – awfully – pretty _ entirely – incredibly)

Mr Ahmed is a very good teacher.

Mr Ahmed is an absolutely amazing teacher.

وبن أمثلة الصفات العادية والشديدة ما يلى،

Ordinary	Extreme	Ordinary	Extreme
big	enormous/huge	tired	exhausted عندك
bad	awful/terrible فظيع	frightened	terrified &
angry	furious حانق	happy	delighted معتبط
مندهش surprised	amazed منعول	cold	freezing अवस्थ
clean	spotless انظیف جدًا	good	wonderful, excellent ممتاز
مزىدم crowded	مُكْتُظُ packed	hot	boiling مُغْتَاظَا المَانِقَ
hungry	يموت جوعًا starving	old	ancient قىتە
interesting	fascinating خُلُاب	small	tiny قَبِيق
clever	brilliant بارع	pretty جَذُاب	gorgeous راثع



- هناك بعض الظروف التي تُستخدم مع الصفات والظروف الأخرى:

00 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0	almost ثغريبا	partly إلى حد ما/جُرْ لِينًا	a lot/much جدًا	a little بل	قلب
	enough بدرجة كانية	اكثر من اللازم/جدًا too ا	just مُقَطُّارُتُقْرِيبًا/بِصُغُوبَة	a bit يىل	قل

- تستخدم بعض الظروف قبل الفعل.

1 The earthquake completely destroyed the area.

Language Check point 4

ose the correct answer fro	m a, b, c or d:
There won't be any trouble	e,?
a) do there	b) will not there
:II there	d) wasn't there
They have to ask someboo	dy else to help them,?
a) do they	b) haven't they
have they	d) don't they
The meeting was very	organised. Most members were annoyed.
a) badly	b) careful
carefully	d) bad
4) That was a film -	what a waste of money!
a) terrified	b) terrible
c) terribly	d) terrific
They were deligh	ited with the service in this hotel.
a) very	b) a bit
c) absolutely	d) extreme

Extra Points

تسم الأحوال التي تصف الفعل إلى:

الطريقة (manner) تجيب عن السؤال بـ How.

، They are eagerly بلصفة/بشوق waiting for the e-mail.

مكان (place) تجيب عن السؤال بـ Where.

، There is a cinema nearby بالقُرْب

يّمن (time) تجيب عن السؤال بـ When.

I'll meet you tomorrow.

ڪرار (frequency) تجيب عن السؤال يہ How often

She is always ready to help. He often complains about the salary.

ملحوظة

يأتي اثنان أو أكثر من الأحوال يكون الترتيب كالآتي:

(manner + place + time).

Ali is studying quietly in his room now.

في الجملة فعل من أفعال الحركة مثل go/come/leave يكون الترتيب كالأتي:

(place + manner + time).

He came to work by bus this morning.



Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	Help your brothe	er with his homewo	ork,?	
	a) isn't he	b) don't you	c) shan't you	d) will you
2	You have read al	Charles Dickens'n	ovels,?	
	a) didn't you	b) haven't you	c) have you	d) don't you
3	He never though	nt what might come	e out of it,?	
	a) hasn't he	b) didn't he	c) did he	d) won't he
4	Let's have a more	ning walk,	.we?	
	a) shall	b) haven't	c) don't	d) should
5		amous doctor,		
			c) wouldn't	
6	They should have	e been informed lo	ng before his arrival,	they?
	a) mustn't	b) didn't	c) needn't	d) shouldn't
7	Hassan has been	painting the walls	since morning,	he?
	a) has	b) doesn't	c) hasn't	d) does
8	The slide show w	as fantastic,	it?	
	a) wasn't	*	c) didn't	d) was
9	She rarely cooks	meat, she?		
	a) has	b) doesn't	c) does	d) hasn't
10	, could sh	ne?		
	a) The band could	ln't sing well	b) Nour couldn't sir	
	c) Shady couldn't:	sing well	d) Shady could sing	g well
11	don't the	ey?		
	,	to their neighbours		
		n talk to their neighl		
			d) We often talk to	their neighbours
			ou are just on time.	
3~			c) No, you aren't	
13			s is grammatically corr	
	· ·		b) He works hardly.	
16.		· ·	d) The bird flew hig	hly in the sky.
14		the film was		
100			c) extreme	•
15	I'm going to	next term, becau	use the exams are gett	ing closer.
	a) studying hard	b) study hardly	c) hardly study	d) study hard

which one of t	he following sentences is	grammatically incorre	ect?
- Nasser Has a	good chance to will the qu	33 4 14.	
15) Yasser has a	well chance to win the ga	me	
a Yasser has a	better chance to win the g	jame than others	
an Vasser has th	ne best chance to win the	garne	
The young wor	man spoke to us	4	
a) mother	b) motherly	 c) in a motherly way 	d) motherhood
AR There was a	end to the film, bu	it I won't tell you wha	t happened!
-) curprise	b) surprised	c) surprisingly	d) surprising
Mona did	in her exam. She was	s ill that day.	
a) terrible	b) terribly	c) good	d) well
on We could walk	around the airc	raft during the flight	
a) free	b) freedom	c) freeing	d) freely
21 The teacher re	ad my essay and checked	d everything I had w	ritten very
a) carefully	b) careful	c) care	d) carefulness
22 In 2015, Messi	was famous and h	ad scored most of the	ne goals for his team.
a) a bit	b) incredibly	c) rather	d) a little
23 Which one of t	he following sentences i	s grammatically inco	orrect?
a) I speak Engli	sh fluently now.	b) I speak fluent Er	iglish now
c) I speak fluen	tly English now.		
d) I speak Engli	sh more fluently now tha	in last year.	
24 Which sentence	e is correctly structured	?	
a) The food loo	ked perfectly good to me	e. b) The food looke	d perfectly well to me.
c) The food lool	ked perfect well to me.	d) The food looke	d perfect good to me.
25 Hany doesn't ki	now how to cook, does	he?	
a) Yes, he doesn	't. He hates cooking.	b) No, he doesn't. I	t isn't one of his interests.
c) No, he does. I	He likes cooking.	d) Yes, he doesn't	, but he is trying to learn.
26 Everyone is read	dy for the exam,	?	(Long-icr
a) aren't they	b) isn't he	c) are they	d) isn't she
27/ I don't think Tar	ner is angry,?		(L · · · ·
a) don't l	b) isn't he	c) do 1	d) is he
28 Gaber is a very	active worker; he	all the time.	(Longma)
a) works hard	b) hardly works	c) works hardly	d) a hard worker
9 After he had fin	ished his work, she co	ntacted him,	? (Longm.)-
a) hadn't he	b) didn't she	c) hadn't she	d) didn't he
Which of the fol	lowing is structurally	incorrect?	(Longmo
a) Hatim is a fast	runner.	b) This soup sm	nells badly.
c) You should sp	eak politely with othe	rs. d) What a wond	derful book!
- -	,		

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Test yourself (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

7	Vocabulary			
1	This make-up_	can be o	ordered more cheaply on	line.
	a) equipment	b) kit	c) apparatus used the wind to drive	d) press
2	For centuries, to	raditional	used the wind to drive	e machinery for
	grinding wheat	t into flour.		
	a) waterfalls	b) routes	c) windmills	d) recipes
3	You're	to be annoyed -	you've been treated by	the sales assistants ver
	badly.			
	a) right	b) moral	c) wrong	d) rightly
4	Please, stop ma	king that noise-	—it's getting annoying. T	he antonym of the
	adjective "anno	ying" is	c) disturbing	
	a) irritating	b) terrible	c) disturbing	d) pleasant
5	The teacher fou	and two spelling	in the student's	s essay, so he wasn't
	given top mark			
	a) mistakes	b) deeds	c) signs	d) marks
6	It's a good idea	that they didn't	go camping last weeker	nd - the weather was

	a) fabulous	b) awful	c) exciting	d) soothing
7	My grandfather	fought in the 6th	of October that	at is one of the greates
	events in our his	story.		
	a) tournament	b) race	c) war	d) conterence
8	The manager bl	amed me	for causing the proble	em with the customer
	a) faintly	b) personally	c) gradually	d) funnily
9	Tourists come to	Hurghada to er	njoy water sports and th	e beautiful
	a) site	b) treasury	c) audience	d) scenery
10	My friends thou	ght that the film	by Henidi was so	that they couldn't
	stop laughing.			
Bis.			c) dangerous	
11			nir who has just returned	I home from his long
	stay in Europe.			
per la	a) realise	b) achieve	c) recognise	d) respire
12	Solar panels enal	ble us to	. the power of the sun to	generate electricity.
Ro.	a) discover	b) harness	c) explore	d) expire
13	The Lion King was	the first	film to make profits of	more than one
	hundred million			
	a) bad	b) historical	c) apparent	d) animated

a) partners	b) enemies	c) judges	di appagants
Tea and coffee	are considered the me	ost drinks a	If over the world.
a) naterui	b) detesting	c) popular	d) affecting
Language			
Don't talk to Na	abil during the lesson,	you?	
a) don't	DIGO	CIWOOT	ರೆ) ಉ
Nothing can be	done at this moment	t,?	
a) can if	D) can they	CLCADITI	d) can't they
You have never	seen that film before	, you?	
-140	Di Dava	CIDAMONT	d) don't
Hala thinks that	t the film will be intere	esting,?	
- LIMONT SHE	D) COEST LIE	C) WOD T IT	d) does n
A: The manner	of addressing people i	in Britain is quite dif	ferent from ours,
B: Yes, it is. You'	re right.		
-Vien't it	b) isn't there	c) it is	d) is it
The children ha	ven't finished yet,	they?	
a) haven't	D) have	C) (IO	d) don't
we must be at	school at 8 o'clock,	we?	
a) aren't	b) don't	c) needn't	d) mustn:
aren't	they?		
a) Omar and I ar	e from Maadi	b) Omar and Hi	azem aren't from Ass
c) Everyone in y	our class is working ha	ard d) Your parents	are never lazy
His arm was so	injured that	he couldn't play ar	lymore.
a) bad			d) hardly
5 I'm feeling	thirsty.	•	
a) really	b) fantastically	c) extreme	d) terrible
6 The children are	very	t are they doing?	
	b) quiet		d) quieter
7 When I play foot	tball indoors, I feel	exhausted.	
a) very	b) a little	c) a bit	d) absolutely
8 It's hot	in the desert in Aug		
a) rather	b) quite		d) slightly
my	when he wrote the re		
	lly when he wrote th		
	rote the report to his		
	hen he wrote the rep		
	ote the report to his i		n = alamet
	oined the basketbal		
a) Badly	b) Surprisingly	c) Terribly	d) Awfully



Lessons 5 & 6



ALCOHOLOGICALIO WEDDS BOTOLEGO



Film review

 Write about a film. It can be a film you liked very much or didn't like at all. Introduce the film.

Say if you would or would not recommend the film and why. Say what happens in the film.

Try to include different adjectives and adverbs.

- 1) If you like action film, then you'll love the film Cazablanca. It's about a gang of three companions who worked in illegal acts and their struggle for a huge sum of diamond which was stolen. The events of the film are divided between Egypt and Morocco. The main actors Amir Karara, Amr Abdel Gileel and Eiad Nassar are all marvellous. Although the film is full of illegal acts, the atmosphere and action scenes are amazing. I would recommend this film for people who like excitement and adventure.
- 2) Some comedies are hilarious, but I didn't think that "El Harb El Alamia El Talta" "The Third World War" was funny at all! It's about a young man who lives near a wax museum where statues come alive at night. It is an imitation of an American film. The events are all farfetched, the script is not nice and acting is exaggerating. I really regret wasting my time on this film and I wouldn't recommend it to anyone.





Skills Exercises

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Dana Miller is a bus driver. She drives a bus in the city of Philadelphia. She starts work at 10:00 at night and gets off at 6:00 in the morning. In the world of bus driving, this is sometimes called third shift. Dana has been driving a bus for 15 years. She started when she was 23 years old. She loves her job most of the time. She gets to see the beautiful city from her seat. She gets to meet all kinds of people. There is the guitar player. He lugs his heavy guitar on the bus every Friday night. He plays at a nightspot ' downtown. People call him Get Low. That is because he likes to play the guitar on his knees. If the bus is not too crowded, Get Low plays in the back of the bus. The bus is seldom crowded at night. He likes to warm up on the bus before shows. There is the woman who works at the pretzel factory. Each day the "Pretzel Lady" brings Dana a bag of fresh, soft pretzels. They fill the hus with a wonderful smell! Sometimes Dana's job is hard. It is hard when Dana sees people down on their luck. One time, a young woman left her sleeping baby on the bus. There was a note on the baby's blanket asking for help. Dana had to call the police. Another time, a teenaged boy stole money from Dana on the bus. He had a fake gun. Dana thought it was real. She was very scared. Occasiona driving the bus can be scary. But most of the time, driving the bus is great.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 How old is Dana?

b) 23. a) 15.

c) 38.

d) 39.

2) How long is Dana's shift?

a) 6 hours.

b) 8 hours.

c) 10 hours.

d) 12 hours

3 Who gives Dana pretzels?

a) The guitar player. c) The young mom.

b) The teenager.

d) The woman who works at the factory

4. The main reason Get Low rides the bus is because.

a) he needs to get to a show

b) he likes to see the city

c) he enjoys talking to Dana

d) he likes to play the guitar there

a) in the morning

b) during rush hours

c) around Philadelphia

d) to help people at night

a) plays at night

b) likes to play on his knees

c) plays when the bus is crowded

d) plays in the back of the bus



(5) من وقت إلى أخر

ا ا ورسة

7 Dana loves her job because she

a) meets all kinds of people c) can call the police

b) gets pretzels d) has got a bus

8 The antonym of the word "scared" is ". a) frightened

b) terrified c) brave

d) anxious

(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- 1 Many young men and women are fond of watching horror and action films However, these types of films can affect them psychologically and socially
 - كثيرهن الشجاب رجالا ونساء مغرمون بمشاهدة أفلام الرعب وأفلام الحركة ومع ذلك فإن هذه الأنواع من الأفلام يؤثر عليهم
 - كثير من الرجال والنساء غير مغرمين برؤية أفلام الرعب وأفلام الحركة ولكن هذه الأنواع من الأفلام لاتؤثر عليهم نفسيا واجتماعيا.
 - يغرم كثير من الرجال والنساء الصغار بمشاهدة أفلام الرعب وأفلام الكوميديا ولذلك فإن هذه الأنواع من الأفلام يؤثر عليهم
 - ين يغرم كثير من الرجال والنساء الصغار بالمشاركة في أفلام المفامرات وأفلام الحركة ومع ذلك فإن هذه الأنواع من الأفلام غير
- 2 Egypt can only reach an outstanding position among countries with hard work and production. Everyone should have sincere intentions and a strong will. The more effort we exert, the more advanced Egypt will be.
 - تستطيع مصرأن تصل إلي مكانة معيزة بين القارات بالعمل الجيد والإنتاج ويجب أن يكون لكل شخص النبة الصادقة والإرادة القوية وكلما بذائنا مجهودًا أكثر تقدمت مصر.
 - لم يمكن لمصر أن تصل إلى مكانة مهمة بين الدول عن طريق العمل الصعب والإنتاج وينبغى أن يكون لكل فرد الطموح الصادق والإرادة القوية فكنما بذلنا مجهودًا أقل تقدمت مص
 - المكان مصر أن تصل المكانة مميزة بين الدول بالعمل الجاد والإنتاج ويجب أن يكون لكل فرد النية الصادقة والإرادة القوية وكلما
 - من الممكن أن نصل مصر لمكانة مختلفة بين الدول بالعمل الصعب والمنتجات ويجب أن يكون لكل فرد النبة الصادقة والإرادة القوية وكلما بدائنا مجهودًا أكثركانت مصر متقدمة.
- 3 To solve the problem of unemployment, young people should take training that will allow them to get several kinds of jobs and mainly studies connected with technology.
 - ج) لكي نحل مشكلة البطالة يجب أن يقوم الشباب بتدريب يسمح لهم بالحصول على أنواع عديدة من الوظائف بالإضافة إلى دراسات متصنة بالتكنولوحيا
 - b) لأننا لا نجد حاًد لمشكلة البطالة يجب أن يقوم الشباب بتمارين تسمح لهم بالحصول على أنواع متعددة من المهام بالإضافة إلى دراسات متصلة بالتكنولوجيا.
 - c الإيجاد حل لمشكلة البطالة يجب أن يقوم الشباب باكتساب مهارات تسمح لهم بالحصول على أنواع متعددة من الوظائف بالإضافة إلى دراسات لها علاقة بالتكنولوجيا.
 - d لكي نحل مشكلة البطالة يجب أن يقوم الشباب بثمارين تسمح لهم بإيحاد أنواع عديدة من المهام بالإضافة إلى دراسات ليس
- 4 Many people fear change, so they oppose those who have different ideas. We should accept others' opinions and be tolerant towards them. We also may expect that our own opinions may not be absolutely right.
 - a) لا يخاف الكثيرون من التغيير لذلك لا يمانعون الذين لديهم أفكار مختلفة وعلينا أن نقبل أراء الأخرين وتكون مسامحين معهم كما قد نتوقع أن أراءنا يمكن ألا تكون صحيحة بالتأكيد،
 - الخوف من التغيير لا يخشاه الكثيرون لذلك بوافقون الذين لديهم أفكار مختلفة وعلينا أن نقبل وجهات نظرا الأخرين ونكون غير متسامحين معهم لأننا قد نتوقع أن أراءنا يمكن ألا تكون صحيحة بالتأكيد.

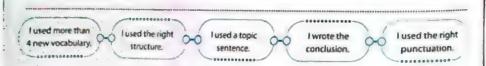
- ع) يحشين الكثيرون التعيير لدلتك يعارضون الدين لديهم أفكار منتناهة وعلهما أن مقبل أراء الأخرين ونكون متسمامحين معهم صعما قد غوقع أن أراءنا يمكن ألا تكون صحيحة بالتأكيد
- ل) يخشس معظم الساس التغيير لدائما بمارسون الدين لديهم القراحيات معيزة وعلينا أن نقبل أراه الأخرين ونكون متسامحين معهم كما قد شمأ أن أراده يمكن ألا تكون صحيحة بالتأكيد
- 6 Nowadays, young people, don't know how to spend their leisure time profitably. They often waste their time keeping company with bad people who spoil their character.
 - ور الوقت العاصر لا يعرف الشباب كيف يقضون وقت الفراغ بطريقة مفيدة فهم أحيانًا يضبعون أوقاتهم بعمارسة الأنشيدة
 - في اتوقت اتحالي بعرف الشجاب كينما يقضون وقت الفراغ بطريقة مفيدة فهم غالبًا يقضون أوقاتهم بمصادقة الناس السيئين.
 - ع) ورالوقت الحاضر يعرف الشبباب كيفية قضاء وقت الفراغ بطريقة متمسرة فهم أحيانًا لا يهدرون أوقاتهم بمصادقة الناس
 - إلى الوقت الحالى الا يعرف الشباب كيف يقضون وقت الفراغ بطريقة مفيدة فهم غالبًا يهدرون أوقاتهم بمصادقة الأشخاص

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- 6 تمثل الدراما أهم وسائل قضاء وقت الفراغ لدى معظم الناس لذا يستخدمها المنتجون للوصول بمنتجاتهم إلى المستعلكين رغم التكلفة الكبيرة لهذه الإعلانات
- a) Drama is not one of the most main ways of spending free time for some people Therefore, sellers use it to get their products to consumers despite the high increase of these advertisements.
- Drama is one of the most important means of spending free time for most people Therefore, producers use it to get their products to consumers despite thein an cost of these commercials.
- c) Drama is one of the most important methods of enjoying spare time for most people. Hence, producers use it to get their production to customs despite the high cost of these announcements.
- d) Drama is not one of the most main means of spending spare time for most people. Therefore producers use it to get their produce to sellers in spite of the high rise of these commercials
 - 7 يعتقد الخبراء أن اســـتخدام الشباب المفرط للتليفون المحمول يؤثر على صحتهم وممارستهم للهوايات المفيدة، كما يؤدي إلى تدهور علاقاتهم الاجتماعية بعائلتهم وأصدقائهم.
- a) Experts believe that young people's overuse of mobile phones affects their health and practising useful hobbies. It may also lead to the deterioration of the social relations with their family and triends.
- b) Scientists believe that young people's overdose of mobile phones ruins their health and practising useful habits. It can also lead to the decrease of the social connections with their family and friends.
- c) Experts guess that young people's overuse of mobile phones influences their health and making useful hobbies. It may also lead to the deterioration of the social relations with their family and friends.
- d) Scientists say that young people's overdose of mobile phones enhances their health and doing useful habits. It can also lead to the decrease of the social communications with their family and friends.

المشيدة الكثير من المؤتمرات الدولية لمعاولة الوصول إلى حل لمشكلة التغير المناخي، لكنما مازالت مشكلة المناخي، لكنما مازالت مشكلة المناخي، الكثير من مجالات حياتنا.

- a) Many international conferences were held to reach a solution for climate change However, it is still a serious problem which affects many fields in our life.
- b) Many international meetings were held to reach a solution for global warming. However, it is still a serious problem which affects some fields in our life.
- c) Many national conferences were holding to give a solution for global warming. Though, it is still a main problem which affects many aspects of life.
- d) Many national meetings were holding to find a solution for climate change. Although, it isn't still a serious problem which affects many aspects of life.
 - و لقد أصبحت التكنولوجيـــا الحديثة جزءًا هاما من حياتنا اليومية، لا يمكننا الاســـتغناء عنها لدرجة أننا نتعجب كيف كان الناس يعيشون في الماضي بدون الأجهزة الحديثة التي نستخدمها يوميًّا.
- a) Modern technology has become an important part of our everyday life which is so necessity that we are admired how people lived in the past without these technological tools that we use every day.
- b) Modern technology is an important part of our everyday life which is so necessary that admire how people now lived with these technological devices that we use every day
- c) Modern technology isn't an important part of our everyday life which is so necessity that we are puzzled how people now lived without these technological tools that we use every day
- d) Modern technology has become an important part of our everyday life which is so necessary that we are puzzled how people lived in the past without these technological devices that we use every day.
 - 10 تُعتبر الكوارث الطبيعية كالزلازل والبراكين فرصة لاختبار وُحدة وتماسك أي أمة، فكلما كان الأفراد متعاونين قلت الخسائر التي يمكن لهذه الكوارث أن تخلفها.
- a) Natural disasters such as earthquakes and volcanoes are a chance to test the unity and integrity of any nation. The more cooperative people are, the less the losses that these disasters can cause.
- b) Interneuron disasters such as earthquakes and volcanoes are a choice to test the unity and integrity of any people. The more people are cooperative, the less the losses that these disasters can cause.
- c) Unnatural disasters such as earthquakes and volcanoes are an option to check the unity and integrity of any nation. The most cooperative people are, the least the losses that these disasters can cause.
- d) Environmental disasters such as earthquakes and volcanoes have a chance to examine the unity and integrity of any country. The more people have been cooperative, the less the losses that these disasters can be caused.
- Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:
 The kind of stories or films you enjoy in your free time." Your name is Menna and your email address is: menna 10@example.com. Your friend is Mariam and her email address is: mariam@example.com.





Al-Adway Test

- 30

choose the co	rrect answers from a,	b, c or d:	
1 My cousin	oined the of a l	large fishing boat as he	had always dreame
of working	in the sea.		
a) crew	b) staff	c) cast	d) group
2 The children	n read the novel in its si	implified	
a) video	b) version	c) episode	d) animation
3 At the unive	ersity gate, you must pro	esent proof of y	our admittance.
a) correspon	dence	b) forged	
c) documen		d) competitive	
4 The Nile pas	ses through a rich varie	ety of in some A	frican countries.
a) site	b) treasury	c) audience	d) scenery
5 The manage	er was openly hostile	any kind of critici	sm of his project.
a) to	b) for	c) about	d) in
6 This game is	recommended for child	dren aged 12 and abov	e. The antonym of
the word "red	commend" is		
a) propose	b) depress	c) create	d) oppose
7) Don't eat the	whole chicken,	?	
a) will I	b) won't you	c) will you	d) won't!
8 They had a pa	arty last night,	?	
a) didn't they		b) weren't they	
c) did they		d) hadn't they	
9) I'm shorter th	an her,?		
a) am l	b) aren't l	c) am not f	d) don't!
10 Which senten	ce of the following is g	grammatically incorrec	t?
a) I'm really he	lpful, aren't I?		
b) Stay here, w	on't you?		
c) He rarely visi	ts you, doesn't he?		
d) Everybody is	coming to the party,	aren't they?	
	n a sportsman run?		
a) quick	b) guicker	c) quickest	d) quickly

•	12	It's a pretty villa	age, but there's	anything to do l	nere.
		a) hardly	b) harden	c) hard	d) hardship
	13	We all love our	teacher of English	because he treats us	
		a) in a kindly wa		b) kindly	
		c) kind		d) kindness	
	14	Kamal isn't a ra	sh driver. He alway:	drives	
		a) rashly		b) rash	
		c) in a carefully	way	d) carefully	
	15	All heavenly rel	igions call for peac	e and cooperation. Th	e word "heavenly" is
		a/an			
		a) adjective	b) adverb	c) verb	d) noun

▶ Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Generally, rainforests(1) are forests with high rainfall and a large number of different kinds of plants and animals. Human beings depend on rainforests in numerous ways, but it would be wrong to suggest that they should be saved just because they are useful to humans.

Rainforests have been called the womb(3) of life because they are home to 50 – 90 % of the species(4) on earth, although tropical(5) forests cover only 12% of the land area of the Earth. It has been estimated⁽⁶⁾ that, as a result of cutting down rainforest, at least 40 species are disappearing every day.

No one knows just how the rest of the global ecosystems (7) depend on rainforests, but we may find out in the next 30 to 50 years.

Rainforests are a vital^(a) source of medicine and at least 25% of all modern drugs came originally from rainforests. Rainforests offer a veritable bounty of foods. The Earth's climate is affected by rainforests. When trees are cut down and burnt or left to decompose (10), they release carbon dioxide into the air which is the main gas that causes global warming. Cutting down rainforests also changes the amount of rain that falls in an area. When rain falls on forests, the water is slowed down and absorbed(11) by trees and plants. When they are taken away, the water flows quickly over the ground and this causes floods and erosion the water flows quickly over the ground and this causes floods and erosion.

					-
(1) القابات	(4) صنف/فصيلة	(7) أنظمة بيئية	(10) يتحلل	(13) تاکل	12 (
(2) مونور/متعدد	(5) استوائی	(8) حيوى	(11) يمتص		ASIEI Y
(3) رحم	(6) يخمن / يقدر القيمة	(9) منحة/محصول	(12) يتساب		

Choose the	imals are disappearing fro	m Earth because of .	
a) global	warming	b) high rainfall an	d flood
	g down rainforests	d) global ecosyste	erns
17 The speci	ies mentioned in the pass	age are	
a) plants a	and animals	b) medicine and	food
c) plants		d) animals	
18 The unde	erlined word "they" refers t	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
a) floods a	and erosion	b) rain and water	
c) absorbe	ed water	d) trees and plan	ts
19 The word	that gives the opposite to	o the word "veritable"	is
a) real	b) false	c) genuine	d) true
20 As they ar	re a vital source of medici	ne, rainforests	no en
a) are rare	ely found around the world	b) are useful to h	iumans
c) don't of	ffer any kind of food	d) grow everywh	nere
21 When rain	nforests decompose, they	release	
a) carbon	dioxide b) global warr	ning c) oxygen	d) erosion
22 If rainfores	sts disappeared,		
a) we wou	uld suffer from global warn	ning b) life would be	impossible
c) some spe	ecies of animals would disap	opear d) all of the prev	vious answers
23 The best ti	itle for the passage is "	\$ \	
a) The imp	ortance of rainforests to r	man	
b) The effe	ect of rainforests on the ea	orth	
c) The impo	ortance of rainforests to ani	mals	
d) The impo	ortance of rainforests to me	edicine	
	e correct Arabic translati		
	lia namusaantaalisetele	ulaian tha malta and	Alexander be a
- mass med	lia – represented in tele	vision, the radio and	tne press – nave a

vital effect on everyone. They form the public opinion of any nation.

a) وسائل التواصل الإعلامي على رأسها التليفزيون والإذاعة والصحف لها تأثير حيوى على المجتمع فهي تشكل الرأى العام لأي شعب.

(أ) وسائل الإعلام مثل التليفزيون والإذاعة والصحافة ليس لها تأثير حيوى على المجتمع فهي تشكل الرأي العام لأي شعب

) وسائل الإعلام ممثلة في التليفزيون والإذاعة والصحافة لها تأثير حيوى على الجميع فهي تشكل الرأى العام لأى أمة.

cl صفحات التواصل الإعلامي مثل التليفزيون والإذاعة والصحف ليس فقط لها تأثير قوى على الجميع بل تشكل الرأى العام لأي أمة.

25 Choose the correct English translation:

المجالات، ولأصبحث من أدم القيام بدوره على أكمل وجه لتقدمت مصر في كل المجالات، ولأصبحث من أرقى الأمم. فتنمية المجالة تتحقق دون الجهد والصبر. المجالة التحقق دون الجهد والصبر.

- a) When somebody plays their role in a complete way, Egypt will develop in all family and we will be one of the most developing countries. Developing a country can be achieved with hard work and patience.
- b) If everyone played their role properly, Egypt would develop in all fields and would be one of the most developed countries. Developing a country cannot achieved without hard work and patience.
- c) If everyone played their role right, Egypt would develop in all fields and we wouldn't be one of the most developing nations. Development of a country cannot be achieved with hard work and patience.
- d) Unless nobody had played their role in a complete way, Egypt would have developed in all fields and we have been one of the most developing country.

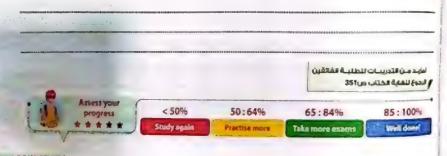
 Development of a country can be achieved without hard work and patience

26 Answer the following questions:

- 1. Albany proved to be a patriotic وطني politician. Do you agree? Give an example
- 2. Do you think that Edmund planned to rule the kingdom before he started his plot مؤامرة against his father? Why?
- 3. Do you agree with Regan's view of Edmund? Why?

> 27 Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words:

To your friend Wafaa telling her about a reading competition on famous writers you are going to take part in and asking her for suggestions. Your name is Sara. Your email address is saranew@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is wafaa2020@gmail.com.





Unit 12

Objectives

teading : An article about a young entrepreneur

writing : A report about an experience

Listening: A talk about SMART goals

Speaking: Discussing goals and how to achieve them

Language: Defining and non-defining relative clauses

life Skills: Self-management; Decision-making; Collaboration





Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

achievable (adj)	قابل للتحقيق	recipe (n)*	poleta diego
entrepreneur (n)	رائد عمل	relevant (adj)	نو ملة
goal (n)	مىف	set (v)	***
honeybee (n)	نحلة عسل	specific (adj)	مند
measurable (adj)	قابل للقياس	Aires haved (adi)	
profit (n) (v) (ed)	ريح/يريح	time-bound (adj)	مقيد زمنيا

I enjoy trying out new food recipes from different countries.

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening Texts

aim (n) (v) (ed)	مىف/يمىف	failure (n)	فشل/حالة فشل
business (n)	عمل تجاري	final (adj)	نمائى
charity (n)	منظمة خيرية/عمل خيرى	give up (v)	يتوقف عن/يستسلم
coach (n)	مدرب	highlight (v) (ed)	يلقى ضوءُا/يميز نصـًا
company (n)	شركة	honey (n)	عسل
conservation (n)	محافظة/حفاظ	importance (n)	أهمية
definitely (adv)	بالثأكيد	locally (adv)	محلياً
donate (v) (d)	يتبرع بـ	long-term (adj)	طويل الأمد
drop (v) (ped)	يسقط/يخرج (من فريق)	manage (v) (d)	يدير/ينجح/يتمكن
educate (v) (d)	يعلم/يدرس	manager (n)	مدير
end date (n)	تاريخ الانتهاء	mention (v) (ed)	يذكر
exerience (n)	خبرة	passionate (adj)	عاطفي/متحمس

physics (n)	مادة الفيزياء	share(v)(d)	يشارك
possession (n)	ملكية	short-term (adj)	قصير الأمد
president (n)	رئیس (شرکة او مؤسسة)	smart (adj)	ئكى
progress (n)	معتيا/منقت	stand for (v)	يمثل/ينوب عن
protect (v) (ed)	يحمى	unlikely (adv)	من غير المحتمل
qualify(v)(y-ied)	يتأهل/يؤهل	vague (adj)	غامض/غير واضع
ange (n)	معدل/ساسلة	well-known (adj)	معروف
eact(v) (ed)	يقوم برد فعل	whenever(conj)	حينما
ensible (adj)	عاقل/حكيم	winner(n)	فائز
eries (n)	سلسلة	***************************************	

architecture (n)	العمارة	memory (n)	ناكرة
detailed (adj)	مُقْصَل	multi-national (adj)	متعدد الجنسيات
essential (adj)	ضرورى	non-essential (adj)	غیر ضروری
fear(n)(v)(ed)	خوف/يخشي	objective (n)	مدغ
fit in (v)	يجد وقتا لـ	practise (v) (d)	يمارس/يتدرب
forever (adv)	للأبد	profession (n)	معنة
guitar (n)	جيتار	record (v) (ed)	يسجل
individual (n) (adj)	فرد/فردی	related (adj)	مرتبط
ucky (adj)	محظوظ	relax(v)(ed)	يسترخى
magnificent (adj)	رائع	tutorial (n)	ىورة تعليمية/درس خصوصى
Contract of the Contract of th			

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	The money which	h we collected is i	intended to be used for	ra purpose
		the new cancer h		
	a) silly	b) hilarious	c) timing	d) specific
2	The decisions w	hich the world lea	ders made at the UN c	onference are directly
		onmental issues.		
			•	d) unreliable
3	The new Ministe	r of Scientific Rese	arch is a suppo	orter of the space
	programme.			
	a) rare	b) passionate		
4	After retirement,	the head teacher	now runs a local	that gives books to
	poor children.			
	a) charity	b) chain	c) chorus	d) market
5	Many organisation	ons are trying to r	aise money for	of the environment
	and save the wor	rld.		
	a) imagination	b) convention	c) conservation	d' condensation
6	The newspaper of	lecided to	the story of the crime	from today's edition
	because of secur	ity reasons.		
	a) break	b) involve	c) drop	d) discover
7	A team should le	arn from experien	ce, both successes and	498284890000000000000 D
	a) achievements	b) failures	c) exercises	d) trainings
8	Technological	has been so	rapid over the last few	years.
	a) suspicion	b) search	c) failure	d) progress
9	The instructions h	ne wrote were	and difficult to foll	ow.
43	a) vague	b) clear	c) precise	d) accurate
10	Not many people	know that ATM	for "automated to	eller machine".
			c) stands	

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

achieve their goals	يحتثون أمدانهم	make a difference	يحدث فرقا
feel different	يشعر بأنه مختلف	pass (my) driving test	يجتار لختبار القيادة
had my first sight	رأيت لأول مرة	play the guitar	يعرف على الحيتار
in public	علنًا/أمام الجمهور	reach my goal	لصل لهدمي
depending on	اعتمانًا على	look after	يعتني ب
donate to	يتبرع لـ	passionate about	متدمس بخصوص
get over	يتغلب على	related to	مرتبط ب
importance of	أهمية اـ	relevant to	دو ملة ب

Derivatives

Ve	rb	Nou	n	Adject	tive
achieve	يحقق/ينجز	achievement	إنجاز	achievable	قامل للتحقيق
conserve	يحافظ على	conservation conservationist	حفاظ محافظ على البيئة	conservative	مدافظ
manage	يدير	management manager	إدارة مدير	managerial	انداری
measure	يقيس	measurement	قياس	measurable	غابل للقياس
		passion	عاطفة/حماس	passionate	عاطفي'،متحمس
possess	يمتلك	possession	ملكية	possessive	تملکی <i>اقتنا</i> نی
profit	يريح	profit	ريخ	profitable	عريع
relax	يسترخى	relaxation	استرخاء	relaxed	مستريح امسترخ
		relevance	صلة/علاقة	relevant	نوصلة

⁻We can measure the energy that food provides in calories.

⁻Take measurements of the room before you buy any new furniture.

⁻There has been a measurable improvement in the company's performance.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word Meaning	المرابق Synonym	المضاد Antonym
achievable قابل للتحقيق	attainable/feasible	impossible المحتادة
حفاظ conservation	preservation/protection	destruction/waste
detailed مُفْصَل	precise/specific	inaccurate/incomplete ہر مثبق/غیر کامل
وائد عمل entrepreneur	administrator/manager	employee
للأبد forever	everlasting/eternally	temporarily
individual فردى	single	team
manage يدير	direct/administer	obey/follow
measurable قابل للقياس	determinable	immeasurable نير قابل للقياس
عاطفی/متحمس passionate	enthusiastic	unconcerned بيرمعتم
profit ربح/يربح	benefit/interest	اoss
progress تقدم	advance/growth	decline/failure مورافشل
مرتبط related	associated/linked	irrelevant نيس له صلة
يسترخى relax	calm	worry
sensible عاقل/حكيم	reasonable/rational	irrational/unwise نیر عقلی/غیر حکیم
نکی mart	intelligent/brilliant	foolish/stupid بمقاغبی

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1		en significant progre imilar in meaning to		t disease. The noun
	a) decline			d) planning
2				ost ladies like to
	different or sp			
4	a) feel	b) make	c) defy	d) keep
3	Body tempera	ture is measured wit	h a digital thermome	eter. The adjective of
100	the verb "meas	sure" is "".		
	a) measures		b) measuremer	nt
	c) measurable		d) measurably	
4	Many valuable	works of art were los	t forever because of	the war. The antonym
.,	of the word "fo	rever" is "".		
	a) eternally	b) constantly	c) direction	d) temporarily

-	My elder brothe	rs have always been p	assionate football	, but I prefer basketball.
5	a) of	b) about	c) for	, but I prefer basketball. d) in
6	Before you set	/our targets, make st chievable" is "	ire that they are achie	vable. The synonym of
				d) reliable
0	A new TV costs	between five thousa	ind and twenty thousa	and pounds,
(3)	depending	the size you wa	nt.	
				d) for
(0)	Ac Kenzy Was Cl	ever at driving, she	her driving te	st the first time.
6	a) encouraged	b) failed	c) did	d) passed
9	Scientists are all	ways working on way e verb "conserve" is "	ys to conserve biologi 	cal diversity.
		1 1		d) conservatively
10	The six-year-old	I student is not sma oposite of the word "s	rt enough to unders smart" is "".	d) conservatively tand some computer
	a) intelligent	b) brilliant	c) active	d) stupid

Reading Text (1)



To succeed in life, it's important to have specific(1) aims or goals. How often have you started something and then given up because it was either too difficult or took too long to complete? It's very easy to give up when things get hard, so how can we make sure we achieve the goals we set ourselves? One way, often mentioned by managers(2), is to have SMART goals. These are five different things you need to consider if you want to meet your goal.

Whenever you plan to set a goal⁽³⁾, you need to ask yourself these questions: Is my goal specific?

Is it measurable (4)? Is it achievable (5)? Is it relevant o'? and finally Is it time bound ⁽⁷⁾? If you answer 'no' to any of these questions, then you are unlikely to reach your goal.

نوصلة (6)

مديرون (2)

بحيد هدفًا (3)

قابل للقياس (4)

قابل للتحقيق (5)

مقيد زمنيًا (7)

Reading Text (2)

Andy Robson, who is still a teenager, is the president of Green and Red, which is a small, but successful apple juice business in Maine. What is incredible is that Andy was only eight years old when he started selling apple juice outside his home in Auburn, where he still lives with his family.



عسل (1)

راطقي/متحمس (2)

حفاظ/وقاية (3)

تحلة العسل (4)

منظمة خيرية (5)

رائد/رائدة أعمال (6)

Andy adapted a 1920s recipe that he got from his grandmother, but he added honey to the juice to make it a little different from his grandmother's. The reason he decided to add honey(1) was because he is passionate(2) about helping bees and wants to help protect them. His company now donates 15% of its profits to bee conservation(3) groups who are fighting to save the honeybee(4).

Andy, whose picture is on every bottle of apple juice, has become very well-known in Maine. And Green and Red, which has been sold in a range of shops across Maine for years, is now selling in some restaurants and is very popular.

But that's not all. Andy has started his own charity(5) with Jessica Webb, whom he met at school. Jessica keeps her own bees and is also a young entrepreneur (6) – she sells her own honey locally. The two teenagers want to teach children about how to look after bees and about how to become an entrepreneur. They plan to go into schools and share their experiences as well as educating the children about the importance of bees and why we need to look after them.

Tarek

Ever since I saw my cousin playing the guitar last year, I've wanted to learn too. This year I have a little more time, and so I'm going to do it! I bought a guitar last month and I'm going to classes once a week. I've set myself one goal which is to be able to play one song by next month. My father says he's sure I can do it. I practise the song every day for twenty minutes, and this also helps me relax after studying and revising for all my exams.

Reading Text (3) (Workbook)

Salma

I want to be a newsreader when I'm older, so I know I have to get over my fear of speaking in public. The presentations I have to give at school are useful, but they still make me very nervous. I've been talking in front of the mirror and recording myself on video talking in front of the camera. I then watch myself and correct the things I don't like. By doing this once a week, I hope that by this time next month I won't feel nervous when I have to give a presentation in school about the future of the internet. Wish me luck!

Reading Text (4) (Workbook)

Cairo from a visitor's view

Cairo, 1) which is the capital city of Egypt, is a place which offers the visitor a wide range of experiences. Therefore, depending on 2) who/whom you talk to, they will give you a very different picture of the city.

Last year was a time 3) when I decided to fit in as many difference experiences as possible and so I visited Cairo. I was lucky enough to be invited by a friend 4) whos∈ family lived there and wanted to show me everything the city had to offer. My frience Fares, with 5) whom I had shared a flat in my first year at university, travelled with me by train to the city. It was at the Ramses Railway Station 6) where I had my firs sight of the magnificent architecture the city has to offer. However, this was not the only surprise which the city had for me. In my next blog post, I will tell you about ∈ the wonderful people 7) who/whom I will never forget and the places 8) which w forever live in my memory.

Listening Text (1)



Now, let's look at these SMART goals one at a time and check what each one actually means. If you are serious about achieving your goals, you need to make sure they are sensible and definitely(1)



something you can do, even if they are a little bit difficult. But your

goals mustn't be too general or you'll never reach them. So if your goal is to get fit by next month, it's too vaque(2). Your goal needs

to be much more specific such as, 'I want to be able to run ten kilometres without stopping in six months' time.'

Next, you need to make sure that your goal is measurable. To make sure you keen working towards your final goal, you need to have smaller, short-term goals along the way. Instead of saying 'I want to run ten kilometres', start with 1 kilometre. Then when you can do that, aim for three kilometres and so on until you reach ten, By having smaller targets, you will find that it is easier to achieve your final goal, So. the 'A' in SMART means 'achievable', and your goal should never be too easy, but it should always be possible.

Now let's look at the last two letters 'R' and T'. The 'R' stands for (4) relevant. This is about making goals that are important to you, not your family or friends. If you don't really care about the goal, then you're unlikely to succeed. And finally, 'T' is for time-bound, in other words there is a final time when your goal has to be reached. There's no point saying, 'I'm going to run 10 kilometres one day,' because you won't. You need to plan it and write down a time when you want to finally be able to achieve this.

So, if you want to achieve your goals, you need to ask yourself a series (5) of SMART questions.





- work عمل/مكان العمل (اسم لا يعد) بالتأكيد (1)
- works نامض/غير واضع (2)
- تهائی (3)
- رمثل/ينوب عن (4)
- سلسلة (5)

career

lob

profession

ممنة (تحتاج إلى مؤهلات وتدريب)

أعمال فنبة أو أدبية (اسم يعد)

on Vocabulary

Notes

Let's read these notes to cheri the difference in meaning

- Much of the heavy work on farms is now done

I started work when I was sixteen.

by machines.

The works of Naguib Mahfouz are still read all over the world.

- It's not his job to tell us what we can and can't do.
- I've applied for several jobs without success.

. Choosing a career can be a very difficult decision ممنة (الحياة العملية للفرد)

nursing/teaching/القضاء legal/ الطبية the medical/ profession)

- We admit that a few members of our profession have behaved badly.

recipe

وصفة (محموعة من الإرشادات لطبق معين)

prescription

روشتة (وصفة طبية)

Could you give me the recipe for that chocolate cake?

Dr Magdy gave me a prescription for some sleeping tablets.

goal

هدف (مستقبلي هام قد يستغرق وقتًا

something important that you hope to achieve in the future, even though it may take a long time

- The country can still achieve its goal of reducing poverty by a third.

objective

هدف (تم مناقشته وتحديده مسبقًا)

the specific thing that you are trying to achieve

- used especially about things that have been officially discussed
- We met to set the business objectives for the coming year.

target

مدف/مستهدف (كم أو مقدار مديد تتعني

a particular amount or total that you want to achieve

- The company is on track to meet its target of increasing profits by 10%.

manage

- (بتبعما اسم أو ضمير) أو (المصدر + to)
- I don't think I can manage a long walk today.
- We managed to persuade him to come with us

succeed

Unit 12

ينجح/يتمكن من يتبعما noun أو (in + verb + ing)

- Many women were able to succeed in politics.
- My brother succeeded in passing his final tests

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

▶ (1) I was given the wrong tablets when the chemist misread my doctor's ... a) prescription b) recipe d) observation c) direction to keep the plane on the runway although an engine 2 The pilot skilfully stopped. b) passed a) succeeded c) managed d) accepted ., that their work is undervalued. 3 There's a feeling among the nursing ... b) job a) work d) profession c) career of twenty cars a week. 4 The factory workers are working towards a/an a) target b) aim d) goal c) consumption



Practice iners Vocabulary **General Exercises**

~ The Collipsin	b) penalty	y allu llow it	is a big corporation.
a) business	b) penalty	c) income	d) profit
- My wife never	rollows exact	ly when she cooks -	she just uses them as
- actintion	s histudiae	c) researches	d) recipes
auding such	a big house within only	/ six months isn't a/an	goal.
when you have	ve a job as well as child	ren to look after, you	have to learn how to
your your	time.		
-Veneceed »	b) research	c) manage	d) devise
(E) Your CV should	d your skills and	achievements as well	as your qualifications.
a) highlight	b) export	c) expel	d) expire
A/An	is a person who makes	money by starting or	r running businesses,
especially who	en this involves taking f	inancial risks.	
a) entertainer	b) designer	c) entrepreneur	d) consultant
7 I think that ma	ankind is destroying the	e planet, all in the nar	me of
a) destruction	b) affection	c) reflection	d) progress
A My father alwa	ys encourages us to gi	ve a small amount of	what we earn to
to hel	p poor people.	4	
	nt b) charity	c) ability	d) loyalty
	sts that thed		
a) charitable	b) unimportant	c) relevant	d) subsiding
10 The problems of	of pollution and globa	I warming are closely	y
a) achievable	b) specific	c) relevant	d) related
11 My daughter ha	s a/an intere	est in animal rights a	nd conservation.
	b) passionate		
12 Diplomacy is al	ways the most	way to resolve all	kinds of disputes and
wars.			
a) sensible	b) unreasonable	c) sensitive	d) irresponsible
3 The new	of the company c	alled a top-level ma	nagement meeting or
his first day.			
a) minister	b) president	c) member	d) captain
	in Morocco st		
	b) department		

15) Squash is an	individual game in w	hich a lot of Egyptians	are champi	ons,
The antonym	of the word "individ	Jal" is "".		
a) team	b) single	c) unique	d) disti	nctive
16) Just five min	utes' exercise a day co	uld a differen	ce to your h	ealth
=1 do	In language	c) davise	d) desid	70
17) The lady was the adjective	able to give a detaile "detailed" is "	d description of her att ".	acker. The s	,
a) general	b) private	c) specific	d) publi	c
18 The students	hope to thei	r goal of raising 10,000	pounds for	charity
a) sit	b) set	c) arrive	d) reach	7.
19 Most young	people feel nervous al	oout speaking	public.	
a) at	b) in	c) of	d) about	
20 The UN warn	s that too many nation	c) of ns alreadyche	mical weapo	ons,
a) possess	b) possession	c) possessive	d) posse	ssively
21 The amount	of protein you need is	directly related	your lifest	yle.
a) in	b) to	c) at	d) for	
22 I listen to mu	sic for before	I go to bed.		
a) relax	b) relaxation	c) relaxed	d) relaxe	es .
23) I don't know I	how we're going to ge	t this problem	1.	
a) off	b) in	c) into	d) over	
24 The superman	rket's daily profit is us	ually around five thous	and pounds	
The synonym	of the word "profit" is	, at all		
a) benefit	b) loss	c) exhibition	d) charit	(y
25 Experts are as	sking people to be se	nsible about the amo	unt of water	they use
The opposite	of the adjective "sens	ible" is "".		,
a) logical	b) rational	c) sensitive	d) unwi	se
		give		(Longman)
_		c) away	d) in	
	ould be specific, mea-	surable and time		should be
met by a spec				(Longman)
a) bound		c) consuming	d) repea	
28 Our company	10 -	ofits to people with dis		
to.	-	c) agrees		
		ording to their abilities		
a) let	_			s. (Longinus
LIMITE .	•	ichieved a lot of		(Legamon)
a) losses	b) files	c) replacements		
g) 102262	b) nies	c) replacements	d) profit	S



Relative clauses

جمل الوصل

هي الجمل التي تستخدم فيما ضمائر الوصل للربط بينما. وضمائر الوصل هي:

who/that	whom	which/that	whose	where	when
للفاعل والمفعول العلتق	للمفعول العاقل	غير العاقل	الملكية	للمكان	للزمان

- تحل ضعائر الوصل بيل الاسم أو الضمير المكرر في الجملة الثانية.
 - يأتي ضعير الوصل بعد الاسم المراد وصله مباشرة.

verb + الذي/التي/الذين who/that + اسم عاقل

- تحل (who/that) محل الفاعل العاقل المكرر في الجملة الثانية ويأتي بعدهما فعل.
- Mr Said is very rich. He owns this enormous house.
- ﴾ Mr Said, who (He) owns this enormous house, is very rich. (بعنما فعل فعي في محل فاعل)
- The footballer has been banned from playing again. He took drugs.
- The footballer who/that (He) took drugs has been banned from playing again.
- في الجملة الأولى Mr Said اسم علم فجملة الوصل التي بعده تعتبر معلومة زائدة extra information فالجملة الأصلية comma.
- في الجملة الثانية جملة الوصل ضرورية لإتمام المعنى لمعرفة من اللاعب الذي منع من اللعب، وهنا تسمى جملة الوصل defining وهنا يمكن استخدام that مع عدم وضع comma.

+ súbject الذي/الذين who/whom/that + اسم عاقل

- تحل (who/whom/that) محل المفعول العاقل المكرر في الجملة الثانية ويأتي بعدهم فاعل.
- The woman was happy. We gave her the money.
- The woman who/whom/that we gave the money was happy.
- The people were very friendly. We met them at the party.
- ▶ The people who/whom/that we met at the party were very friendly.

بعدها فاعل فهي محل مفعول.

- Ahmed is my neighbour. I go to school with him.
- Ahmed, who/whom I go to school with, is my neighbour.
- لاحـظ عـدم وضع that لأن الجملة بها comma لأن جملـة الوصل non-defining ولاحظ أيضًا أن حرف الجر with لم يأت قبل ضمير الوصل فإذا جاء قبل ضمير الوصل فإذا جاء قبل ضمير الوصل الا نستخدم إلا whom.
- Ahmed, with whom I go to school, is my neighbour.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My pen friend,	lives in Sweden, is studying biology at university
a) whose	b) who
c) that	d) which
2 I met the girl	. I used to play tennis with.
a) whom	b) which
c) where	d) whose
3 People study	the weather are called meteorologists.
a) whom	b) which
c) who	d) whose
4 Ahmed, I go	to school with, is ill in hospital.
a) whose	b) which
c) where	d) whom
5 The people	used to live next door moved a long time ago.

verb/subject + الذي/التي/الذين which/that + اسم غير عاقل

. نحل (which/that) محل المّاعل أو المفعول غير العاقل المكرر في الجملة الثانية.

ينا كانتا في محل فاعل يأتي بعدهما في الربط فعل وإذا كانتا في محل مفعول فيأتي بعدهما فاعل.

b) that

d) whose

The food went bad. It was left out of the fridge.

The food which/that was left out of the fridge went bad. (بعدها فعل فهي محل فاعل)

The film was boring. We watched it yesterday.

The film which/that we watched yesterday was boring. (بعدها فاعل فهى في محل مفعول) ني الجمل السابقة وضعت that لأن جملة الوصل defining ولم نضع comma ليضًا ولكن لاحظ الجملة الآتية:

* The Nile is the main source of water in Egypt. It flows from south to north.

F The Nile, which flows from south to north, is the main source of water in Egypt.

· جملة «ينسـاب من الجنوب إلى الشـمال» معلومة إضافية فمي تعتبر non-defining ولذلك لم نضع that ووضعنا

comma إذا وجد حرف جر قبل ضمير الوصل لا نستخدم that ونستخدم which فقط.

The car in which (that) I go to work needs replacing.



ملحوظة

The boy was very polite. We met him at Adly Street yesterday.

The boy who/whom/that we met at Adly Street yesterday was very polite.

The boy who/whom/that we met at Adly Street yesterday was very polite.

The stories were interesting. We read them at the school library.

The stories which/that we read at the school library were interesting.

The stories which/that we read at the school library were interesting.

| sentence (s + v + o) + للملكية whose + اسم عاقل/غيرعاق

- تستخدم (whose) للملكية ويتبعما اسم يملكه الاسم الذي قبلها.

- تحل محل صفات الملكية الأتية his/her/its/their

The writer was extremely delighted. His novel won the Nobel Prize.

The writer whose novel won the Nobel Prize was extremely delighted.

My cousin visits Italy a lot. His wife is Italian.

My cousin, whose wife is Italian, visits Italy a lot.

في الجملة الثانية وضعنا comma لأن جملة الوصل ازوجته إيطالية؛ معلومة إضافية non-defining.

ملحوظة من الممكن استخدام حرف جر مع whose كما في المثال التالي:



Mr Ali, in whose house we had our meal, is a generous man.

Language Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1) The man	car was stolen	phoned the police.	
a) who	b) which	c) whose	d) that
2 One should o	quit smoking,	is very harmful to he	alth.
a) which	b) what	c) who	d) that
3 The horse	I bought the d	other day is lame أعرج.	
a) whom	b) that	c) whose	d) where
4 People	work is good rec	eive high wages.	
a) who	b) that	c) who's	d) whose
		11 1 1 1	

(5) I like photographs are in black and white.

a) what b) whom c) which d) whose

a) which

c) whom

+ sentence + حرف جر + where = which مكان

. نامعنى حيث (where) للمكان بمعنى حيث.

(in/on/at + place/here - there) الجملة الثانية

- The place was really beautiful. We spent our holiday there.
- The place where we spent our holiday was really beautiful.
- The hotel wasn't very clean. We stayed there for 3 days.
- The hotel where we stayed for 3 days wasn't very clean.

يدل where محل ظروف المكان here - there أما which تحل محل it/they لغير العاقل ولذلك يمكن أن تأتى Which وقبلها مكان بدون حرف جر وذلك لأنها جاءت مدل الضمير المكرر it أو thev.

- Cairo is the capital of Egypt. It is very crowded.
- Cairo, which is very crowded, is the capital of Egypt.
- FThe flat is very small. I live in it.
- لحيث أسكن = التي أسكن فيها) . The flat where I live (which I live in) is very small التي أسكن فيها € التي
- The flat where I live (in which I live) is very small.

، ہاتی قبل which حرف جر،

sentence + حرف جر ... when = that/which + اسم يدل على الزمن

. تستخدم (when) للزمان بمعنى (عندما) المكرر في الجملة الثانية (in/on/at + time/then)

- It's seven o'clock. I get up at that time.
- > It's seven o'clock when I get up.
- > Ramadan is a holy month شمر مقدس, We fast in it.
- Ramadan when we fast (which/that we fast in) is a holy month.

أنواع جمل الوصل

١) النوع الأول يعطى معلومات أساسية، وبدون هذه المعلومات سيكون من الصعب أن نعرف من أو ما هو المقصود. ونستخيم في هذا النوم (who/which/whom) ولا نستخدم (comma) قبل أو بعد عبارة الوصل. ويمكن استخدام (that) بدلًا من ضمائر الوصل المذكورة،

- The man who (that) robbed the bank was sent to prison.
- The book which (that) tells you about history is useful.

- ٢) النوع الثاني يعملى معلومات إضافية وليست ضرورية لفهم معلى الجملة ولا بد من استخدام (comma) قبل وبعد عبارة الوصل ولا تستخدم (that) في هذا النوع.
- My father, whom I love, works as a teacher.
- Alaa's car, which he left outside, cost him L.E. 200,000 (Alaa has one car).

ولعزيد من التوضيح لاحظ الغرق بين المثالين الأثنين:

- My sister, who lives in Assuit, came to visit me in Cairo last week.
- My sister who lives in Assuit came to visit me in Cairo last week.
 - في المثال الأول جملة الوصل معلومة إضافية وهذا بعني أن لدى أختًا واحدة فقط فلا أحتاج للتعريف.
- في المثال الثاني جملة الوصل تعطي معلومة أساسية وضرورية وهذا يعني أنني لدى أكثر من أخت فوجب التفريق منن الت زارتنی منمن۔

Language Check point 6

choose t	he	correct	answer	from	a,	b, c	or	d:
----------	----	---------	--------	------	----	------	----	----

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c t	ord:
October 1973, was the month	our great army restored our dignity.
a) when	b) which
c) who	d) where
(2) What is the name of the palace	the President and his men stayed?
a) in where	b) which
c) where	d) what
(3) A library is a place we can	borrow books.
a) that	b) which
c) when	d) where
(4) The student couldn't remember the	e yearhis father was born.
a) which	b) when

c) at which

d) where

(5) My son reached the agehe can have his independent bank account.

a) at when

b) on which

c) in which

d) at which



Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	A student	doesn't study hard enough cannot be successful.
	a) which	b) whom
	c) whose	d) who
2	The man about	you were talking has just come in the room.
	a) which	b) whose
	c) whom	d) where
3	A riveris	polluted is not safe for swimming.
	a) whose	b) that
	c) when	. d) where
4	His wife,	. lives in Paris, is a fashion model.
	a) who	b) who's
	c) whom	d) whose
5	The mistake	Ola made was fortunately not very serious.
	a) whose	b) when
	c) what	d) which
6	The town	I grew up was very small.
	a) which	b) where
	c) that	d) when
7	2001 is the year	my brother graduated from university.
	a) where	b) whose
	c) when	d) which
8	We met the man	car was advertised in the local newspaper.
	a) whose	b) who's
	c) who	d) whom
9	That's the beach.	I used to go swimming.
	a) which	b) that
7 ,	c) where	d) when
10	You wanted to tel	I me about the timeyou lost your keys.
Lib.	a) that	b) where
5	c) which	d) when
e · William	griveness residences	

My mother is the best per	son in the world.
a) who I love	b), who I love,
c) that I love	d), which Hove,
2 My sister made a big mistake,	she should apologise for.
a) which	b) what
c) that	d) why
13 The meeting at I met a lot	of my friends was fruitful.
a) where	b) what
c) that	d) which
Cairo, we live, is a crowde	d city.
a) what	b) which
c) where	d) that
15 What is the name of the teacher	used to teach us maths?
a) who	b) whom
c) who's	d) that
(16) Alexandria, is the second	capital city, has many comfortable resorts.
a) where	b) which
c) what	d) that
(17) El-Shamadan is a food company	most famous product is chocolate.
a) who	b) which
c) whose	d) where
(18) In hospitals, they wake patients at	6 a.m.,is much too early.
a) when	b) which
c) where	d) what
19 The manson I shouted wa	as extremely furious.
a) at whose	b) whose
c) at whom	d) who's
She went to a schoolall su	ubjects in English.
a) which they studied	b) that they studied
c) they studied	d) in which they studied
Hong Kong is a placea lot	of tall buildings.
a) where	b) which has
c) in which has	d) which there are

22 Tarek has four cats. Two of them are black. Tarek's two cats	22	Tarek has four cats. Two	of them are black. Tarek's two cats	ke pla.
c) , which are black, d) , whose are black, 23 Which sentence of the following shows that I have only one sister. a) My sister who spent her holiday in France is 25 years old. b) My sister that is 25 years old spent her holiday in France. c) My sister whose age is 25 spent her holiday in France. d) My sister, who is 25 years old, spent her holiday in France. d) My sister, who is 25 years old, spent her holiday in France. d) My sister, who is 25 years old, spent her holiday in France. d) My sister, who is 25 years old, spent her holiday in France. d) My friend whose car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. b) My friend in whose car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. c) My friend in which car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. d) My friend who's car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. d) My friend who's car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. d) My friend who's car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. d) How the candidate whom I am going to support in the next elections. b) I know the candidate whom I am going to support in the next elections. c) I know the candidate that I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support i		outside.		English .
Which sentence of the following shows that I have only one sister. a) My sister who spent her holiday in France is 25 years old. b) My sister that is 25 years old spent her holiday in France. c) My sister whose age is 25 spent her holiday in France. d) My sister, who is 25 years old, spent her holiday in France. d) My sister, who is 25 years old, spent her holiday in France. d) My sister, who is 25 years old, spent her holiday in France. d) My sister, who is 25 years old, spent her holiday in France. d) My friend one of the following sentences is correctly structured? a) My friend in whose car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. b) My friend in which car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. d) My friend who's car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. b) I know the candidate whom I am going to support in the next elections. b) I know the candidate whom I am going to support in the next elections. c) I know the candidate that I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate to whom I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the senting the next electio		a), that are black,	b) whose colour is black	i
a) My sister who spent her holiday in France is 25 years old. b) My sister that is 25 years old spent her holiday in France. c) My sister whose age is 25 spent her holiday in France. d) My sister, who is 25 years old, spent her holiday in France. 24 Which one of the following sentences is correctly structured? a) My friend whose car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. b) My friend in whose car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. c) My friend in which car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. d) My friend who's car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. b) My friend who's car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. b) My friend who's car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. b) I know the candidate whom I am going to support in the next elections. b) I know the candidate whom I am going to support in the next elections. c) I know the candidate to whom I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elect		c), which are black,	d), whose are black,	
a) My sister who spent her holiday in France is 25 years old. b) My sister that is 25 years old spent her holiday in France. c) My sister whose age is 25 spent her holiday in France. d) My sister, who is 25 years old, spent her holiday in France. 24 Which one of the following sentences is correctly structured? a) My friend whose car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. b) My friend in whose car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. c) My friend in which car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. d) My friend who's car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. b) My friend who's car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. b) My friend who's car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. b) I know the candidate whom I am going to support in the next elections. b) I know the candidate whom I am going to support in the next elections. c) I know the candidate to whom I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elect	23	Which sentence of the fo	ollowing shows that I have only one sister.	
b) My sister that is 25 years old spent her holiday in France. c) My sister whose age is 25 spent her holiday in France. d) My sister, who is 25 years old, spent her holiday in France. 24 Which one of the following sentences is correctly structured? a) My friend whose car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. b) My friend in whose car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. c) My friend in which car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. d) My friend who's car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. b) My friend who's car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. b) My friend who's car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. b) I know the of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect? a) I know the candidate whom I am going to support in the next elections. b) I know the candidate to whom I am going to support in the next elections. c) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. The earthquake had hit Syria and Turkey was highly destructive. a) when				
c) My sister whose age is 25 spent her holiday in France. d) My sister, who is 25 years old, spent her holiday in France. 24 Which one of the following sentences is correctly structured? a) My friend whose car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. b) My friend in whose car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. c) My friend in which car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. d) My friend who's car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. 25 Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect? a) I know the candidate whom I am going to support in the next elections. b) I know the candidate that I am going to support in the next elections. c) I know the candidate to whom I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. The earthquake had hit Syria and Turkey was highly destructive. a) when			-	
Which one of the following sentences is correctly structured? a) My friend whose car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. b) My friend in whose car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. c) My friend in which car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. d) My friend who's car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. 25 Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect? a) I know the candidate whom I am going to support in the next elections. b) I know the candidate that I am going to support in the next elections. c) I know the candidate to whom I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candid				
Which one of the following sentences is correctly structured? a) My friend whose car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. b) My friend in whose car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. c) My friend in which car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. d) My friend who's car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. 25 Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect? a) I know the candidate whom I am going to support in the next elections. b) I know the candidate that I am going to support in the next elections. c) I know the candidate to whom I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candid		d) My sister, who is 25 year	ars old, spent her holiday in France.	
a) My friend whose car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. b) My friend in whose car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. c) My friend in which car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. d) My friend who's car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. b) My friend who's car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. b) I who who of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect? a) I know the candidate whom I am going to support in the next elections. b) I know the candidate that I am going to support in the next elections. c) I know the candidate to whom I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. The earthquake had hit Syria and Turkey was highly destructive. a) when	24		·	
c) My friend in which car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. d) My friend who's car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect? a) I know the candidate whom I am going to support in the next elections. b) I know the candidate that I am going to support in the next elections. c) I know the candidate to whom I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. The earthquake had hit Syria and Turkey was highly destructive. a) when	-		_	
d) My friend who's car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect? a) I know the candidate whom I am going to support in the next elections. b) I know the candidate that I am going to support in the next elections. c) I know the candidate to whom I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. The earthquakehad hit Syria and Turkey was highly destructive. a) when				
d) My friend who's car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect? a) I know the candidate whom I am going to support in the next elections. b) I know the candidate that I am going to support in the next elections. c) I know the candidate to whom I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. The earthquakehad hit Syria and Turkey was highly destructive. a) when				
a) I know the candidate whom I am going to support in the next elections. b) I know the candidate that I am going to support in the next elections. c) I know the candidate to whom I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate to whom I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. The earthquake had hit Syria and Turkey was highly destructive. a) when				
a) I know the candidate whom I am going to support in the next elections. b) I know the candidate that I am going to support in the next elections. c) I know the candidate to whom I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. The earthquake had hit Syria and Turkey was highly destructive. a) when	25	·		
b) I know the candidate that I am going to support in the next elections. c) I know the candidate to whom I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. The earthquake had hit Syria and Turkey was highly destructive. a) when				S.
c) I know the candidate to whom I am going to support in the next elections. d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. The earthquake had hit Syria and Turkey was highly destructive. a) when				
d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections. The earthquakehad hit Syria and Turkey was highly destructive. a) when				ons.
The earthquakehad hit Syria and Turkey was highly destructive. a) when b) what c) where d) that T I don't know the man has offered to help you. a) whom b) who c) who's d) whose B Huda, mobile phone was lost, is terribly sad. a) who b) who's c) whose d) that Finland is a country, covers an area of 338,455 square kilometres. (Longment a) which b) whose c) where d) what Do you remember the day you first met your new neighbour? (Longment a) where b) in which c) where d) which				
a) when c) where d) that I don't know the man	26			(Longme-
a) whom b) who c) who's d) whose B Huda,		•		
a) whom c) who's d) whose B Huda, mobile phone was lost, is terribly sad. a) who b) who's c) whose d) that Finland is a country, covers an area of 338,455 square kilometres. a) which b) whose c) where d) what Do you remember the day you first met your new neighbour? a) where b) in which c) when d) which		c) where	d) that	
c) who's d) whose B Huda,	27	I don't know the man	has offered to help you.	(Longman
B Huda,		a) whom	b) who	
a) who b) who's c) whose d) that Finland is a country,		c) who's	d) whose	
a) who b) who's c) whose d) that Finland is a country,	28	Huda, mobile ph	one was lost, is terribly sad.	(Longman,
a) which b) whose c) where d) what Do you remember the day you first met your new neighbour? (Longment a) where b) in which c) when d) which				
a) which b) whose c) where d) what Do you remember the dayyou first met your new neighbour? (Longment) a) where b) in which c) when d) which		c) whose	d) that	
c) where d) what Do you remember the day you first met your new neighbour? (Longman) a) where b) in which c) when d) which	29	Finland is a country,	covers an area of 338,455 square kilometres.	(Longman)
a) where b) in which c) when d) which		a) which	b) whose	
a) where b) in which c) when d) which		c) where	d) what	
a) where b) in which c) when d) which	30	Do you remember the day	you first met your new neighbour?	(Longman)
o, mai	,			
g g finate militarative in the same of		c) when	d) which	
	6	Mait 13		

Test yourself	Take a less	(Lessons 1 & 2)

Macabulary	t answer from a, b, c o		
Vocabulary The teacher of	pave us very detailed in	structions before we st	arted the trip.
The antonym	of the word "detailed"	is "	
-) specific	b) precise	c) helpful	d) incomplete
The weather	b) precise didn'ta differe	ence in our plans. We w	ere determined to
visit the oasis	•	•	
		c) tell	d) give
the second	i vear, the restaurant h	egan to make a good	_
a) profit	b) loss e everyone to	c) charity	d) list
syperts advise	e everyone to	realistic goals that the	y can achieve.
experts a	b) set	c) prevent	d) destroy
We usually	b) set b) consume	to a home for homeles	s children.
a) renew	b) consume	c) apply	d) donate
	arity the of th	a procest project betai	ro chartime it
a) causes	b) losses appointed to be	c) goals	d) diaries
camy was disa	appointed to be	from the school har	ndball team.
when I visited	Italy, I was amazed by	theof Old Ver	nice: the buildings are
poarly surrour	nded by water canals.		.
a) fracture	b) architecture	c) structure	d) lecture
Mobil Oil Com	pany is acor	poration which has bra	anches all over
the world.	,		
a) national	b) local	c) multinational	d) multimedia
To finish the DI	roject, we need to per	form as a team rather	than a group of
io iniisii die p	ojeci, ne nece to per		and group or
a) individuals	b) parts	c) hikers	d) fighters
A high proport	of people in t نسبة	he nursing at	e women
Angrepropore	b) profession	c) mission	d) works
The doctor had	to ten appo	nintments in one more	ning as he won't wo
in the evening.		official in one mon	ining as the front tho
In the evening.	h) give	el maka	d) assign
a) III	b) give lecture on video and	Luc can all watch it la	u) assign
III the	lecture on video and	i we can all watch it ia	ter.
a) renearse	b) overload were not relevant	c) reload	a) record
Her comments	were not relevant	the discussion	we nad.
a) in	b) at	c) to	d) into
We spent an ho	ur trying to buy the n	novie tickets, but ever	ituallyup a
We spent an ho went home. a) took		c) looked	

a) Mohamed Salah that I met at the Book Fair is a famous footballer.
b) Mohamed Salah whom I met at the Book Fair is a famous footballer.
c) Mohamed Salah, whom I met at the Book Fair, is a famous footballer.
d) I met Mohamed Salah who is a famous footballer at the Book Fair.



Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening Texts

access (n)	مدخل/سبيل	dried (adj)	مجفف
accessible (adj)	سحل المنال	ensure (v) (d)	يضمن/يؤكد
afford (v) (ed)	يتحمل نفقات	entry (n)	مخول
arrangement (n)	ترتيب	expand (v) (ed)	يمدايوسع
attend (v) (ed)	يدهر	experiment (n)	تجربة
available (adj)	متاح/متوفر	filter (n) (v) (ed)*	مرشح/يرشع
benefit (n) (v) (ed)	عيفتسي/قعنك	finalist (n)	متسابق نعائى
bleeding (n)	نزيف	improve (v) (d)	يحسن
blood (n)	ba .	innovation (n)	elay
boil (v) (ed)	يغلى	invention (n)	لختراع
breakthrough (n)	إنجاز/اختراق (علمي)	inventor (n)	مذترع
cent (n)	سنت (عملة أمريكية)	laboratory (n)	معمل
competition (n)	منافسة	life-changing (adj)	مغير للحياة
context (n)	سياق	liquid (n)	سائل
corn cob (n)	كوز الذرة	major (adj)	رئيسى
create (v) (d)	ينتج/يبدع	motivated (adj)	متحفزامندفع
deaths (n)	وفيات	nationality (n)	جنسية
device (n)	جهاز	operation (n)	عملية جراحية
display (n) (v) (ed)	عرض/يعرض	organiser (n)	منظم

Many people use water filters in their homes for pure drinking water.

outline (v) (d)	يوجز أيحدد الخطوط العريد	recycle (v) (d)	la.
overall (adj) (adv)	كلى/في المجمل	remove (v) (d)	1300 4
pedal-powered (adj)	يعمل ببدال (دراجة)	repair (v) (ed)	di
percentage (n)	نسبة ملوية	sort out (v) (ed)	ملع بنزایقوم برایحل
pharmaceutical (adj)	دوائی	surgeon (n)	
present (v) (ed)	يقدم	variety (n)	45
prize (n)	جائزة	venue (n)	بكان إقامة حدث
purpose (n)	غرض	vote (v) (d)	بمودايدلي بصوته

Workbook Vocabulary

accessories (n)	مستلزمات/إكسسوارات	joint (adj)	ي ترك
amongst (prep)	بين	matching (adj)	ملائم/متجانس
collection (n)	مجموعة	minor (adj)	فرعي/غير أساسى
come across (v)	يصانف	neighbourhood (n)	الجيرة/الحي
community (n)	مجتمع	non-governmental (adj)	غير حكومي
complex (adj)	معقد	option (n)	لختيار
crawl (v) (ed)	يزحف	outfit (n)	ملابس/زی
dairy (n)	منتجات ألبان	promote (v) (d)	يطور/يرقى
effort (n)	مجھود	practical (adj)	عملى
everyday (adj)	یومی	produce (v) (d)	ينتج
fast (n) (v) (ed)	صوم/يصوم	reduce (v) (d)	بقلل/يخفض
fruity (adj)	بطعم/برائحة الفاكهة	secondary (adj)	ثانوی/غیر أساسی
global (adj)	عالمي	unique (adj)	متميز

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Experts are stu	dying various ways to	garbage عمل	into fuel.
a) rewind	b) cycle	c) rewrite	d) recycle
2 The store sells	TVs, laptops and othe	r electronic	
a) devices	b) mails	c) books	d) designers
3 The list of	in most squash	championships usu	ally includes Egyptian
players.			
a) finders		b) bounders	
c) finalists		d) journalists	
4 The museum h	as a magnificent	of ancient silver	and leather objects.
a) figure	b) display	c) present	d) shape
(5) The communic	ation industry has	greatly over th	ne last decade.
a) expanded	b) expired	c) expelled	d) exhaled
6 The information	n about the new disea	ase should be	to all people of
the world.			
a) accessible		b) avoidable	
c) stressful		d) unreliable	
7 The Ministry of	Transport took steps	to the safety	of the train passengers.
a) damage		b) ensure	
c) test		d) approach	
8 The peace treaty	was a historic	in political histo	ory of the area.
a) expansion		b) access	
c) breakthrough		d) argument	
9 There is an exter	nsive competition b	oetween com	panies to produce new
effective medicir			
a) consuming		b) agricultural	
c) industrial		d) pharmaceut	ical
	uragein ir	•	be able to compete with
foreign products		,	
a) failure	b) reduction	c) innovation	d) solution

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

by accident	بالصدفة	make life easier	الحياة اسعل
(be) a great success	ينجع كثير'ا	make recommendations	م نرشیدات
keep you fit	يحافظ على لياقتك	stay healthy	بمدة جيدة
aim at	يهنف إلى	plenty of	اكثرة من
available to	متوفر ك	sell to	1
crawl around	يزحف حول	solution to/for	1
experience with	خبرة بـ	successful in	ر فن
match with	يتناسب مع	vote for	يت لصالح

Derivatives

Vei	rb	Noun		Adjective	
arrange	يرتب	arrangement	ترتيب	arranged	مرتب
attend	يحضر	attendance/attendee	حضور/حاضر		
collect	يجمع	collection collector	مجموعة محصل/مجمع	collective	بعاءي/بععي
describe*	يصف	description	وصف	descriptive	وصفى
expand	يمد/يوسع	expansion	مد/توسيع	expandable	قابل للتوسع
motivate	يحفز	motivation motivator	حافز/دافع محفز	motivated	متحفز/مندفع
promote	يطور/يُرقْي	promotion	تطور/ترقية	promotional	مطور/مـُرقَّى
recycle	يعيد تدوير	recycling	إعادة تدوير	recycled recyclable	معاد تدويره فابل للتدوير
reduce	يقلل/يخفض	reduction	خفض/تقليل	reduced	مخفض
remove	يزيل	removal remover	إزالة مزيل	removable	قابل للإزالة
train	يدرب	training trainer trainee	تدریب مدرب متدرب	trained	متدرب

⁻ The man was described as tall and dark, and aged about 20.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	المرابث Synonym	المضاد Antonym	
collection	مجموعة	selection	separation	غصل
complex	معقد	complicated	simple	بسيط
display	عرض/يعرض	demonstrate/present	hide/cover	يئخفى
filter	مرشح/يرشح	clean/refine	pollute	يلوث
global	عالمي	worldwide	local	محلّی
outline	يوجز	summarise	expand	يمد
practical	عملی	useful/factual	theoretical	نظري
recycle	يعيد تدوير	reuse	waste	يعبر
unique	متميز	extraordinary/uncommon	common	شائع
variety	تثوع	range/diversity	similarity	تشابه

Vocabulary Check point 2

choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Circ			
		cle cans and bottles. Th	ne verb "recycle" is
the opposite o	of"".		
a) reuse	b) consume	c) waste	d) divide
(2) I found an imp	ortant letter	. accident as I was look	ing through my files.
a) by	b) of	c) at	d) on
3 I don't think the	at tourism will provid	le a long-term solution	employment
problems in the	e area.		
a) of	b) at	c) in	d) for
4) The service offe	ers young people pr	actical advice on findi	ng a job. The synonym
of "practical" is "	<i>f ff</i>		
a) theoretical	b) useful	c) useless	d) evident
5 The coffee shop	may expand into a	full restaurant. The nou	in of the verb "expand"
is			
a) expands	h) expansion	c) evnandable	d) expendably

⁻ The catalogue gives a full description of each product.

The writer gives a highly descriptive account of his/her journey through Africa.

6	Not enough data was availablescientists at the beginning of CO ₁ pandemic.			
	a) out	b) of	c) in	d) to
. 7	a) out b) of c) in d) to The writer expanded the main idea of his research in his new book. The very least of the very			
	"expand" is sin	nilar in meaning to	# #	ver
	a) reduce	b) grow	c) summarise	d) develop
8	The lawyers will review the case andrecommendations to the client			lations to the client
	a) make	b) do	c) follow	d) determine

Reading Text (1)

Pedal-powered washing machine

A 14-year girl from India has created her first own invention. When her mother became ill, Remya had to wash the clothes for the family. She thought that washing everything by hand took too much time, so she recycled⁽¹⁾ some bicycle parts and built a pedal-powered⁽²⁾ washing machine which saves time and keeps you fit! Her invention will help families whose homes don't have electricity.

يعيد	. تدوير (
مداري	بعالات (٤
Probability was supposed.	جهاز (3
	جھاز ({

Her next goal is to make a simple device⁽³⁾ that can create electricity to use at home.

Reading Text (2)

Corn cob water filter

11-year-old Lalita knew that many families in her village in Odisha, India couldn't get clean water and they couldn't afford to buy expensive filters⁽¹⁾. In Odisha, farmers grow a lot of corn⁽²⁾, but they only sell part of the plant. The rest of the corn cob isn't used.

When she saw all the dried corn cobs on the side of the road, she wondered if they could help filter water. Her corn-cob filter removes⁽³⁾ 80% of all pollution in the water. The water can then be boiled⁽⁴⁾ to make it safe to drink.

.,	
نرة (2)	
يزيل (3)	
يغلى (4)	

Her goal is to sell the cheap device to farmers so they can stay healthy.

Reading Text (3)

Report on the Young Inventor's Competition

Introduction

The purpose of this report is to describe my experience at the Young Inventor's Competition(1) and recommend any changes that could improve how it worked.

(1) مسابقة (2) المتأهلون للنمائيات (3) مكان حدث (3) مكان حدث (4) معرض (4) يعرض (5)

The organisation

were invited to go to Toronto to present their inventions. The competition organisers were very good at sending me information and helping me to sort out travel arrangements. They also organised for my invention to be sent to the competition venue⁽³⁾.

The competition

The competition was very well organised and there was plenty of time for the finalists to display⁽⁴⁾ and talk about their inventions. Lots of companies were invited to attend⁽⁵⁾, so I was lucky to get lots of interest in my invention.

Suggested improvements

Although it was great to meet so many other young inventors from my country, I think that the competition should be expanded to include teenagers from other countries too.

Conclusion

Overall, I had a really positive experience and I would really recommend entering the competition.

Reading Text (4) (Workbook)

Solutions to local problems

We all know the importance of new inventions to make life easier. However, not all inventors have been successful in finding good solutions to everyday problems. Some of the craziest ideas include mini umbrellas to attach to your shoes or even a sleepsuit⁽¹⁾ made for babies to clean the floor as they crawl⁽²⁾ around the house! However, luckily enough there are also young people today who are creating and selling real solutions for problems their local community experiences.

* * * *	
يزدف (2)	
تنوع (3)	,
منتجات ألبان (4)	
اکسسوارات (5)	
متميز (6)	
مشترك (7)	
يصانف (8)	

يدلة نوم (1)

Several teenagers from Aswan have been trained to produce and sell their ideas in order to help those that live in their area.

The inventions include a range⁽³⁾ of useful solutions. One of the tastiest options by Azhar is a fruity dessert for those who are breaking fast and don't want to eat dairy⁽⁴⁾ products.

Eman has created a collection of clothes with a complete range of matching accessories⁽⁵⁾ so those in her neighbourhood do not have to go to several different shops to get the perfect outfit. The unique⁽⁶⁾ selling point of these ideas is that they are offering practical solutions to real problems, and also help to reduce pollution, as their customers do not need to use cars or buses to travel outside their neighbourhoods.

The training project, which is a joint⁽⁷⁾ effort between governmental and non-governmental organizations, has been a great success amongst both boys and girls. The hope is that it will produce more entrepreneurs who will create real solutions for those common problems we come across⁽⁸⁾ every day.

Listening Text (Workbook)



ومبات ، "

2. الما

مربعاء 4

رئيسي ز5

ابداع (5)

(7) =13...

جنود (8)

جرلمون (9)

يضمن (11)

موائي (12)

سحل المثال (13)

عمليات جراحية (10)

المحاوا لحشراق علمي . 3 ا

Welcome to New World, the programme that brings you detailed information about the latest inventions which aim at improving lives. Today we hear the story of an invention which is set to save millions of people around the world.

At the age of 15, when she heard that losing blood was the second most common cause of deaths in hospitals, Deena Mousa decided to work on finding a solution to this life and death problem.

It all started at the age of 5 when Deena, whose parents are Egyptian, carried out her first experiment on plants. Since that moment she has not stopped her search for solutions to real problems. Her objective has always been to find answers to the everyday issues we all face. At the age of fifteen, and with the help of her father, who works in a lab, Deena gained access to the necessary equipment to start her research. Twelve years later she had invented Hemostat V-Seal liquid⁽²⁾ drops.

Before she had made the breakthrough⁽³⁾ the usual time it took for medicines to stop bleeding⁽⁴⁾ in patients was up to 12 minutes. This, Deena says, shocked her into finding a better solution. Her chemical invention can stop bleeding in as little as 10 seconds. This major⁽⁵⁾ innovation⁽⁶⁾ means the difference between a patient losing millilitres or litres of blood.

Knowing that 35% of people who suffer a serious injury die from uncontrolled loss of blood before they get to hospital means that Deena's invention can save a huge number of lives in a wide range of contexts⁽⁷⁾. While this is clearly good news for soldiers⁽⁸⁾ in the army, surgeons⁽³⁾ in hospitals are also looking forward to being able to use the liquid in the case of unexpected problems during operations⁽¹³⁾ and save more lives.

Deena is now working on the business plan to ensure⁽¹⁾ her solution reaches as many people as possible at an affordable price, which is why she is in discussions with pharmaceutical⁽¹²⁾ companies. She hopes it will only cost a few cents to make sure it is widely accessible⁽¹³⁾.

In a recent interview Deena said she was very happy to be able to provide a solution for others which has always been her goal in life and that she hopes her discovery will inspire others to follow their dreams no matter how young or old they are.

Video Script)

دالات قشل (1)

يتوم برد معل (2)

فائزون (3)

الفيزياء (4)

يتامل (5)

يذرج من فريق (6)

When you read about successful people who have achieved all their goals, it's easy to forget that most of them had many failures⁽¹⁾ before they became successful.

Failure is a word that most people don't want to hear. We all want to be successful, but when something goes wrong, many people just give up and try something different. Yet a lot of successful people failed many times before they achieved success. The main difference between long-term success and failure is the way we react⁽²⁾ to it. The winners⁽³⁾ are the people who think of ways to overcome the problems and keep working towards their goal.

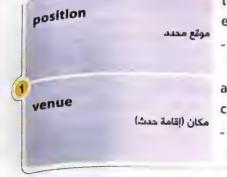
We've all heard of Albert Einstein, who was brilliant at physics⁽⁴⁾, but at school he was not a good student. He had problems learning to speak and his teachers didn't think he was very clever. Yet, he continued studying and was accepted to university the second time he applied. He qualified⁽⁵⁾, worked hard and later he won the Nobel Prize for Physics.

Michael Jordan, who is probably one of the world's most famous basketball players, was once dropped⁽⁶⁾ from his high school basketball team. Instead of giving up, Jordan practised and improved until he managed to get back into a basketball team. He says that during his career he lost over 300 games and failed over and over again, but his determination to succeed helped him achieve his goals.









the place where someone or something is, especially in relation to other objects and places

- She showed me the position of the village on the map.
- a place where something such as a meeting, concert, game, etc. takes place
- The meeting will be held at a venue in the south of the city.



an arrangement of things for people to look at or buy

- -There was a special display of local photographs.
- a performance for the public, especially one that مرض فنی includes singing, dancing, or jokes
 - Tonight's show is live from Cairo Stadium.



affecting or including the whole world

- Only the UN can tackle global problems like pollution of the atmosphere.
- relating to or involving more than one nation
- This is CNN, bringing you all the latest international news.



The business has expanded at a rate of 15% per year.

The number of people working from home has ينمو (غالبًا بشكل تدريجي) grown substantially.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Paris is the for the next	Paris is the for the next Olympic Games 2024.		
a) venue	b) position		
c) road	d) placement		
2 The economy is expected to	by roughly 2 percent this year.		
a) triple	b) expand		
c) grow	d) deny		
(3) The young actress is presenting	a new television quiz these days.		
a) display	b) show		
c) presentation	d) fair		
14) The New Administrative Capital	will surely have a/an airport.		
a) internal	b) global		
c) international	d) outside		
(5) Radars are the devices which are	used to determine the aircraft's		
a) venue	b) scenery		
c) placement	d) position		



Practice Practice Vocabulary General Exercises

the correct	answer from a. b. c or o	d:	
choose the save th	answer from a, b, c or o	e.	near bassure of his
p مالی fatner says th	roblems	go anywnere this sui	fillier because of this
duce	h) afford	r) attend	d) apply
a) produce	of the team are requested	this imp	ortant meeting.
Opices are lower	er when there is	among the big store	25.
- Lcompilation	DI ACCOMMODATION	CECOMMENTION	CITE C C 1 C 1 C 1 C 1 C 1 C 1 C 1 C 1 C 1
The children v	vere silenced by the suc	lden of the	serious headmaster,
Mr Kamel.			
a) entry	b) exit	c) display	d) show
The robber wa	sas tall and da	rk, and aged about 2	0.
a) prescribed	b) described	c) ascribed	d) preserved
@ Our national te	eam will play three of last	year's beateni	in the championship.
a) minors	b) losers	c) finalists	d) locals
7 I'll make	for you to be met at t	he airport by my dri	ver.
a) agreements	b) replacements	c) managements	d) arrangements
8 There are som	e plans to the lo	ocal airport in Hurgh	ada to make it fit for
bigger flights.			
	b) reduce		
9 The ozone laye	erharmful ultra	violet rays from the s	un.
a) charges	b) filters	c) shares	d) stores
10 The concert's s	till on Saturday, but its	has been ch	anged.
	b) position		
	oriefly what we		
	b) inclined		
	elchair to most		
at .	b) road		*
13) This creative pr	oject shows the	effort exerted by a	group of good
students.			
a) single	b) joint	c) pointed	d) individual
14) My uncle's shop	sells bathroom	such as mirrors an	d towel-rails.
a) accessories	b) accesses	c) tools	d) jewellery
15 The book sugge	ests some ways	to save money. You	should read it.
a) minor	b) unimportant	c) practical	d) invaluable

16 Experts say	mild exercises such as	jogging can	you fit as much as
training har	d.		-
a) stay	b) keep	c) give	d) do
17 Each person	's fingerprints are uniq	ue. The word "unique	e" is the opposite of
the word "	<i>M</i>		
a) common	b) fascinating	c) dull	d) agreed
18 The small co	ompany was successfu	l winning ti	he contract for the ne
Mall.			- 16
a) by	b) to	c) for	d) in
	ry has an impressive		
a) collect	b) collection	c) collective	d) collected
20 The committ	recomn لجنة	nendations to the boa	rd on teachers' pay and
conditions.			
a) followed	b) took	c) did	d) made
21 The new wat	er tank has af	ilter to clean the wate	er in it.
a) remove	b) removal	c) removable	d) removed
22 The aim of th	ne meeting is to	trade between the t	two countries.
a) promote	b) promotion	c) promotional	d) promoted
			room match
the colours of	f the furniture.		
a) for	b) against	c) with	d) at
24 It is said that	Fleming discovered per	nicillin almost by	##(###################################
a) event	b) incident	c) accident	d) option
25 To clean the n	ew office, I've sorted	the papers tha	at can be thrown away
a) at	b) of	c) in	d) out
26 Nour proudly	displayed her certification	te to her parents. The	antonym of the word
"display" is "	# commongoquason 8		
a) show	b) hide	c) uncover	d) invent
27 Have you ever	designed a life	invention?	(Longman
a) changing	b) charger	c) changes	d) challenger
28 Do you think p	planting more trees cou	ıld pollutior	completely? (Longman,
a) add		c) remove	
29 The young ma	n couldn't to b	ouy that expensive m	obile; it was too
expensive for I			(Longman)
	b) afford		
30 The factory	old plastic object	s to make toys for yo	oung children. (Longman)
a) circles	b) removes	c) does	d) recycles



Relative pronouns

ا) تستخدم what كرابط بمعني (ما) وهي تساوي the thing(s) that

مُعل أو ضمير أو اسم لا تعود هي عليه

What

فاعل/فعل

I didn't understand what he had said. (what had been said).
I can't give him (Ahmed) what he needs.

- يمكن أن تكون what أول الكلام.

What makes me angry is that Ahmed always comes late.

٣ تستخدم (which) لتشير إلى جملة كاملة قبلها.

My brother won a valuable prize, which made me happy.

٣ تستخيم whose بدلًا من أشكال الملكية كلما مثل:

The girl with blue eyes is my sister.

The girl whose eyes are blue is my sister.

The man is rich. He has a red car.

The man whose car is red is rich.

The car won the race. Its colour is red.

The car whose colour is red won the race.

٤) لاحظ الفرق بين whose/who's:

who's + v-ing/noun = who is ... who's + P.P. = who has ...

The boy who's running there is my cousin.

The boy whose phone was stolen was furious.

هناك بعض الكلمات تستخدم كاسم وفعل فإذا استخدمت كاسم فإنها تسبق بـ whose (ومن الممكن أن نُعرف أن هذه الكلمات اسم إذا جاء بعدها فعل) مثل:

wish, aim, show, mistake, stay, dream, work, play, like, dislike, end, hope, etc.

The boy whose dream has come true is happy.

I like the stories whose ends are happy.

الأتية: that بعد صيغة التفضيل وبعد الكلمات الأتية:

all - any (thing) - every (thing) - few - little - many - much - no (thing) - none - some (thing)

Is this all that you want me to do?

There isn't anything that we can eat in this house.

This is the best book that I have ever read.

یمکن استخدام (why (for which) کضمیر وصل کالآتی:

I'd like to know the reason why (for which) he decided not to come.

حالات حذف ضمير الوصل

رع اذا كان في محل مفعول به.

The meat was delicious. We ate it yesterday.

The meat (which/that) we ate yesterday was delicious.

The man is my neighbour. I meet him every day.

The man (who/whom/that) I meet every day is my neighbour.

ح) إذا كان بعده مبنى للمجمول نحنف which + v. to be ونضع .P.P.

I still remember the encouragement given to me by my parents. (which was)

ج) إذا كان بعده مبنى معلوم نحذف which/who ونضع v-ing ونضع

The boy sitting beside me is naughty. (who sits/who is sitting)

٤) إذا كان بعده اسم أو اسم موصوف نحذف who/which + v. to be ولا نضع شيئًا:

Hossam Hassan, a famous footballer, won many prizes. (who was)

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

▶ : 1 `The road the two villag	es is very narrow.
a) joined	b) joining
c) which is joined	d) who is joining
2 Why do you blame me for every	thinggoes wrong?
a) which	b) who
c) that	d) what
(3) The first thing I saw when I enter	ed the art gallery was a notice
"Do not touch the exhibits!".	
a) which saying	b) who saying
c) saying	d) that saying
4 The film to see is on TV to	onight.
a) which I've always wanted	b) which I've always wanted it
c) has always wanted	d) I've always wanted it
5 My cousin, thirty this wee	ekend, has bought a house in Port Said.
a) that	b) who's
c) whom	d) whose
	-



100se the correct a	nswer from a, b, c or	d:	
(1) Tom, fri	end lives in Cairo, has	gone on holiday to E	gypt.
a) that	b) whom	c) whose	d) who
2 I saw a friend	I hadn't seen fo	or ages.	
a) whom	b) whose	c) which	d) for whom
3 Sir Arthur Conar	n Doyle, was	a doctor by profession	on, invented Sherlock
Holmes.			
a) whose	b) that	c) whom	d) who
(4) Here's the barbe	r'sI have my	hair cut.	
a) that	b) where	c) whom	d) who
(5) Khalid,	father is a mechanic,	has just repaired our	r car.
a) whose his	b) who	c) who's	d) whose
6 In the summer h	holidays, most	people take their h	olidays, seaside towns
are usually very	busy.		
a) when	b) which	c) that	d) whose
7 The company,	is in Helwan,	employs 1,000 emp	loyees.
a) where	b) what		
(8) Judy, fa	ather works for a m	ulti-national compa	ny, often travels abroad
with her family.			
a) who	b) whose	c) who's	d) that
9 They treated the	poor man rudely,	made me a	ngry.
a) which	b) whom	c) who	d) in which
10) The furniture	by this comp	oany is tasteful and l	asts for a long time.
	b) made		
(11) Ten people,			
a) included		b) which inclu	
c) including		d) who were i	
12 Heba lost the bo	ok har la		19 1 Was gar on W. W. W.
			d) Hent
a) which I lent it	b) which lent	c) who lent	u) Henc

13 The reason	I don't like Ra	amy is because ne is se	insn.
a) where	b) which	c) why	d) whose
14) I don't like ped	ople words	s are so rude.	
a) whose	b) who	c) whom	d) who's
15) The flat	is overlooking th	ne Nile.	•
a) which he bo	ought it	b) he bought	
c) he bought it		d) he buying	
16 No one knew	exactly ha	ppened to cause that to	errible acciden
a) which		b) who	
c) that		d) what	
17 I didn't buy any	thing because I di	dn't see I want	ed.
a) which		b) what	
c) that		d) when	
18 The man	this luxurious h	ouse is very modest.	
a) owned		b) owns	
c) who is owne	d	d) owning	
19 My teacher is a	person		
a) who everybo	dy likes him	b) everybody like:	s him
c) everybody likes		d) that everybody	likes him
20 I work for a com	pany		
a) what exports	clothes	b) exporting cloth	es
c) whose export	s clothes	d) exports clothes	
21 Which one of th	e following senten	ces is grammatically inc	orrect?
a) Look! That's th	e boy the teacher p	unished.	
b) Look! That's th	ne boy who the teach	her punished.	
c) Look! That's th	e boy punishing by	the teacher.	
d) Look! That's th	e boy punished by t	he teacher.	
22 I bought a lapto	D		
a) which it has go	ot a Chinese-English	dictionary built in	
b) whose Chinese	e-English dictionary	built in	
c) got a Chinese-	English dictionary bu	uilt in	
	a Chinese-English di		
5 Unit 12			

which one of the	following sentence	es is grammatically correct?	!	
a) The pyramids, v	wnich we visited ye:	sterday, are very old.		
b) The pyramids v	which we visited the	em yesterday are very old.		
c) The pyramids to	o which are very old	d were visited yesterday.		
a) The pyramids,	that we visited yest	erday are very old.		
Which one of the	following sentence	es is grammatically correc	t?	
a) I spoke to the a	assistant which deal	ls with complaints.		
b) I spoke to the	assistant who deals	with complaints.		
c) I spoke to the a	assistant dealt with	complaints.		
d) I spoke to the	assistant deals with	complaints.		
Which one of the	e following sentend	ces is grammatically incor	rect?	
a) Mr Ahmed in v	whose car we go to	work is very generous.		
b) Mr Ahmed wh	ose car we go to w	ork is very generous.		
c) Mr Ahmed wh	ose car is new is ve	ry generous.		
d) Mr Ahmed wh	o has a new car is v	very generous.		
26 Lion of the Deser	t, is abou	t a brilliant Bedouin lead	er, Omar al-M	ukhtar,
is an epic 1980 h	istorical war film.			(Longman)
a) whose	b) which	c) who	d) whom	
27) I highly apprecia	te the sales mana	geryesterday; h	e is very sensi	ble and
flexible.				(Longman)
a) who I met him	1	b) that I met him		
c) I met him		d) I met		
28) he says	is really logical; y	ou should trust him.		(Longman)
a) What	b) which	c) what's	d) whose	
29 The mobile phon	ies in Ci	hina are sold in a lot of co	ountries all ov	ver
the world.				(Longmar
a) producing		b) are produced		
c) produced		d) which produc	ed	
^	I work in pr	oduces high quality cot		(Longmo
a) which	i **••ik iii, pi	b) that		,
•		•		
c) where		d) what		

Test yourself



Part 2 (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary			
1 . The v	was carried out by a te	am of surgeons at K	asr Al Aini Hospital.
a) operation	b) process	c) argument	d) quarrel
2. The new book	k puts the events of th	ne 1919 Revolution i	n their proper historic
and social	097000270000 8		
a) chapters	b) divisions	c) novels	d) contexts
3 This water pa	rk isn't really a suitable	e for a child	ren's show as it may b
dangerous.			
a) scenery	b) position	c) venue	d) sign
4: The young co	uple were very excited	l when their baby firs	stacross the floor
a) dug	b) flew	c) cried	d) crawled
5 You can	healthy by eating v		
a) stay	b) pass	c) save	d) rescue
6 Few people ur	nderstand the complex	k issues of environme	ental science.
The adjective	"complex" is similar in	meaning to "	BP W
a) simple	b) complicated	c) clear	d) fragile
	gives local artists an o		
	b) improve		
8 Youssef Shahe	ena new style o	f films that are repea	ated by his colleagues.
a) created	b) consumed	c) affected	d) recognised
9 The medical co	ompany uses animals i	n tests for s	ome of its drugs.
	b) history		
10 The governme	nt has made a big	to tackle the pr	oblem of poverty.
a) effort	b) attack	c) fight	d) right
11 My little daugh	ter always prefers yog	hurt with a	. flavour especially
strawberry.	red ing		
	b) fruity	c) spicy	d) meaty
	s in the shampoo will		
140	b) destroy		
	ll bein custor		
	b) applied		d) offered
e Pr.	es were given the		
m4	_	c) necessity	d) option
-,	-,	-,	-, op., o.,

the competition. a) moved	b) motivated	c) removed	d) described
t anguage			
I study four langu	lages,is a lot	for me to learn.	
a) that	b) who	c) which	d) what
The teacher	ی wno I had a tutorial تعلیمیه b) whom	last week explains دورة	things really clearly.
a) that	b) whom	c) to whom	d) with whom
A stamp is somet	thingon a let	ter if you want to sen	d it.
			d) putting
show me	you've got in your h	and.	
- 1 14/01/01	LJ) VV 103-L	CIWDOS	d) that
She's the teacher	came to our	school last week.	
-\whom	D) Muose	C) where	d) who
The meat	yesterday was delic	ious.	
nating	D) Which are	c) eaten	d) which eaten
This is the hotel .	rooms have a	view of the sea.	
a) which	b) whose	c) who's	d) where
That house,	was sold yesterda	y, is 200 years old.	
a) which	b) whose	c) where	d) that
A racket is somet	hing to hit a	ball when you play to	ennis or badmintor
a) which you use	b) which you use it	c) you use it	d) b and c
Arthur Conan Do	oyle, wrote	the Sherlock Holmes	stories, was born
Edinburgh.			
	b) whom	c) who	d) that
	over there, has a deg	ree in biology.	
a) who standing		c) stands	d) is standing
	ew bag, but I couldn'		
	b) whose	c) that	d) what
04/ 1111111	my grandparents		- /
	b) where		d) whose
	out the courageous		•
•	b) what		
-, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -		c) which	d) whose
	ollowing sentences	-	correct?
a) This is the dress i	my mother has mad		
	1 4 1		
b) This is the dress	which my mother has who my mother has		



Lessons 5 & 6





المراجعة الشرح والتدريبات س اردوع اماحق المسارات.

A report about an experience تقرير عن تجربة عملية

Imagine that you attended a three-day course about how to become a young entrepreneur. The organisers have asked you to write a report on your experience.

Plan your report. Your report should:

- outline what the course involved and how it was organised.
- explain what was good for you.
- make recommendations for how the course could be improved.
- say if you would recommend the course or not.

Report on the Young Inventor's Competition

Introduction: The purpose of this report is to describe my experience with the three-day course about how to become a young entrepreneur at the Centre for Leader Preparation in Helwan.

The organisation: I live in Alexandria. I took part in a competition for young people who have ideas or inventions that could be used as the basis for a business. I was chosen for the course with some other young people. The organisers arranged our accommodation at a youth hostel near the centre and there were good lectures with practical ideas about the course.

Suggested improvements: Although it was great to be part of this course, one thing was missing. In my opinion, the course organisers should have invited some businessmen who can support and help the best young people to start a new business.

Conclusion: Overall, I had a really positive experience and I would really recommend taking part in such courses. In my view, this may lead to good results for the participants and our country.



Skills Exercises

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A Yugoslavian nun(1), Mother Theresa, first came to India to teach young girls from wealthy Indian families. However, in her travels around the country, she saw how the poor Indian people lived. There were homeless⁽²⁾ people living in the streets. Some were too poor to feed(3) themselves and died of starvation(4).

No one in the country who could help them did anything for these poor people. She felt determined(5) to do something to help.

She realised that this was the job that God wanted her to do, so she left her highly paid job to help the poor in India. At first, it was hard for her. She did not have much support⁽⁶⁾. Whatever little food and money she had, she gave them to those who came to her for help. No one was ever turned away from her doorstep(7).

She went around the city looking for the homeless and starving and took them off the streets. When the people in the area saw how hard she was trying to help their own people, they felt ashamed(8). They wanted to follow her example. They donated food and money to help the poor. With more support from the community⁽⁹⁾, she set up many homes all over India. Soon, she was known all over the world as the savior(10) of the poor.

Choose the corre	ect answer from a, b, c or	a:	
(1) Where was Me	other Theresa from?		
a) Europe.		b) Africa.	
c) Asia.		d) South America.	
2) It seemed tha	t the people in India had.	hearts before	re Theresa's arrival
a) kind	b) gentle	c) caring	d) cruel
(3) "No one was e	ver turned away from he	doorstep" means	
a) no one cam	e to her house for help		
b) she didn't le	t anyone leave without ha	elp	
c) she didn't he	elp all those who came for	help	
d) no one came	e to support her		
4) The phrase "ha	ve nothing to eat" is the	synonym of "	## ***********************************
a) ashamed	b) support	c) starving	d) homeless
10			



- 5 Mother Theresa's original job was . a) helping homeless people living in the streets b) fighting starvations and poverty c) teaching young girls from wealthy Indian families d) donating food and money to help the poor 6 Mother Theresa determined to help the poor because a) she had a lot of money b) she realised that this was the job God wanted her to do c) they were in India d) they loved her 7. The work of helping the poor didn't start off well because a) there were no more poor people b) she travelled and left them c) most of them became rich d) she didn't have much support 8 Mother Theresa was known ... a) only in India b) all over the world c) in Europe d) all over Asia (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation: ▶ 1 Scientific research proved that there are different kinds of food which have a great
 - effect on preventing the elderly from having cancer, such as garlic and cabbage م البيت الأبحاث العلمية أن هناك أنواعا متنوعة من الأغذية لها تأثير كبيرعلى منع كبار السن من الإصابة بالسرطان مثل
 - ﴿ أَيْتُ البحث العلمي أن هناك أنواعا عديدة من الغذاء لها تأثير كبير على حماية كبار السن من السرطان مثل الثوم والكرنب. م) لقد تم إثبات أن بالبحث العلمي هناك أنواع عديدة من الأطعمة لها الركبير على حماية كبار السن من السرطان مثل
 - ام) أثبتُ البحث العلمي أن هناك أنواعا مختلفة من الطعام ليس لها تأثير كبير على تجنب كبار السن من الوقاية من السرطان 2: The essence of good manners is consideration for other people. You cannot help
 - admiring decent people who naturally think of others and help them with good will. إن جوهر الأخلاق الحميدة هو الاعتبار بالآخرين فلا يمكننا المساعدة في الإعجاب بالناس اللائقين الذيبن براعون الآخرين
 - ويساعدونهم بإرادة صادقة. إن أساس الخلق الحميد هو الاهتمام بالأخرين فيمكنك المساعدة في الإعجاب بالناس اللائقين الذين لا يهتمون بالأخرين ويساعدونهم بعزيمة صادقة
 - إن أصل الخلق الحميد هـ ورعاية الآخرين فيمكننا التوقف عـن الإعجاب بالناس المحترمين الذيــن يهتمون بالأخرين ولا يساعدونهم بعزيمة حميدة.
 - إن جوهـ را لأخـلاق الحميدة هو الاهتمام بالأخرين فلا يمكنك التوقف عن الإعجاب بالناس المحترميـن الذين يهتمون بالأخرين ويساعدونهم بحسن ثية.
 - (3) Encouraging young inventors can provide us with suitable technological solutions for our problems. These inventors can be the hope for a better society in Egypt.
 - إلى مكننا تشجيع المحترعين الصغار بالحلول التكنولوجية المناسبة مع شكوكنا وقد لا يكون من هؤلاء المحترعين الأمل
 - ل) بمكن أن يزودنا تشجيع المخترعين الصغار بالحلول التكنولوجية المنطابقة لشكوانا وقد يكون من هؤلاء المخترعين الأمل لمجتمع أفضل في مصر.
 - ۵) تشجيع المخترعين الصغاريستطيع أن يوفر الحلول التكئ
 - أن تشجيع المخترعين الصغاريمكن أن يزودنا بالحلول التكنولوجية المناسبة لمشكلاتنا وقد يكون مؤلاه المخترعون الأمل لمجتمع أفضل في مصر.

- 4) Egyptian investors and businessmen have a great responsibility to finance new inventions. This can lead to great progress for Egypt and reasonable economic benefits for them.
 - و) يمتنك المستثمرون ورجال العمل المصريون مسئوليات كبيرة لتمويل المشروعات الجديدة وهذا قد يؤدى إلى تطور كبير
 - b) لدى المستقمرين ورجال الأعمال المصريين مستولية كبيرة لتمويل الاختراعـات الجديدة وهذا قد يؤدى إلى تقدم كبير
 - المستندرون ورجال الأعمال المصريون يمتلكون مسئولية كبهرة تجاه الاستكشافات الجديدة وهذا قد يؤدى إلى تمو كيد لمصر ومنافع مائية معقولة لهم.
- ام المستثمرون ورجال الأعمال المصريون بمثلكون مسئولية كبيرة تجاه تمويل المخترعين الجدد وهذا قد يؤدى إلى تقدم عظيم لمصر منافع واقتصادية معقولة لهم. مر منافع واقتصادية معقولة لهم. Some experts believe that the coming decades will witness a shortage of food as
- a result of overpopulation. Genetic engineering is one of the solutions to this problem. عنقد بعض الخبراء أن العقود القادمة ستشهد نقصا في الغذاء نتيجة للزيادة السكانية وتعتبر الهندسة الوراثية إحرارية الحراثية إحرارية المراثية إحرارية المراثية إحرارية المراثية إحرارية المراثية إحرارية المراثية المراثية
 - b) بؤمن بعض الحمراء بأن العقود القادمة ستشهد زيادة في الغذاء نتيجة لعدد السكائي وتعد الهندسة العمرانية أحد حلول هذه العشريان
 - أ. قد بمنفد بعض الخبراء أن العقود القادمة ستشهد نقصا في الأغذية نتيجة للسكان والهندسة الوراثية من أحد حلول هذه العشكالة
 - d) يظن بعض الخبراء أن العقود القادمة ستشهد انتقاص في الغذاء بسبب الزيادة السكانية وتعد الهندســـة المعمارية إحر

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- 8 تعد كثير من المنظمات برامج خاصة لتدريب الشباب على أن يكونوا رواد أعمال صغارًا وأن يبدءوا مشبروعاتهم الصغيرة وخاصة تلك التي ترتبط بالتكنولوجيا الحديثة والتي لا تحتاج إلى استثمارات كبيرة.
- a) Many organisations count special programmes to projects, young people to be young businessmen and start their small projects, especially those which are joined with modern technology and don't need big investments.
- h) Many organisations prepare special programmes to train young people to be young entrepreneurs and start their small projects, especially those which are connected with modern technology and don't need big investments.
- c) Many organisations get ready for special programmes to practise young people to be young businessmen and start their small projects, especially those which are connected with modern technology and don't need great investments.
- d) Many organisations number special programmes to exercise young persons to be young entrepreneurs and start their small projects, especially those which are contacted with modern technology and don't need big investments.
- 7 يشكل الوالدان شخصية أبنائهم منذ بداية طغولتهم، فهم يعلمونهم القيم والعادات وأيضا يشاركونهم الاهتمامات والألعاب ويطورون الروابط العاطفية معهم.
- a) Parents form their sons and daughters' character from the beginning of their childhood. They provide them the values and hobbies as well, take part with them interests and plays and develop the sensitive ties with them.
- b) Parents form their sons and daughters' character from the beginning of their childhood. They teach them the values and habitats as well, participate them importance and games and develop the emotional contacts with them.
- c) Parents form their sons and daughters' character from the beginning of their childhood. They teach them the values and habits as well, share them interests and games and develop the emotional ties with them.
- d) Parents frame their sons and daughters' character from the start of their childhood. They acquire them the values and habits as well, share them interests and plays and develop the sensible connections with them.

والمنافذ المنافذ الصحية وممارسة التعرينات بانتظام من أهم وسائل الوقاية من الأمراض؛ لأن ذلك يدعم والمنافذ الذي يدعم والمنافذ الأن ذلك المنافذ الأن المنافذ الأمراض؛ لأن ذلك المنافذ المنافذ الأمراض؛ ومناعة الذي يستطيع مقاومة الأمراض؛ بأنه المناعة الذي يستطيع مقاومة الأمراض. معار المناعة الذي يستطيع

- a) Doctors assert that a health life and doing exercises regularly are one of the most important ways which protects diseases. That's why this helps the immune system which can prevent diseases.
- b) Doctors reassure that a healthy life and practising exercises regularly are the most important ways which avoids diseases. That's because this supply... the immune system which can fight illnesses.
- c) Doctors assure that a health life and practising exercises regularly are one or the most important ways which prevents diseases. That's why this supportthe immune system which can avoid illnesses.
- d) Doctors assert that a healthy life and practising exercises regularly are arnow. the most important ways which prevents diseases. That's because this support the immune system which can resist diseases.

و نهجت الأزمات المختلفة التي مر بها العالم إلى أهمية الاكتفاء الذاتي وخاصة في مجال الغذاء؛ لأنها أدت إلى تعطل النقل وزيادة الأسعار بشكل كبير.

- a) The various disasters the world has experienced, have alarmed out the importance of self-efficiency, especially in the field of food. That's as it less to transport disruptions and a significant decrease in prices.
- b) The various crises the world has experienced, have alerted to the importance of self-sufficiency, especially in the field of food. That's because it led to transport disruptions and greatly increased prices.
- c) The various crises the world has passed through, have pointed out the importance of self-sufficiency, particularly in the department food. That's because it led to transport disruptions and a significant rise in prices.
- d) The various disasters the world has experimented, have pointed out the importance of self-efficiency, especially in the field of food. That's because it lear to transportation disruptions and a decrease in prices.

10 كان لاتخاذ الإجراءات الاحترازية في مواقع العمل في المشــروعات القومية الكبري أثر في اســـتمرار العمل فيها مما ساعد قطاعا كبيرا من الشعب المصري،

- a) Making appropriate measures in setting up sites of the great international projects had an effect on the continuing of work in them. This helped a big sector of the Egyptian people.
- b) Having precautionary measurements in work sites of the great national projects had an effect on the continuing of work in them. This helped a big sector of the Egyptian nation
- c) Taking precautionary measures in building sites of the great national projects had an effect on the continuing of work in them. This helped a big sector of the Egyptian people
- d) Doing necessary measurements in work sites of the great local projects had an effect on the continuing of work in them. This helped a big sector of the Egyptian nation.

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"How can we encourage young inve	entors to ge	et bett	er?"		
lused more than lused the right structure.	l used a topic sentence.	بېر	I wrote the conclusion.	w	I used the right punctuation.
294\ linit 12	100000000000000				



	nan is a suppor	ter of sports and he	is the spansor of
some young a			
	b) passionate		
There should b	e more laws to enhance	environmental and	wid'e
in Egypt.			
a) imagination	b) convention	c) conservation	d, connection
My friend won	the first prize in the art	at the univ	ersity.
a) compilation	b) accommodation	c) consolidation	d, competition
4 The young ma	n is wanted by the police	e as a/anto	o the murder.
	b) device		
5) Students must	be taught to do their be	est to their	goals in life.
a) do	b) achieve	c) set	d) arrive
6 Much of the cr	ime in this area is related	d to drug abuse. The	synonym of
the word "relat	ed" is "".		
a) separate	b) defective	c) associated	d) delayed
7) They have three	e sons, are livir	ng abroad.	
a) who	b) that	c) which	d) whose
All the students	to organise a	picnic were discour	aged when they sa
the dark clouds.			
a) wish	b) wishing	c) whished	d) are wished
This is the restau	irant I usually	go for my meals.	
a) to which	b) which	c) at which	d) in which
The boys	lives were rescued by	y the policemen are	fine now.
a) who	b) who's	c) which	d) whose
Confusing topics	are well-expr	essed can be under	stood.
a) who	b) that	c) where	d) when
The questions	in the exam wer	e specially chosen.	
a) asking	b) which asked	c) asked	d) that ask

Al-Adwaa Test

295

13	Shakespeare,	, most of p	lays were adapted for o	inema, is still admire	d
	by many.				_
	a) whose	b) his	c) who's	d) who	
14	We stayed in	a hotel			
	a) where ever	ry room had a broadt	oand connection		
	b) which ever	ry room had a broadb	oand connection		
	c) that every r	room had a broadbar	nd connection		
	d) every room	had a broadband co	onnection		
15	The bike	gears are excell	ent is expensive.		
	a) what	b) which	c) that	d) whose	
-		_			

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

What is an ideal(1) holiday for one person may be a very unpleasant one for another. The sportsman likes a kind of holiday which his lazy friend would find worse than his daily work; while the lazy man's ideal holiday would leave the sportsman quite unsatisfied.

If I were allowed to choose my own holiday, I would go on a voyage in a modern passenger ship with a swimming pool.

Even if the sportsman and his lazy friend came with me, they would both be happy; one would have plenty(2) of games and swimming; the other could sit in a comfortable⁽³⁾ chair all day, looking at the sea and drinking lemonade. On a ship, one can do as one likes, when one likes. If one day I find an interesting book in the ship's library, I can spend the whole day reading it, and nobody will stop me. Perhaps the next day I shall want some exercise. Well, then I can play games with passengers until I am hot and sweating(4) and ready for a bath. I can go and sleep in my cabin at any time of the day or night, I can get cheap drinks during most of the day, and I can eat as I like, choosing among a variety⁽⁵⁾ of foods.

But perhaps the greatest pleasure of a sea holiday is coming to new ports in strange lands, and going ashore for a few hours to see strange places, eat strange foods and hear a strange language spoken around us. Whenever I think of my ideal holiday, it is the picture of a mysterious⁽⁶⁾ foreign city that comes to mind.



(2) وفرة/كثرة

a) playing garr	162	b) reading books	
c) eating much	nfood	d) sleeping early	
The utmost pl	easure of a sea holiday	is	
a) coming to n	ew states	b) coming to new	harbours
c) meeting peo	ople	d) going shopping	
The underline	d word <u>one</u> refers to	************	
a) the lazy mar)	b) the passenger	
c) the sportsma	an	d) anyone	
19 The best title to	o this text is "	•	
a) Sportsmen		b) Lazy people	
c) A passenger	ship	d) An ideal holiday	<i>f</i>
one of the follo	owing isn't mentioned	in the passage:	***************************************
a) Coming to ne	ew ports in strange lan	ds is an enjoyable moi	ment
b) A voyage in a	a modern passenger sh	ip with a swimming p	ool would suit the
sportsman ar	nd his lazy friend		
-,	ems to like the sea		
	modern passenger sh		
21) The writer seem	s to be conc	erning trying foods.	
a) adventurous		c) selfish	d) worried
22 The antonym of	the word "unsatisfied	l" is "	
	b) disappointed		d) unconvinced
The writer likes t	to be on a sh	ip to enjoy his voya	ge.
a) in company	b) alone	c) lonely	d) single
4 Choose the corre	ect Arabic translation:		
- Opposing terro	orism has been tried b	by many countries a	round the world. Yet,
terrorists are st	till getting support fro	om various organisa	tions to achieve their
illegal goals in	many countries.		
	م ومع دُلك لا يزال الإرهابيون لا بحص	لبل العديد من الدول في العالم. و	a) معارضة الإرهاب تمت من ق
	-	بدافهم غير القائونية في العديد و	

لم تجاول العديد من الدول حول العالم مناهضة الإرهاب، ولذلك لا يزال الارهابيون لا يحصلون على الدعم من المنظمات

ح) لقيد جريت العديد من الدول حول العالم أن تتوقف عن معارضة الإرهاب. ومع ذلك، لا يـزال الإرهابيون يحصلون على

ل قد حاولت العديد من الدول حول العالم مناهضة الإرهاب. ومع ذلك ، لا يزال الإرهابيون يحصلون على الدعم من مختلف

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

A sportsman is fond of

المختلفة لتحقيق أهدافهم المشروعة في العديد من البلدان،

المنظمات لتحقيق أهدافهم غير القانونية في العديد من البلدان.

لمسائدة من المنظمات المختلفة لتحقيق أهدافهم القانونية في العديد من البلدان

25 Choose the correct English translation:

. ثشتهر مصر بكثير من الأماكن الرائعة التي تجذب السائحين من جميع أنحاء العالم. لو أحسنا استغلالها لأصبحنا من أغنى الدول بسبب العملة الصعبة التي يمكن أن نحصل عليها من السائحين القادمين لمصر.

- a) Egypt fames for many amazing views that bring tourists from all over the world. If we use them well, we would have become one of the richest countries because of the hard coins that we can take from tourists going to Egypt.
- b) Egypt is knowing for many amazing places that make tourists visit from all over the world. If we exploited them well, we would become one of the richest countries because of the hard currency that we can give from tourists visiting to Egypt.
- c) Egypt is famous for many amazing places that attract tourists from all over the world. If we exploited them well, we would become one of the richest countries because of the hard currency that we can get from tourists coming to Egypt.
- a) Egypt is famous for many amazing areas that attack tourists from all over the world. If we make good use of them well, we would have become one of the richest countries because of the hard coins that we can get from tourists watching Egypt.

26 Answer the following questions:

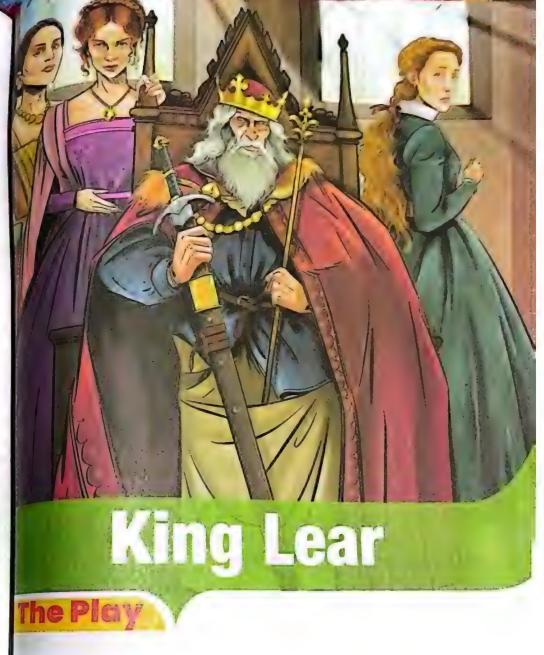
- 1. If you were Edgar, would you fight and kill your own brother? Why?
- 2. Who do you think the most hateful female character in the play is?
- 3. What do you think of the end of the play?

27	Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRE	OAND EIGHTY (180) words on the following

"How can universities play a role in providing us with technological solutions for our problems?"

for our problems?"

المواحد والتدريبات للطلب المالية المالية



Act III, Scenes v-vii

Vocabulary

arrest	يقبض على	madness	بنون/حماقة
authority	تفويض/سلطة/نفود	prove	يثبت
betray	يخون/يفضح/يفشي سرأ	punish	بيتاعي
carriage	عربة تجرها الخيول	rest	استراحة/راحة
cruel	قاسى القلب	revenge	انتقام/ثأر/يثأر/ينتقم
cure	یعا <i>لچ یشفی یند</i> اوی	spy	خاسوس
deceive	يخدع/يضلل	stupid	ربذارقما
enemy	عدو	thief	لمن
guilty	مئذنب	traitor	خائن
interrupt	يقاطع	trust	ثقة/يقق
kneel	يركع/يجثو على ركبتيه	truth	حقيقة
loyalty	إخلاص/وفاء	wound	جرح ايجرح

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

stand for	ينوب عن/يدافع عن	take revenge for	ينتقم اـ
get rid of	يتخلص من	pick up	يلتقط



In Gloucester's Castle. Cornwall enters with Edmund.]

cornwall: Listen, Edmund. I'll have my revenge before I leave Gloucester's house.

EDMUND: I'm sorry, Cornwall, because the truth is so sad. This is the letter that my father Gloucester told me about. It proves that he's a spy, and that he's writing to the King of France. Oh, I wish he weren't guilty! It's very difficult for me to discover this terrible truth.

cornwall: We'll go and see Regan.

EDMUND: If the letter is true, you have work to do to stop him.

CORNWALL: If it is true or false, it has made you the next Duke of Gloucester. Find your father and then we can arrest him.

EDMUND: [To himself.] If I find him helping the King, Cornwall will think he is even more guilty.

[To Cornwall.] I'll continue to show you my loyalty⁽³⁾, although it hurts me to do this to my father.

CORNWALL: I trust you, Edmund, and you'll find me to be a better father than he is. [They exit.]

Act III, Scene vi

[Gloucester enters.]

GLOUCESTER: My friend, where's the King?

KENT: He's here, sir; but be quiet, he's sleeping.

GLOUCESTER: Good friend, I've heard that there's a plan to get rid of ⁴ him. There's a carriage⁽⁵⁾ waiting for you; help the King into it and drive to Dover, where you'll find people to help you. Go now. If you wait half an hour, you may both be killed. Follow me.

KENT: [To Lear.] You're sleeping now. This rest might help you, although it will be difficult to cure (6) your madness(7).

[To the Fool.] Come, help me to carry the King.



(7) جنون/حماقة

(5) عربة تجرها الخيول

(3) إذلاص/وفاء(4) بتخاص من

(1) انتقام/شار (2) شت

King Lear

GLOUCESTER: Hurry up! We must leave now.

[They all exit except for Edgar.]

EDGAR: The poor King! His children have done to him what my father has done to me! [He exits.]

Act III. Scene vii

[In Gloucester's Castle. Cornwall, Regan, Goneril, Edmund and Servants enter.]

CORNWALL: Goneril, send a message to your husband Albany and show him this

letter. The French army has arrived in England.

[To the Servants.] Find the traitor(1), Gloucester.

REGAN: Arrest him now! [Some of the Servants exit.]

CORNWALL: Leave him to me. Edmund, stay with Goneril. You shouldn't see what we'll do to your father, the traitor. Goodbye, my dear Goneril. Goodbye, Edmund, the new Duke of Gloucester.

[Oswald enters.] Where's the King?

OSWALD: The Duke of Gloucester has taken him away, sir. About thirty-five of his soldiers have gone with him. They're going to Dover, where they say they have some powerful friends.

CORNWALL: Get horses for Regan. Goodbye Edmund.

[Goneril exits with Edmund, and Oswald.]

Go and find that traitor, Gloucester. Bring him to us like a thief.

The ot her Servants exit.

I can't kill Gloucester because I don't have the authority(2), but I can punish him. And although people won't like this, they can't stop us.

[Gloucester enters, brought in by two or three men.]

Who's there? Is that the traitor, Gloucester?

REGAN: It's him.

CORNWALL: Make him kneel⁽³⁾ in front of me.



(1) خائن

GLOUCESTER: What are you doing? Good friends, you're in my house. Don't do this.

CORNWALL: Make him kneel, I said!

The Servants make him kneel.

gegan: You cruel man. You've deceived your son Edmund. CLOUCESTER: You, my lady, are the one who's cruel, not me.

gEGAN: You are a traitor!

GLOUCESTER: Cruel lady, what are you saying?

CORNWALL: What letters have you recently received from France?

gEGAN: Give us your answer. We know the truth.

cornwall: And what have you planned with the traitors who have recently arrived

in the kingdom?

REGAN: Who have you sent the mad King to? Tell us everything.

GLOUCESTER: Listen, I got a letter that explained what is happening. It came from

someone who is neither a friend nor an enemy(2).

cornwall: That's clever.

REGAN: And untrue.

cornwall: Where have you sent the King?

GLOUCESTER: To Dover.

REGAN: Why have you sent him to Dover? I told you not to help him ...

cornwall: [He interrupts'31 Regan.] Why Dover? Let him answer that first.

GLOUCESTER: Because I didn't want to see his daughters continue to be so cruel to

cornwall: You will never see that! [Picks up a sword.] Come! Fight me!

[Gloucester tries to fight, but Cornwall hits his face with his sword.]

GLOUCESTER: Oh, help me! My eyes!

SERVANT 1: Stop, my lord! Stop now.

cornwall: Stop? Never! You can fight me too.

SERVANT 1: Very well, come on.

[They fight and the servant badly wounds Cornwall.]



3)

ر2. سو

REGAN: [To a soldier.] Give me your sword. A servant will not fight my husband like this! I won't stand for it!(1)

[She takes a sword and kills the servant.]

SERVANT 1: Oh, I'm going to die! [He dies.]

GLOUCESTER: Everything is black now and I can't see! Where's my son Edmund?

You must take revenge for(2) this terrible thing.

REGAN: Don't call for your son Edmund. He hates you. Edmund told us that you

betrayed(3) us. He will not help you.

GLOUCESTER: Oh, I've been so stupid! Edgar is the one I should trust, not Edmundi

REGAN: Throw him out of the palace, and let him find his way to Dover.

[Two Servants help the now blind Gloucester from the stage.]

[To Cornwall.] What's the matter, my lord?

CORNWALL: I've been hurt. Regan! Look at all this blood! Give me your arm.

[Regan helps Cornwall off the stage. They exit.]



(3) خ*ان لخدم*

(2) ينتقم

(1) أن أسمح بـ/لا أتحمل

Questions & Answers

(A) Factual questions:

What did the letter that Edmund showed Cornwall prove?

WB

ماذا اثبت الخطاب الذي أظهره إنموند إلى كورنوال؟ .proved that Gloucester, his father, was a spy and was writing to the King of France

What did Cornwall offer Edmund in return?

باذا عرض كورنوال على إدموند في المقابل

He said that he would become the new Duke of Gloucester instead of his father.

What did Gloucester tell Kent about the King?

اذا قال جلوستر لكينت عن الملك؟

He told him that he had heard a plan to get rid of the King and that he had to take the King, in a prepared carriage, to Dover.

4. What message did Cornwall want Goneril to send to Albany?

ما هي الرسالة التي اراد كورنوال أن ترسلها جونيريل إلى ألباني؟

He wanted her to tell him that the French army had arrived.

5. What did Oswald tell Cornwall about the King's place?

ماذا قال أوزوالد لكورنوال عن مكان الملك؟

He said that the King was taken to Dover with thirty-five of his men.

6. Why couldn't Cornwall kill Gloucester?

لماذا لم يتمكن كورنوال من قتل جلوستر؟

Because he didn't have the authority to do so.

What did Cornwall decide to do to Gloucester?

ماذا قرر كورنوال أن يفعل لجلوستر؟

He decided to punish him as he couldn't kill him.

8. What did Cornwall and Regan accuse Gloucester of?

بماذا اتهم كورنوال وريجان جلوستر؟

They accused him of being a traitor and that he was receiving letters from the King of France.

9. What happened in the fight between Cornwall and Gloucester?

ماذا حدث في القتال بين كورنوال وجلوستر؟

Cornwall hit Gloucester's face with his sword.

He hit him on his eyes.

11. Why did the servant fight Cornwall? What was the result?

لماذا حارب الخادم كورنوال؟ ماذا كانت النتيجة؟

Because he defended Gloucester. The servant badly wounded Cornwall.

12. What did Regan do to defend her husband?

ماذا فعلت ريجان للدفاع عن زوجها؟

She took a sword from one of the soldiers and killed the servant.

Cod For

13. What did Gloucester realise when Regan told him what Edmund had done?

اندا أدرك جلوستر عندما أخبرته ريجان بما فعله إدموند؟

He realised that he had been tricked by Edmund and that he had to trust his elder son Edgar.

(B) Critical Thinking Questions:

1. If you were Edmund, would you try to prove that your father is a spy?

اه كنت مكان إدموند، هل ستحاول إثبات أن والدك جاسوس؟

No, I wouldn't. Any son should protect and care for his father even if he did anything wrong

2. Is it right that Cornwall and Regan trust Edmund after betraying his father?

مل من الصحيح أن يثق كورنوال وريجان بإدموند بعد خيانة والده؟

No, I don't think so. He could betray them just as he did with his father.

3. What do you think of Cornwall's punishment of Gloucester?

ما رأيك في عقوبة كورنوال لجلوستر؟

I think it was a violent and hard punishment to make a man blind and throw him in the street with no one to care for him.

4. Why do you think the servant defended Gloucester?

لماذا تعتقد أن الخادم دافع عن جلوستر؟

I think he sympathised with him and thought that he received a violent treatment

5. Regan took a sword and killed the servant herself. What does this show about her?
اخذت ريجان سيفًا وقتلت الخادمة نفسها. ماذا يظهر هذا عنها؟

I think it shows that she is a cruel woman that can do anything for her interest.

6. Do you think that Gloucester deserved the punishment he received?

هل تعتقد أن جلوستر يستحق العقوبة التي تلقاها؟

No, I don't think so. He only tried to help the legal King whom he loved and served for many years.

7. If you were Gloucester, would you try to escape instead of confronting Cornwall and Regan? Why?

لو كنت مكان جلوستر، هل كنت ستحاول العرب بدلاً من مواجعة كورنوال وريجان؟ لماذا؟

I would at least try to have some guards or servants to defend me against such an attack.

3. Do you think that Gloucester is really a traitor to help the King?

هل تعتقد أن جلوستر خائن حقًا لمساعدة الملك؟

No, I don't think so. He wanted to help his king and move him to safety.

In your opinion, how else could Gloucester try to help the King?

في رأيك، كيف بمكن لجلوستر أن يحاول مساعدة الملك؟

He could cooperate with the soldiers who wanted to help the King.

. Do you think that Cornwall would be a good king if he ruled over the country?

هل تعتقد أن كورنوال سيكون ملكًا جيدًا إذا حكم البلاد؟

No, I don't think so. He is a cruel man who would show no mercy for his people.



. Choose the corre	ct answer from a, b,	c or d:	
The tests	the new vaccine to b) provided	be effective against th	e virus
a) improved	b) provided rid of my old car	c) ore ned	d) conducted
I was glad to	rid of my old car	when I finally sold it	
a) get	b) give specialwith b	c) take	d) 95
The King has a	special with b	eautiful decoration w	hich he rides in
special ceremoi	nies and occasions,		
a) plane	b) monument	c) carriage	d) statum
A team of docto	ors the child o	of a rare blood disease	
a) planned	b) damaged	c) healed	d) cured
5 The soldier was	a who betray	yed his country by sell	ling military secrets
to the enemy.			
a) traitor	b) commander	c) hero	d) charns
6 I complained to	o the hospital	about the bad behav	iour of the nurse.
a) care	b) treatment	c) authority	d) laboratory
7 The businessm	an had been	by a young man claim	d) laboratory ning to be the son of
a millionaire.		, ,	
a) presented	b) honoured	c) relieved	d) deceived
B It is believed th	nat cats and dogs hav	e always been natura	to each other.
a) mates	b) enemies	c) bosses	d) allie.
	n says that it is better		
any comment.	,		
a) attract	b) consult	c) interrupt	d) rehearse
o If someone doe	sn't like you and want	s to hurt you, this per	son is your
a) sny	b) duke	c) enemy	d) relative
Answer the follow	ving questions:	C) Cherry	C) TCIBUIC
1 Edmund is a gr	eedy nerson who w	ould do anything to	reach his ambitions. Do
you agree? Wh		oute do arrything to	reacti this ambittons. Do
	y. Iiv∈d in his palace ar	nd used his manay (Tornwall and Pogan
	cester violently. Disc		Johnwali arid Kegali
			you do the same? Why?
	urashed for what he		
		gnt to arrange to n	nove the King to Dove
	ch army was? Why?	4 4 4 4 4 4 4	
	har King Lear faced		no really loved and
served him well	. Do you agree? Wh	v?	

7. Both King Lear and Gloucester badly treated the people who really loved them.

8. Do you think that King Lear deserved Gloucester's sacrifice? Why?

Do you agree? Why?

Act IV, Scenes i-iii

Vocabulary

beggar	متسول/شطف	lead	****
bleed	ينزف	lose	N.
bring	ينحضر	nearby	זער
camp	مخيم/يخيم	pretend	يتظاهر
cliff	منددر صدری	remind	ينكر
evil	شر/شرير	rule	محمن
hide	يخفى/يختبئ	storm	قفطد
hold	يمسك/يثبت	sword	فيد
kingdom	مملكة	thoughts	أفكار

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

fall apart	يتداعى ليصبح ممترئا	make mad	يجعل مجنونا
call out	يصرخ	good to	جيد مع
hungry for power	راغب في السلطة		
take revenge of	ينتقم من	angry with	<u>غلضب</u> من



fin the countryside. Edgar enters.]

FDGAR: When you have nothing, there's nothing left to lose.

iGloucester enters led by an Old Man.]

But what's happened? Are my father's eyes bleeding?

GLOUCESTER: Go away, good friend. You can't help me now.

OLD MAN: But I want to help you, sir. You can't see. You can't find your way.

GLOUCESTER: I don't need any eyes. When I had eyes, I couldn't see what I most

needed to see. Oh, my dear son Edgar. I wish I could hold you, then I would say that

Ineeded eyes again!

OLD MAN: Who's there?

EDGAR: [To himself.] Oh, now I feel worse than I ever did before.

OLD MAN: Look, it's poor, mad Tom. Where are you going, Tom?

GLOUCESTER: Is it a beggar in front of us?

OLD MAN: Yes, he's a mad man and a beggar.

GLOUCESTER: I saw a beggar in last night's storm.

He reminded me of my son, but I had no good thoughts about my son then. Now,

however, I know the truth -.

EDGAR: [To himself.] My father is so sad, he has fallen apart 3.1 wish I didn't have to

pretend to be a beggar.

[To Gloucester, his father.] Hello, sir!

GLOUCESTER: Is that the mad beggar?

OLD MAN: Yes, it is, my lord.

GLOUCESTER: If you really want to help me, bring some clothes for this poor beggar.

I'll ask him to take me to Dover.

OLD MAN: He can't help you, sir. He's mad!



حائم

308

1 . .

GLOUCESTER: Please help him.

OLD MAN: OK, I'll bring him the best clothes that I can find, sir.

[He exits.]

GLOUCESTER: Come here, my friend.

EDGAR: Are your eyes OK? They're bleeding . GLOUCESTER: Do you know the way to Dover?

EDGAR: Yes, sir.

GLOUCESTER: Here, take this money. All men should help each other. The rich especially should help the poor. There is a very high cliff in Dover. Take me to the

top of it. You don't need to take me anywhere else. EDGAR: Of course. Poor Tom will take you there.

[They exit.]

Act IV. Scene ii

[In front of the Duke of Albany's Palace. Goneril enters with Edmund.]

GONERIL: Welcome, Edmund.

[Oswald enters.]

Where's my husband, Oswald? I haven't seen him.

OSWALD: Madam, he's inside, but he's changed. I told him that the French army had arrived. He smiled. Then I told him you were coming. His answer was, "That is not good,"

GONERIL: I told him that Gloucester had deceived us and that Edmund had been

good to us. Then he told me that I had got everything wrong.

[To Edmund.] You shouldn't come in. My husband is angry with you. Go back to Cornwall. Get his army together and help him.

[Edmund exits.]

GONERIL: [To herself.] Edmund, Duke of Gloucester, is hungry for post. . . Perhaps I should use him to help me.

OSWALD: Madam, here comes your husband.

[The Duke of Albany enters.]

ALBANY: Oh Goneril, I'm starting to feel frightened of you. You are evil!4



GONERIL: Be quiet! Don't say anything more.

ALBANY: What have you done? You and Regan are tigers, not daughters. You've neen cruel to your father, a kind old man. How could Cornwall allow you to do this?

He has had so much from your father!

GONERIL: Soldiers are here from France, but all you do is sit here and cry. "Oh, why

is he doing this?"Where is your sword?

ALBANY: Look at yourself, Goneril! Evil hides inside you.

(A messenger enters.)

ALBANY: What is the news?

MESSENGER: Oh, my lord, the Duke of Comwall was killed by his servant after he

fought Gloucester, and now Gloucester can't see. ALBANY: Gloucester can't see! Poor Gloucester!

MESSENGER: Regan wants a quick answer to this letter.

GONERIL: [To herself.] In one way, this is good news. Without Cornwall, it's more likely

that I can rule over all the kingdom? . But now Edmund has gone to my sister's.

Idon't want him to help her soldiers. I'll read the letter and send her an answer.

(Goneril exits.)

ALBANY: Where was Gloucester's son Edmund when he fought with Comwall?

MESSENGER: He was travelling here with my lady.

ALBANY: But he's not here.

MESSENGER: No, my lord. I met him travelling back again.

ALBANY: Does he know what has happened?

MESSENGER: Yes, my lord. Edmund told us about his father. Edmund left the house

so that the Duke of Cornwall could punish 'Gloucester.

ALBANY: [To himself.] Gloucester, I thank you for the love you have shown the King.

and I'll take revenge for what has happened to you.

[To the Messenger.] Come here, friend. Tell me what else you know.

[They exit together.]



Act IV, Scene iii

[The French camp(1) near Dover. Kent enters with a Gentleman.]

KENT: Tell me sir, why has the King of France returned so suddenly to his country?

GENTLEMAN: He had something important to do there.

KENT: Did the letters make Queen Cordelia very sad?

GENTLEMAN: Yes, sir. She read them while I was there, and I saw that she was crying

But she was not angry.

KENT: Did she say anything?

GENTLEMAN: Yes, once or twice she called out her father's name. She said, "Sisters, sisters! You left your father outside in the storm! In the night! What have you done?" And after that, she left the room because she wanted to be alone.

KENT: Have you spoken to her since then?

GENTLEMAN: No.

KENT: Well, sir, the poor unhappy King is here, but he does not want to see his daughter.

GENTLEMAN: Why, sir?

KENT: Because he was so unkind to her before. He sent Cordelia to France and gave everything to her cruel sisters. This has made him mad.

GENTLEMAN: The poor man!

KENT: Do you have any news of Albany and Cornwall's armies(3)?

GENTLEMAN: They are nearby.

KENT: Well, sir, I will take you to King Lear.

[They exit.]



(3) جيوش

(1) يخيم (2) عاصفة

Questions & Answers

(A) Factual questions:

1. Why was Edgar horrified when he saw his father in the countryside?

لماذا أصيب إنجار بالرعب عندما رأى والده في الريف!

Because his eyes were bleeding.

2. Who was Gloucester led by? Why?

من کان پرشد جلوستر؟ ولماذا؟

He was led by an old man because he became blind.

3. What did the old man think about Edgar when he saw him?

ماذا كان رأى الرجل العجوز في إسجار عندما رأه؟

He thought that he was a mad poor man.

4. What does Edgar wish he didn't have to pretend to be?

ما الذي يتمنى إيجار ألا يتظلم

He wished not to pretend to be a mad poor man calling himself Poor Tom.

5. What did Gloucester ask the old man to bring for Poor Tom?

ماذا طلب جلوستر من الرجل العجوز أن يحضره لتوم الفقير؟

He asked him to bring Poor Tom some clothes.

6. Where does Edgar promise to take Gloucester?

الى أين وعد إنجار أن يأخذ جلوستر؟

He promised to take him to Dover.

7. Why was Goneril surprised when she arrived at her palace?

لماذا تفاجأت جونيريل عند وصولها إلى قصرها؟

Because her husband, Albany, didn't meet her or Edmund.

8. What did Oswald tell Goneril about her husband, Albany?

ماذا قال أوزوالد لجونيريل عن زوجها ألباني؟

Oswald told her that Albany was displeased with Goneril's and Regan's actions, glad to hear that the French army landed, and sorry to hear that Goneril was returning home.

9. Why didn't Goneril ask Edmund to come in?

لماذا لم تطلب جونيريل من إدموند الدخول؟

Because her husband was angry with him.

10. Why did Goneril intend to use Edmund?

حاذا كانت جونيريل تنوي استخدام إدموند؟

Because she thought that he was hungry for power.

11. What did Albany blame Goneril and Regan for?

اذا لام الباني جونيريل وريجان؟

He blamed them for their bad treatment for their father.

kina Lear

12. What news did the messenger tell Goneril and Albany about?

ما الأخبار التي أخبر بها الرسول جونيريل والباني؟

He told them that the Duke of Cornwall was killed by his servant after he fought Gloucester, and Gloucester became blind.

13. What was Goneril's reaction when she heard the news?

يدا كان رد فعل جونيريل عندما سمعت الخبر؟

She was puzzled. She thought it was good news as she could rule over all the kingdom without Cornwall. However, she feared that Edmund might help her sister.

14. What did Albany ask the messenger about?

من ماذا سأل ألباني الرسول؟

He asked him where Edmund had been when his father was punished.

15. Albany was sad and furious about what Cornwall and Edmund did to Gloucester. Discuss.

كان ألباني حزينًا وغاضبًا مما فعله كورنوال وإدموند بجلوستر. ناقش.

He wanted to thank Gloucester for the love he had shown to the King, and he would take revenge for what had happened to him.

16. Why did the King of France return suddenly to France?

اماذا عاد ملك فرنسا فجأة إلى فرنسا؟

He had something important to do there.

17. How did Cordelia feel when she read the letters about her father's suffering?

كيف كان شعور كورديليا عندما قرأت الرسائل التي تتحدث عن معاناة والدها؟

She felt sad and blamed her sisters for their father's suffering.

18. Where was King Lear taken?

إلى أين تم نقل الملك لير؟

He was taken to the French camp near Dover.

(B) Critical Thinking Questions:

1. If you were Edgar, would you feel sorry for seeing Gloucester blind?

لو كنت مكان إدجار، هل ستشعر بالأسف لرؤية جلوستر أعمى؟

Yes, I would. A good son must be sad if anything happens to his father even if he is angry with him.

2. "Oh, my dear son Edgar. I wish I could hold you, then I would say that I needed eyes again!" What does this show about Gloucester's feelings?

أوه، ابنى العزيز إدجار. أتمنى أن أضمك، ثم سأقول أننى بحاجة إلى عيون مرة أخرى!* مانا يظهر هذا عن مشاعر جلوستر؟ I think it clearly shows that he is resentful مستاء, He realised that he should have trusted Edgar not Edmund,

3. Why, do you think, Edgar wished he didn't have to pretend to be a beggar?

لماذا، في رأيك، تمنى إدجار لو لم يضطر إلى التظاهر بأنه متسول؟

ا think he pitied سنة على his father very much and he wanted to make him get rid of his bad feelings.

Why, do you think, Gloucester asked Edgar, disguised as Poor Tom, to take him to

لماناً. في رأيك طلب ملوستر من إنجار، الذي كان متنكرًا بزي توم المسكين، أن يأخذه إلى دوفر؟ Maybe, he wanted to be near his King. Maybe, he wanted to get away from Goneril and Regan's anger and punishment.

*Edmund, Duke of Gloucester, is hungry for power. Perhaps I should use him to help me." What does this show about Goneril's character?

"العوند موق جلوستر، متعطش للسلطة. ربعا يجب أن أستخدمه لمساعدتي،" ماذا يظهر هذا عن شخصية جوثيريل؟ This shows that she is a greedy person who uses people, whoever they are, to get what she wants.

6. Why do you think Albany began to feel frightened of his wife, Goneril?

لماذا تعتقد أن ألباني بدأ يشعر بالخوف من زوجته جونيريل؟

I think he did so because of her cruel treatment of her father who gave her everything.

7. Albany didn't feel sad about Cornwall's death. Do you agree with him? Why?
لم يشعر الباني بالحزن لوفاة كورنوال. هل توافقه! لماذا؟

Yes, I agree with him. Cornwall was a cruel and ungrateful person.

g. How do you think Albany can take revenge for what has happened to Gloucester? في رأيك كيف يستطيع ألباني الانتقام مما حدث لجلوستر؟

He may try to regain power to the King who can punish his daughters who were bad to him.

9. In your opinion, why did Albany ask the messenger about Edmund?

في رأيك لعادًا سأل ألباني الرسول عن إدموند؟

I think that he expected Edmund to defend and protect his own father.

10. If you were Cordelia, would you feel sad for what happened to the King? Why?

لو كنت مكان كورديليا، هل ستشعر بالحزن لما حدث للملك؟ لماذا؟

Yes, I would. A daughter who loves her father should feel sad about anything bad that might happen to him.

11. In your opinion, was the King right not to desire to see Cordelia? Why?

في رأيك، هل كان الملك على حق في عدم رغبته في رؤية كورديليا؟ لماذا؟

No, he wasn't right. He should at least meet her to ask her to forgive him for his bad treatment.

12. What do you think of Kent's continuous efforts to help the King?

ما رأيك في حمود كينت المستمرة لمساعدة العلك؟

I think these efforts prove that he is loyal to his King although he ordered that Kent should be sent away.

Practice



Act IV, Scenes i-ili

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

•	1	Standing at the far below.	edge of the	, we watched the wa	eves crash on the shore
		a) road	b) avenue	c) cliff	d) desert
	2	A is a l	arge wild animal on ainly lives in Asia.	of the cat family that ha	s orange fur with black
		a) tiger	b) lion	c) wolf	d) crocodile
	3	The prince who	killed his brother	to be king was really hu	ngry power.
		a) with	b) at	c) in	d) for
	4	The hikers will	by the rive	er for the night, and mo	ve on tomorrow,
		a) derive		c) leave	
	5	is pr الجشع Greed		st social of all ti	
		a) demand		c) evil	d) moral
	6	The poor worke	r had to get some	rest or he/she was goin	g to apart.
		a) feel	b) fall	c) fill	d) fool
	7	The little child o	losed his eyes and	dto be asleep.	
		a) pretended	b) protected	c) prevented	d) protested
	8	It is believed that		reat over a hug	
		a) destroyed		b) ruled	
		c) owned		d) disputed	
	9	The sky got dari	k and it looked like	e awas coming	•
		a) fight			d) war
	10			er toys under the bed.	
		a) break	b) hide	c) show	d) prove
		Ab - 6-11			

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 1. Why do you think Gloucester didn't recognize his son?
- 2. If you were Gloucester, would you feel sorry for what you had done to Edgar? Why?
- 3. Do you think that Albany should be frightened of his wife, Goneril? Why?
- 4. In your opinion, why would Albany intend to take revenge for what happened to Gloucester?
- 5. If you were Albany, would you feel angry with Edmund? Why?
- 6. Do you think that Kent should care for the King despite the bad treatment he received from him?
- 7. Cornwall was punished for his violence with Gloucester. Do you agree? Why?
- 8. If you were Edgar, would you tell Gloucester your real identity? Why?
- 9. Why do you think Albany didn't care about the news about the French army?
- 10. If you were Goneril, would you trust Edmund to help you rule over the country?

Act IV, Scenes iv-vi

vocabulary

alive	على قيد الحياة	flat	مسطح امتيسط
climb	يتسلق	foolish	أدمق
the countryside	الريف	mice	خلران
cure	علاج/يعالج	purse	حافظة نقود
dead	ميت	reward	مكلفأة
dress	يلبس	scared	خالف
duty	واجب	steep	شديد الانحدار
edge	حافة	strange	غريب
fall	يسقط	terrified	مرعوب
field	حقل	valuable jewel	جوهرة ثمينة

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

fight for	يحارب من أجل	look up	ينظر لأعلى
get to	يصل إلى	blood runs cold	يخاف
look down	ينظر إلى أسفل	take power	يستولى على السلطة
let go	يترك/يطلق سراح	wake up	يستيقظ



[In the French camp. Cordelia, a Doctor and Soldiers enter.]

CORDELIA: I've heard that my father is now mad. Look for him in every field and

bring him to me.

[An Officer exits.]

Can anyone cure⁽¹⁾ him? I wish I could make him feel better again.

DOCTOR: There is a cure, madam. He needs lots of rest.

CORDELIA: Find him guickly! I don't want him to hurt himself first.

[AMessenger(2) enters.]

MESSENGER: I have some news, madam. The British army is coming here.

CORDELIA: Our French army is ready forwar. Oh dear father, I haven't returned to

England to take power for myself. I only fight for love, and as a duty to my father

[They exit.]

Act IV, Scene v

[In Gloucester's Castle. Regan enters with Oswald. Oswald has a letter.]

REGAN: Oswald, what do you think is in my sister's letter to Edmund?

OSWALD: I don't know, madam.

REGAN: [To herself.] It was foolish to let Gloucester live, although he's blind to.

Wherever he goes, people feel sorry for him and angry with us.

OSWALD: I must give this letter to Edmund.

REGAN: Our army is going tomorrow. Stay with us.

OSWALD: I can't stay, madam. My lady Goneril has told me to return to her.

REGAN: Why would Goneril write to Edmund? Let me open the letter.

OSWALD: Madam, you can't ...



ا علاج/يعالج

REGAN: Listen! My husband is dead and I'm worried that Goneril wants to rule over all of the kingdom. Without a husband, I need the help of a clever man like Edmund. when you see him, give him this.

rshe gives him a letter.]

If you see the blind traitor, remember this: There will be a reward for the man who kills him.

oswALD: If I meet old Gloucester, madam, I'll show you which lady I follow. They exit.]

Act IV, Scene vi

run the countryside near Dover. Gloucester enters with Edgar. Edgar is dressed as a beggar but speaks as himself, not as Poor Tom.]

GLOUCESTER: When will I get to the top of this hill?

FDGAR: You're climbing up the hill now.

GLOUCESTER: But I'm sure the ground is flat (2) here.

EDGAR: No, it's very steep(3). Listen, can you hear the sea?

GLOUCESTER: No, I can't. But I think your voice has changed. You don't speak like

a poor beggar now.

FDGAR: You're wrong. Nothing has changed.

GLOUCESTER: I think that you speak like an important person.

EDGAR: Come on, sir; here's the place. Be careful. It's very high here. The fishermen that walk along the beach look like mice 4 from up here; I can't look down any more, because my blood runs cold⁽⁵⁾, I'm scared that I might fall.

GLOUCESTER: Is it very high? Then put me where you are standing now.

EDGAR: Give me your hand. You are now very close to the edge of the cliff.

[They are on flat ground.]

GLOUCESTER: Let go of my hand ". Here's a purse for you, my friend. Inside the purse is a valuable jewel. Leave me here; say goodbye to me and let me hear you walk away. EDGAR: Goodbye, sir. [To himself.] I hope this will help to cure him of his madness.



🕠 جوهرة ثمينة

GLOUCESTER: I say goodbye to this world, and I only hope that Edgar is alive!

So, goodbye, my friend.

[He falls forward onto the ground.]

EDGAR: Goodbye, sir.

[To himself.] If he had been where he thought he was, he would be dead now.

[To Gloucester in a different voice.] Hello, sir, are you alive or dead? Can you hear me, sir?

[To himself.] He may be dead. No, he's waking up. Who are you, sir?

GLOUCESTER: Go away and let me die.

EDGAR: You aren't bleeding and you can talk. But you've fallen from the top of

a high cliff. It's amazing that you are alive. Say something.

GLOUCESTER: But have I fallen or not?

EDGAR: Yes, you fell from the top of this white cliff. Look how high it is. Look up.

GLOUCESTER: Sadly, I can't. I'm blind.

EDGAR: Give me your arm. Stand up. Can you feel your legs?

GLOUCESTER: I can.

EDGAR: This is very strange. Who was that man that left you on the top of the cliff?

GLOUCESTER: He was a poor beggar.



(1) على قبد الحباة

Questions & Answers

(A) Factual questions:

what did Cordelia ask the soldiers to do concerning her father?

she asked them to look for him in every field and bring him to her. 2. What did the doctor tell Cordelia about her father's health?

مادا أخير الطبيب كورديليا عن صحة واليما!

He told her that he can be cured, but he needed lots of rest.

why did Cordelia return back to Britain with the French army?

لماذا عادت كورديليا إلى بريطانيا مع الجيش الفرنسي؟

she returned back to Britain for love, and as a duty to her father. Mhat was Regan's request to Oswald about Goneril's letter to Edmund?

ملنا كان طلب ريجان من أوزوالد بشأن رسالة جونيريل إلى إدعوند؟

she asked him to let her open the letter.

5. What did Regan give Oswald?

مانًا أعطت ربحان لأوزوالد؟

She gave him another letter to give to Edmund.

6. Why was Oswald determined to kill Gloucester?

لماذا كان أوزوالد مصمماً على قتل حلوست؟

Because Regan told him that there would be a reward for the man who killed him.

7. Where did Edgar take his father, Gloucester?

أين أخَذَ إنجار والده جلوستر؟

He took him to a flat land near a cliff in Dover.

s. What did Edgar tell his father about the place where they are standing?

ماذا قال إنجار لوالده عن المكان الذي يقفون فيه؟

He told him that it was very steep, very high and very close to the edge of the cliff.

a. What did Gloucester give Edgar?

ماذا أعطى جلوستر لإبجار؟

He gave him a purse with a valuable jewel inside it.

10. What did Gloucester do after he said goodbye to Edgar?

ماذا فعل جلوستر بعد أن ودع انجار؟

He fell forward onto the ground, thinking that he was on top of the cliff.

11. Why did Gloucester ask Edgar, disguised as Poor Tom, to take him to a high cliff?

لماذا طلب جلوستر من إدجار، متنكراً بزي توم المسكين، أن يأخذه إلى منحدر مرتفع؟

He wanted to jump over the cliff and kill himself.

12. Why did Edgar change his voice pretending that he found Gloucester at the bottom of a cliff?

لماذا غير إبحار صوته متظاهرًا بأنه وجد جلوستر في أسفل الهاوية؟

He wanted to make his father think that he really jumped off the cliff.

(B) Critical Thinking Questions:

1. Cordelia proved that she really loved her father. Do you agree? Why?

وبنت كورديليا أنها تحبّ والدها حقًا. هل توافق؟ لماذا؟

Yes, I agree. She felt so sad when she heard about the bad treatment of her sister to their father. She came with the French army to help the King.

2. In your opinion, why didn't Oswald agree to let Regan open Cordelia's letter to Edmund?

في رأيك، لماذا لم يوافق أوزوالد على السماح لريجان بفتح رسالة كورديليا إلى إدموند؟ I think he wanted to show loyalty to his lady, Goneril.

3. Why, do you think, both Regan and Goneril asked for Edmund's support?

المائا، في رأيك، طلبت كل من ريجان وجونيريل دعم إدموند؟ After Cornwall's death, he seemed to be the only man who could lead the army and so he would become so powerful if the British army won the war.

4. "If I meet old Gloucester, madam, I'll show you which lady I follow." What did Oswald mean when he said this?

•إنا قابلت جلوستر العجوز، يا سيدتي، فسوف أظهر لك السيدة التي أتبعها. * ماذا كان يقصد أوزوالد عندما قال هذا؟ I think he meant that he was determined to kill Gloucester and get the reward.

5. If you were Oswald, would you really desire to kill Gloucester? Why?

له كنت مكان أوزوالد، هل ترغب حقًا في قتل جلوستر؟ لماذا؟ No, I wouldn't. This would be a big mistake as he would be an enemy to his two sons if he did so.

6. Why, do you think, Edgar deceived his father into making him believe that he really jumped off the cliff?

لماذا، في رأيك، خدم إسجار والده ليجعله يعتقد أنه قفز بالفعل من الهاوية؟ I think this would stop his father from trying to kill himself again.

7. Do you agree with Edgar when he deceived his father? Why?

هل تتفق مع إدجار عندما خدع والده! لماذا؟

No, I don't agree with him. He could tell his father the truth and try to prevent him. from trying to kill himself.

8. "I say goodbye to this world, and I only hope that Edgar is alive." What does this sentence show about Gloucester's feelings?

"أقول وداعًا لهذا العالم، وأمل فقط أن يكون إنجار على قيد الحيَّاة". ماذا تظهر هذه الجملة عن مشاعر جلوستر؟ It shows that he was sorry for what he did for Edgar and he remembered him and wished him well.

9. Do you sympathise with Gloucester? Why?

هل تتعاطف مع جلوستر؟ لماذا؟

Yes, I do. He suffered much as a result of his own son's trickery and his trial to help the King. He became blind and desperate.

10. Why, do you think, Edgar didn't reveal his real identity to his father?

لماذا تعتقد أن إنجار لم يكشف عن هويته الحقيقية لوالده!

I think he wanted to remain disquised to try to revenge himself and his father.



	b) war		d) conference
Look out! The sta	airs are very	and you may fall do	wn.
a) easy	b) straight	c) round	d) steep
My son made us	all nervous by stanc	ling so close to the	of the cliff.
a) middle	b) bottom	c) edge	d) hedge
At the end of the	e fair, the school	go of hundreds	of balloons.
a) make	b) let	c)do	d) get
It would be	to ignore your	elders' advice.	
a) wise	b) foolish	c) intelligent	d) fabulous
Most people are of snakes, although some of them are harmless.			
	b) content		
Winning the ma	itch was just a	for the effort the team had made.	
	b) punishment		
Most bacterial i	nfections can be	with antibiotic	مضادات حيوية ١
a) cured	b) healed	c) caused	d) released
Our neighbour.	the childre	n in their best clothe	es for the party.
a) pleased	b) harmed	c) dressed	d) hit
The children we	re founda	ind well after being	missing for sever
in the forest.			
a) retired	b) straight	c) dead	d) alive
•	ving questions:	•	

- 1. If you were Edmund, who would you support to rule over the country, Regan or Goneril? Why?
- 2. Do you think that Oswald should have let Regan open Goneril's letter to Edmund? Why?
- 3. Should Edgar have told Gloucester his real identity after the trick he played on him? Why?
- 4. Why do you think Gloucester only remembered Edgar before he tried to kill himself?
- 5. If you were Gloucester, would you be easily tricked by Edgar? Why?
- 6. In your opinion, who is worse, Regan or Goneril? Why?
- 7. When he heard the news about Cornwall and Gloucester, Albany only cared about Gloucester. Why do you think he did so?
- 8. Do you think that Gloucester would have tried to kill himself if Edgar had told him about his real identity? Why?

Act IV, Scene vi, continued & Scene vii

Vocabulary

battle	معركة	pocket	-in-
believe	يعتقد/يؤمن	prisoner	سجين
creep	يزحف/يتسلل	prize	جائزة
crime	جريمة	recognise	يتعرف على
drum	طبل	riches	مال/ثروة
judge	قاض	right	سوی/عادی
majesty	فخامة	sense	كلام عاقل
nonsense	كلام فارغ/هراء	stage	خشبة المسرح
patient	صبور/مريض	theatre	مسرح

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

feel one's way	يتدسس طريقه	(be) tempted to	يتم إغواؤه	
take out	يسحب ايخرج	let go of	شلف	
creep up on	يرتفع على/يزحف	punished for	يُعاقب من أجل	

Text

(In the countryside near Dover. Edgar is with Gloucester and King Lear.)

KING LEAR: Did you say that you know my voice, oh man without eyes! Yes, I am the

King! But look at you, what have you done?

GLOUCESTER: Your majesty(1), let me kiss your hand!

KING LEAR: I must clean it first.

GLOUCESTER: Do you not know me, sir?

KING LEAR: I don't know your eyes. Read this letter for me, please.

GLOUCESTER: But I can't see it.

EDGAR: [To himself.] If I read about this in a story, I wouldn't believe it was true. It is so sad.

KING LEAR: Read it!

GLOUCESTER: But look at my eyes!

KING LEAR: Oh, I understand. You want some money first. You have no eyes in your head and no money in your purse. But you understand how things work in this world.

GLOUCESTER: I feel my way.

KING LEAR: But you can see with your ears. We now know that a judge - will punish a poor man's crime⁽³⁾ before a rich man's crime.

GLOUCESTER: Yes, sir.

KING LEAR: Rich men are not punished for the same crimes as a poor man is punished for. Why don't you get some glass eyes and pretend to see things that others do not, like a bad judge!

EDGAR: The King is talking both sense⁽⁴⁾ and nonsense ⁵!

[Gloucester cries.]

KING LEAR: Wait. I know you: your name is Gloucester. You must be patient.

GLOUCESTER: Oh, what a sad day this is!



(5) كلام غارع/هراء

نریمه ۱۳۰ - ۱۳۱ مجامة قنص

Ph

ring Lear

KING LEAR: [He stands on a rock.] This rock is like a stage⁽¹⁾ in a theatre. I'll pretend to creep up on⁽¹⁾ my daughters' husbands and kill them!

[A Gentleman enters with Attendants.]

GENTLEMAN: Ah, there he is! Quick, get him!

[To King Lear.]

Sorry, sir, your dear daughter ...

KING LEAR: What? Am I a prisoner now? Be good to me and I'll reward you.

But I need a doctor. My head is not right.

GENTLEMAN: You shall have anything you want, your majesty. You are the King and we'll do what you say.

KING LEAR: I may still live, then. But you'll need to run to get the reward.

[He exits running. The Attendants run after him. The Gentleman exits.]

GLOUCESTER: Oh, someone kill me before I am tempted to (4) kill myself!

EDGAR: Give me your hand, sir. I'll take you to a place where you'll be safe.

GLOUCESTER: Thank you.

[Oswald enters.]

OSWALD: Look, here's the prize! This man without eyes will make me rich!

[He takes out⁽⁵⁾ his sword.] Get ready to die, you old traitor!

GLOUCESTER: I want to die. I hope you're strong enough to do it.

[Edgar stands between them.]

OSWALD: Who are you? Why are you helping a traitor? Let go of his arm.

EDGAR: I will not let go.

OSWALD: Let go of this man or you'll die too!

EDGAR: Don't come near the old man.

OSWALD: Then take out your sword!

[They fight. Oswald falls.]

OSWALD: Oh, I'm dying! Before you take my purse, give the letters that I'm carrying to Edmund, the Duke of Gloucester. You'll find him with the British army. Oh, goodbye world!

[He dies.]

GLOUCESTER: Is he dead?

EDGAR: Yes. Sit down, sir, and rest. Let's look in his pockets; these letters may be useful. Let's read them.

[He finds a letter and reads it.]



Asheliania (5)

3) سجين مرابعة المارية

2) پرتنع علی

'Remember, Edmund. Do not let Albany win the battle... If you help me, I will give you more power and riches.".

Yours

Goneril!

That evil woman! She wants Edmund to kill her good husband. I will show this letter to the Duke of Albany. It's lucky " that I can tell him of their plan to kill him.

The sound of a drum 4.]

EDGAR: [To Gloucester, his father.] Come, give me your hand. I'll take you to a friend's house.

They exit together.]

Act IV, Scene vii

[A tent⁽⁵⁾ in the French camp. Cordelia enters with Kent, a Doctor and a Gentleman.]

CORDELIA: Please put on some better clothes, Kent.

KENT: I'm sorry, madam, but I must stay in this disguise. You must pretend that you don't know me until I tell you.

CORDELIA: I understand, my lord. [To the Doctor.] How's the King?

DOCTOR: Madam, he's still sleeping.

CORDELIA: My father has become like a child. Please, doctor, try to cure my father, whose children have made him mad.

DOCTOR: If you like, we can wake up the King. He's slept for a long time.

cordelia: You know what's best for him.

[Cordelia and the doctor are standing together in a tent in the French camp. Two servants carry King Lear in on a chair. He's wearing a clean shirt and trousers. He is sleeping.]

poctor: Please, play some music.

cordelia: Oh, my dear father, let my kisses help to make you feel better. My sisters have done you so much damage!

KENT: Kind and dear princess!

cordelia: How could they send your kind face out into a storm? I would even keep an animal inside on a night like that, but you, poor father, had to stay with beggars in old straw. I can t believe you are still alive after all that.

[To the Doctor.] He's waking up. How are you, father? Do you recognise me?



جيمة شعرب عس

هدين ان شوية

Questions & Answers

(A) Factual questions:

1. Where did Gloucester meet King Lear?

أبن التقى جلوستر بالملك لير؟

He met the King in the countryside near Dover.

2. What does King Lear want Gloucester to read for him?

58 ماذا طلب الملك من جلوستر أن بقرأ؟

He asked him to read a letter for him.

3. According to the King, why couldn't Gloucester read?

منقا للملك، لعادًا لا يستطيع جلوستر القراءة؟

Because he wanted money first.

4. Why did Edgar say that the King was talking both 'sense and nonsense'?

لماذا قال إدجار إن الملك كان يتحدث بمزيج من المنطق والهراء؟

Because the King said many sentences which are not related to one other.

5. Who came to take the King? Where was he taking him?

مِن جاء ليأخذ الملك؟ إلي أين كان يأخذه؟

A gentleman with some attendants came to take the King to the French camp to see Cordelia.

6. Where would Edgar take Gloucester?

الى أين سيأخذ إدجار جلوستر؟

He would take him to a place where he would be safe.

7. What did Oswald do when he saw Gloucester?

ماذا فعل أوزوالد عندما رأى جلوستر؟

He rushed to kill Gloucester.

8. How did Edgar defend Gloucester?

كيف دافع إنجار عن جلوستر؟

Edgar fought Oswald and could hurt him badly.

9. What did Oswald ask Edgar before he died?

ماذا سأل أوزوالد إدجار قبل وفاته؟

He asked Edgar to take the letters he had to Edmond at the British army.

10. What did Goneril ask Edmund in her letter?

ماذا طلبت جونيريل من إدموند في رسالتها؟

She asked him to kill her husband in the battle.

11. What did Cordelia ask Kent to do?

ماذا تطلب كورديليا من كينت أن يفعل!

she asked him to wear better clothes.

Why did Kent refuse Cordelia's request of wearing better clothes?

ماذا رفض كينت طلب كورديليا بارتداء ملابس أفضل!

He thought that he had to stay disguised.

13. What did the doctor tell Cordelia about the King?

ماذا قال الطبيب لكورستنا عن الملك!

He told her that he was sleeping and he would be fine.

What did Cordelia think about her sisters' behaviour?

ما رأى كورديليا في سلوك أخواته

She thought that they had been so cruel and this made their father mad.

15. How was the King treated in the French camp?

كيف كان يعامل الملك في المعسكر الفرنسي؟

He was treated with much respect. Two servants carry King Lear in on a chair. He's wearing a clean shirt and trousers.

16. What did Cordelia do when she saw her father sleeping? مادا فعلت كورىيليا عندما رات والدها نائما؟
She kissed him and looked very sad for what her sisters had done to him.

(B) Critical Thinking Questions:

1. "If I read about this in a story, I wouldn't believe it was true. It is so sad." What does Edgar mean by these words?

إذا قرأت عن هذا في إحدى القصص، فلن أصدق أنه صحيح. انه أمر محزن." ماذا يعنى إدجار بهذه الكلمات؟ Ithink that he expresses his shock at the King's mental health.

2. Why do you think the King said that Gloucester needed money to read the letter?
لماذا تعتقد أن الملك قال ان حلوستر بحاجة إلى المال لقراءة الرسالة؟

I think that he meant that nobody did anything good unless he was given a reward just as his two daughters.

3. Why do you think Edgar says that King Lear is talking both 'sense and nonsense'? 58 لماذا تعتقد أن الدغار بقول إن الملك لير يتحدث بمزيج من "المنطق والهراء"؟

The King talked about many things. Some of them were logical whereas others were not.

4. In your opinion, what made Gloucester wish that someone would kill him before he kills himself? في رأيك، ما الذي جعل جلوستريتمني أن يقتله أحد قبل أن يقتل نفسه؟

I think that he was shocked at seeing the King in such a bad condition.

329

5. Do you think that the King went completely mad? Why?

هل تعتقد أن الملك أصيب بالجنون التام؟ لماذا؟

No, I don't think so. I think he was shocked because of his sisters' bad treatment.

6. Edgar proved that he is such a good son that he is ready to sacrifice his life for his father. Do you agree? Why?

اثبت إسجار أنه ابن صالح لدرجة أنه مستعد للتضحية بحياته من أجل والده. هل توافق؟ لماذا؟ He was ready to fight Edgar to protect his father.

7. Why do you think Oswald asked Edgar to give the letters to Edmund?

لماذا تعتقد أن أوزوالد طلب من إنجار أن يعطى الرسائل إلى إنموند؟

In my opinion, he thought that these letters are very important for Edmund and the army.

8. How do you feel about the death of Oswald? Why do you feel like this?

58 ما هو شعورك بشأن وفاة أوزوالد؛ لماذا تشعر بهذا؛

I feel pleased. He was an evil man who wanted to kill a helpless man only for a reward.

9. Why do you think Kent wanted to remain in disguise?

الماذا تعتقد أن كينت أراد أن يبقى متنكراً؟

I think he thought it was better to help the King if he was in disguise.

10. "My father has become like a child." Do you agree with Cordelia when she said this? Why?

"لقد أصبح والدي مثل طفل." هل تتفق مع كورديليا عندما قالت هذا؟ لماذا؟

Yes, I agree with her. He became weak and wanted to be treated so kindly.

Practice Practice Act iv-, Scene vi, continued & Scene vii

ct	oose the corre	ect answer from a, b	, c or d:	
	The se	ntenced the thief to	five years in prison	
	- MILLEI	OHITCOA	and the second second	d) insperior
0	I can't make	of these mode	ern art paintings.	
2	a) test	b) chance	c) sense	d) space
3	In this nice wea	other, I'mto	have a walk along the	beach.
	a) frightened	b) tempted	c) refrained	d) forced
A	We all must wo	ork hard in a unity to	win theagair	nst terrorism.
and in	a) hattle	b) talk	clount	difnera
5	About 1,000 pe	eople marched, beati	ng and carry	ring flags in the parade.
-	a) KIOS	D) CENOS	c) drums	d) phones
6	Most of what h	as been written abo	ut the accident is com	plete and had
	no facts.			
	a) sense	b) nonsense	c) wisdom	d) research
7	Fame and	are two of the mos	t important things the	at young men dream of.
Ė		b) poverty		
8	There are a nur	mber of ways in which	ch the public can help	o the police to fight
	######################################			
	a) manner	b) crime	c) courage	d) dut,
9	The chase ende	ed in a gunbe	etween police and dru	g smugglers معربي المخدرات.
	a) quarrel	b) agreement	c) initiative	d) batt e
10	The young man	n took out the walle	et from his to	pay for the meal he
	invited the hor	meless to.		
	a) detective	b) judge	c) pocket	d) prisoner
) A	nswer the follo	wing questions:		
1	I. Do you think t	hat the King didn't	really know Glouces	ter? Why?
2	. Gloucester see	emed to love the Ki	ng very much. Do yo	u agree? Why?
3	. "I'll pretend to	creep up on my da	ughters' husbands a	ind kill them!" Do you
	think that the	King really wanted	to do what he said?	Why?
4	. "I want to die.	I hope you're stron	g enough to do it." W	hat does these words
	show about G	loucester's feelings	?	
5.	"Look, here's the	he prize! This man	without eyes will ma	ke me rich!"What does
		now about Oswald		
6.	Edgar's braver	y saved his father a	and his country as we	ell. Do you agree? Why?
				out on better clothes? Why?

Act IV, Scene vii, continued & Act V, Scenes i-iii

Vocabulary

apart	النيعب	honestly	بشرف/بأمانة
birth	ميلاد	invade	يغزو
blow	ينفخ	join	يتحدايضم
brave	واجش	officers	ضباط
cage	قفص	poison	Para
death	موت	ruler	حاكم
disguise	يتخفى	starve	يتضورايموت جوعنا
dry	يجفف	suffer	يعانى
equal	مثيل/ند	support	pear
forget	ينسى	trumpet	بوق
forgive	يسامح/يغفر	trust	ثقة/يثق
guard	يحرس	wheel	عجلة

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

bitter pill to swallow	حقيقة صادمة	get home	يعود إلى وطئه
take control	يستولى على السلطة	put chains	يقيد بالسلاسل

Text

(A tent in the French camp. Cordelia talks with Kent, a Doctor and a Gentleman.)

KING LEAR: What are you doing? You shouldn't help me to live. You may be happy,

but I feel like I'm on a wheel of fire.

CORDELIA: Sir, do you know who I am?

KING LEAR: Where am I? Is it day or night?

CORDELIA: Look at me, please. No, you don't have to kneel before me.

Ithink I'm a little bit mad. I think I should know you, and also this man ... [He points to Kent.] ... but I'm not sure. I can't remember putting on these clothes and I don't know where I stayed last night. Don't laugh at i me, but is it possible that you're my daughter, Cordelia?

cordelia: It's true! Yes, I am! I am!

KING LEAR: Are you crying? Yes, you are. Please don't cry. If you have some poison for me, I'll drink it. Your sisters have been cruel to me. You have a good reason to be cruel to me, but they do not.

cordelia: I'll never be cruel to you, father.

KING LEAR: Am I in France?

KENT: No, your majesty. You're in your own kingdom.

KING LEAR: This can't be true.

DOCTOR: I think it's better to leave now. He needs to sleep.

KING LEAR: [To Cordelia.] Please, can you forgive me? I'm old and foolish. It's better

to forget me now.



:5 يغمر يسامع

يسترمن

ما على عنلة من النكر معال

Act V, Scene I

[In the British camp near Dover. Edmund enters with Regan.]

REGAN: Now, Edmund. Tell me honestly, are you working for my sister, Goneril?

EDMUND: I am not, madam.

REGAN: So, you're not helping her to take my lands from me?

EDMUND: No, you mustn't think these things.

REGAN: I don't trust(1) my sister. Edmund, please don't work with her.

EDMUND: Don't worry. She and her husband the Duke of Albany ...

[The Duke of Albany enters with Goneril and some soldiers.]

GONERIL: [To herself.] I must not let Edmund work for my sister.

ALBANY: Regan, have you heard the news? The King is with his daughter, Cordelia, and others who are helping him. We must be ready to fight now because the French army has invaded⁽²⁾. But the French are not here to help Lear. I think we have been too cruel to the King.

REGAN: Why are you telling me this now?

GONERIL: We must join together against the enemy.

ALBANY: Let's plan what to do with the officers(3). Then we can go into battle(4).

EDMUND: I can help you. I'll join you in your tent soon.

REGAN: Are you coming with us, Goneril?

GONERIL: No.

REGAN: Please, come with us.

GONERIL: [To herself.] Oh, I know why you want me to go. You don't want me to stay here with Edmund.

[To Regan.] I'll come soon.

[As they exit, Edgar enters. He is still disguised⁽⁵⁾ as Poor Tom.]

EDGAR: [To Albany.] I'm a poor man, but please listen to me. Before you fight the battle with the French, read this letter. If you win the battle, blow your trumpet. So I know what has happened. I can prove what is written there. Good luck!

[Edgar exits. Albany reads the letter and then exits. Then Edmund enters.]



, 1830 (5) 20, 161

3) ضباط 25 مه (۵ (1) يثق بـ

(2) غزا

EDMUND: I've told both the sisters that I'll help them to win more power. Now they do not trust each other. So, who should I help the most? Regan? Goneril? Both of them? Or perhaps neither of them. I can't take power if both sisters are living. Let me think ... Goneril still has a husband. I'll use his help to win the battle. But I know that her husband feels sorry for King Lear and Cordelia, so when the battle is over, he must die. Then King Lear and Cordelia will be my prisoners! Now it is time for me to start to take control of the kingdom!

[He exits.]

Act V, Scene ii

[In a field between the British and the French. There are sounds of a battle. Edgar and Gloucester enter.]

EDGAR: King Lear has lost the battle, and he's now a prisoner with his daughter Cordelia. This is a bitter pill to swallow⁽²⁾. Quick, we must leave.

GLOUCESTER: I can't go on. Leave me. I can die here.

EDGAR: No. Remember that we can't choose the time of our death, just as we can't choose the time of our birth.

GLOUCESTER: You're right.

EDGAR: Let's go.

[They exit.]

Act V, Scene iii

[In the British camp, near Dover. Edmund enters with King Lear and Cordelia, some soldiers and a Captain. Lear and Cordelia are prisoners.]

EDMUND: Guard them carefully until we know what Goneril and Regan want to do with them.

CORDELIA: I'm not worried about myself. I only feel sad for the King because he has suffered⁽³⁾ so much. Father, do you want to see my sisters?

KING LEAR: No, I do not! I'd prefer to go to prison. There we can be together. We'll sing like birds in a cage⁽⁴⁾!



(3) عانی (4) تفص

ا ا ينحكم مى/يسيطر على المنه حبة مريرة تبتلعها

335

EDMUND: Take them away from me.

KING LEAR: I'm so happy that you're with me, Cordelia. We won't be apart again. Dry your eyes, daughter. Our enemies will starve⁽¹⁾ before they make us cry! Let us go. [King Lear and Cordelia exit with the guards.]

EDMUND: Come here, Captain. Follow the prisoners to the prison. Read this message and do as it says. If you do this, I'll reward you.

[Edmund gives the Captain a note.]

CAPTAIN: I'll do what the message says, my lord.

[The Captain and the soldiers exit. Albany enters with Goneril, Regan and some soldiers.]

ALBANY: Edmund, you were very brave in battle today and we did well to win. Do you have the prisoners? Bring them to me so I can decide what is best for the future of our kingdom.

EDMUND: Albany, I have sent the old King to a prison with a guard. We can't let people see him. He's old, and his age will make the soldiers who see him feel sorry for him. They might want to support him. I've sent Queen Cordelia to prison with him. You can see them tomorrow.

ALBANY: Listen, Edmund. You're a good soldier, but you aren't my equal⁻³. You shouldn't make these decisions.

REGAN: I see kind Edmund as an equal. He led our soldiers well today in battle. I think he can call himself equal to you.

GONERIL: Wait, sister. I understand what you're planning. You want Edmund to help you to take power from me and my husband. But this won't happen, because first, Edmund will help me to take power from you!

REGAN: [To Edmund.] Edmund, help me to take power from my evil sister. If you say yes, you won't be the equal of Albany and Goneril, but you'll be their loro and ruler[3]



(5) حاكم

gluin ()

(1) يدوع (2) يدعم

Questions & Answers

(A) Factual questions:

1. What did the King ask Cordelia not to do?

ما الذي طلب العلك من كورسلنا ألا تفعله؟

He asked her not to help him to live.

2. How does King Lear feel when he meets Cordelia?

50

He feels foolish, but he is happy to be with her. He asked her to help him.

3. What did King Lear say about himself?

ماذا قال الملك لير عن نضبه

He said that he was a very foolish old man, more than eighty years old, and a little bit mad.

4. The King seemed to be puzzled about many things. Explain.

يبدو أن الملك في حيرة من أمره بشأن أشياء كثيرة. اشرح،

He didn't know where he was. He didn't remember putting on his clothes or where he had stayed the night before. He wasn't sure of the identity of the people around him.

5. In the British camp, what did Regan ask Edmund about?

في المعسكر البريطاني، عن ماذا سألت ريجان إدموند؟

She asked him if he worked with her sister, Goneril.

6. How did Edmund try to make Regan calm?

كيف جاول إدموند تهدئة ريجان؟

He told her that he wouldn't help Goneril against her.

7. According to Albany, why should they fight?

وفقا لألباني، لماذا يجب أن يقاتلوا؟

They had to fight because the French army had invaded Britain and the French weren't there to help Lear.

8. Who promised to help Albany in the fight?

ان وعد بمساعدة ألباني في القتال؟

Edmund promised to help him in the fight.

9. Why was Goneril unhappy about Edmund working for Regan?

الذا كانت جونيريل غير سعيدة بعمل إدموند لدى ريجان؟

Because she didn't trust her. She wanted Edmund's help to rule over the kingdor

10. What did Edgar, disguised as PoorTom, give Albany before the battle?

قدم إدجار، متنكراً بزي توم المسكين، لألباني قبل المعركة؟

He gave him the letter he took from Oswald after killing him.

11. When he was alone, what did Edmund decide to do to take control of the kingdc كان بمفرده، ماذا قرر إدموند أن يفعل للسيطرة على المملكة؟

He decided to get rid of Regan, Goneril and Albany after winning the battle.

12. What news did Edgar tell Gloucester about the battle?

ما الأخبار التي أخبرها إدجار لجلوستر عن المعركة؛

He told him that King Lear had lost the battle, and he was a prisoner with his daughter Cordelia.

13. What does 'This' refer to when Edgar says "This is a bitter pill to swallow"? راحة الله الشير "هذا" عندما يقول إدجار "هذه حبة مريرة يجب ابتلاعها"؛

It refers to the King's being a prisoner after losing the battle.

14. Where would King Lear prefer to be? Why?

ان فضل الملك لير أن يكون؟ لماذا؟

He'd prefer to go to prison. There he could be with Cordelia.

15. Why did King Lear say that he was happy?

املذا قال الملك لير أنه سعيد؟

He said so, because he was with Cordelia and they would never be apart.

16. What did Edmund order the soldiers and their captain concerning King Lear and Cordelia?

ماذا أمر إدموند الجنود وقائدهم فيما يتعلق بالملك لير وكورديليا؟

He sent the King and Cordelia to a prison. He gave the captain a note asking him to read it and do as it said offering him a reward for that.

17. Why did Albany blame Edmund?

لماذا ألقى ألباني اللوم على إدموند؟

He blamed him for making important decisions, such as sending the King to prison. He said that Edmund was a good soldier, but he wasn't his equal.

18. How did Edmund defend his decision about King Lear and Cordelia?

كيف دافع إدموند عن قراره بشأن الملك لير وكورديليا؟

He said they couldn't let people see him. His age would make the soldiers who saw him feel sorry for him. They might want to support him.

19. According to Goneril, why did Regan defend Edmund?

وفقا لجونيريل لماذا دافعت ريجان عن إدموند؟

She said that Regan wanted Edmund to help her to take power from her and her husband.

20. What promise did Regan give Edmund if he helped her?

ما الوعد الذي أعطته ريجان لإدموند إذا ساعدها؟

She promised if Edmund helped her to take power from her evil sister, he wouldn't be the equal of Albany and Goneril, but he would be their lord and ruler.

(B) Critical Thinking Questions:

1. Why do you think that Lear knelt before Cordelia?

لماذا تعتقد أن لير ركع أمام كورديليا؟

He wanted her to forgive him because he knew he was wrong to send her away.

2. "Your sisters have been cruel to me. You have a good reason to be cruel to me, but they do not." Why does Lear say this to Cordelia?

"لقد كان أخوانك قاسيين معى. وكان لدبك سنت وحيه لتكون قاسية معى، لكنهم لم يكن لديهم." لماذا يقول لير هذا لكورديليه He sent Cordelia away, so he knew she could be angry with him. He couldn't understand why his other daughters had been cruel to him.

3. "The French are not here to help Lear. I think we have been too cruel to the King." What does this tell us about Albany?

"الفرنسيون ليسوا هنا لمساعدة لير. أعتقد اننا كنا قاسيين جد"ا مع الملك. " ماذا يخبرنا هذا عن ألباني؟

We learn that he is a good man and wants to help Lear. He is starting to see that his wife is not a good person.

4. "I've told both sisters that I'll help them to win more power. Now they do not trust each other." What does this tell us about Edmund?

"لقد أخدرت الاختين أنني سأساعدهما على الفوز بمزيد من القوة. والأن لا يثقون ببعضهم البعض." ماذا يخبرنا هذا عن إدموندي It tells us that he will do anything to try to take control. He is not a man to be trusted.

5. Why do you think Gloucester asked Edgar to let him die where he was?

لماذا تعتقد أن جلوستر طلب من إنجار أن يتركه يموت حيث كان؟

I think he was desperate and very sad after hearing what had happened to the King.

6. "Remember that we can't choose the time of our death, just as we can't choose the time of our birth." What do these sentences show about Edgar?

"تذكر أننا لا نستطيع اختيار وقت وفائنا، كما لا يمكننا اختيار وقت ميلادنا." ماذا تظهر هذه الجمل عن إدجار؟ I think they show that he is a wise and persuasive person.

7. In your opinion, what did Edmund write in the message he gave the captain? في رأيك ماذا كتب إدموند في الرسالة التي سلمها للكايتن؟

I think he asked the captain to kill Lear and Cordelia so as to have a chance to rule over the country after getting rid of the others.

8. Why do you think Albany asked Edmund to bring the prisoners?

لماذا تعتقد أن ألبائي طلب من إدموند إحضار السجناء؟

in my opinion, he wanted to release King Lear and Cordelia because he was sure they are good and innocent.

9. Do you think Albany trusts Edmund? Why?

هل تعتقد أن ألباني بثق بالموند؟ لماذا؟

No, I don't think so. He knew that he betrayed his father, so he is only using him in the fight.

10. "I see kind Edmund as an equal. He led our soldiers well today in battle. I think he can call himself equal to you." What does this tell us about Regan?

"أرى إدموند اللطيف على قدم المساواة. لقد قاد جنودنا بشكل جيد اليوم في المعركة. أعتقد أنه يمكن أن يقول عن نفسه انع مساوي لك." ماذا بخبرنا هذا عن ربحان؟

It tells us that she is ready to use Edmund to try to take power from Goneril and Albany.

Act IV, Scene vii, continued & Act V, Scenes I-iii

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

•	1	The Romans	Britain 2,000 y	ears ago.				
			b) discovered		d) accepted			
	2 The playeran injury, but he completed the match.							
			b) suffered		d) cured			
	3	3 Thousands of people willif food doesn't reach the city.						
			b) feed		d) plead			
		a) deserts	b) clouds	c) space	d) cages			
	5							
		a) assist	b) forgive	c) plead	d) fight			
	6	6 The officer told the soldier to the entrance of the police station.						
		a) guard	b) attend	c) repent	d) rebuild			
	7	7is a substance that causes death or harm if it gets into the body.						
		a) Medicine	b) Sugar	c) Vaccine	d) Poison			
	8 I'm very grateful for my wife who me through life.							
		a) supported	b) reported	c) fought	d) ignored			
	9 The election defeat خسارة الانتخابات was a bitter for the politician to							
		a) bell	b) bill	c) ball	d) pill			
	10	Thousands of y	ears ago, Egypt was i	united under one	called a Pharaoh.			
		a) officer	b) ruler	c) author	d) enemy			

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 1. In your opinion, why does King Lear say that if Cordelia had poison, he would drink it?
- 2. If you were Cordelia, would you forgive your father so easily? Why?
- 3. If you were Edmund, would you agree to help Regan against her sister? Why?
- 4. Do you think that Goneril doesn't really want Regan to stay with Edmund? Why?
- **5.** Why do you think Edgar asked Albany to read the letter he gave him before the battle?
- **6.** "I only feel sad for the King because he has suffered so much." What does this show about Cordelia?
- 7. If you were the captain, would you do what Edmund wrote in the message? Why?
- **8.** Do you think that Edmund gave a good reason for sending King Lear and Cordelia away to prison? Why?
- 9. Do you agree with Albany when he says that Edmund isn't his equal? Why?
- **10.** How do you think Albany and Regan reacted to what Regan said about making Edmund ruler?

Act V, Scene iii

Vocabulary

crown	ولت	rat	خار
equally	بصورة متعادلة/بالتساوى	resign	يستثيل
guide	مرشد	soldier	جندی
laws	هَوانين	stretcher	نقالة
liar	كاذب	title	لقب
murderer	قاتل	treason	خيانة
offstage	خارج المسرح	trick	يخدع

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

come full circle	يعود لنقطة البداية	tear up	يدمر/يمزق
heavy heart	حزين	work for	يعمل لصالح

Text

[In the British camp, near Dover.]

GONERIL: My sister Regan, do you really want Edmund to help you to take my lands?

ALBANY: You can't do this, Edmund.

EDMUND: You can't tell me what to do, Albany.

ALBANY:Yes I can!

REGAN: [To Edmund.] Prove that you want to help me, Edmund, by fighting Albany!

ALBANY: Listen to me. Edmund, Larrest¹¹¹ you for treason¹¹.

[He points to Goneril.] And you, my wife. Were you planning to take Regan's land from her? With Edmund's help? It's not your land to take. It was given equally to you and Regan by your father!

GONERIL: But we could have more power, husband!

REGAN: I feel ill. My stomach¹³ hurts!

GONERIL: [To herself.] Good. If you aren't ill, I will never trust poison again.

ALBANY: You have a sword, Edmund. I'm ready to fight you, unless anyone else wants to fight you first!

EDMUND: I'm happy to fight anyone who calls me a traitor or a land. Come then, who wants to fight me?

REGAN: Help me. I feel worse.

ALBANY: Regan isn't well. Take her to my tent.

[Regan is helped offstage.]

Now, if any man here will fight Edmund the traitor, come now, or I'll fight him myself. [Edgar enters.]

Who are you?

EDGAR: I have lost my name and title to a traitor; but I'm a brave soldier. Where's Edmund, who calls himself the Duke of Gloucester?

EDMUND: I'm here.

ا معدة

يقبض على

:

EDGAR: Then take out your sword. You're a traitor to your brother and your father.
I'm ready to fight you to prove you are a llar to everyone you work for.

[They fight. Edmund falls.]

ALBANY: Edmund is hurt, can you save " him? I want to find out what he knows!

GONERIL: They tricked you into fighting, Edmund.

ALBANY: Be quiet, madam, or I will make you be quiet by reading this letter that you wrote to Edmund.

rHe gives Goneril the letter she wrote to Edmund.]

[To Goneril.] No, don't try to tear up⁽¹⁾ the letter! You know what you wrote.

GONERIL: Husband, it's true that I wanted Edmund to help me take Regan's land.

The laws (4) of the kingdom are mine, not yours. Who can punish me for it?

ALBANY: You're an evil woman!

[Goneril exits.]

EDMUND: Albany, I'm guilty of wanting to help both Goneril and Regan, and more, much more. This is the end for me now. [To Edgar.] But who are you? If you're a good man, I forgive you.

EDGAR: Let us forgive each other. My name's Edgar and I am your brother. Our father has lost his eyes because of you!

EDMUND: I was wrong. I thought that I could be the best man in the kingdom, but now I'm the worst. The wheel has come full circle⁶⁹.

ALBANY: [To Edgar.] I thought that you were an important man. I promise—you, I never hated you, or your father!

EDGAR: I know that, Albany.

ALBANY: Where have you been hiding? How did you know what happened to your father?

EDGAR: I've been helping him, my lord. I disguised myself as a beggar, then I met my father, who's now blind. I became his guide, and stopped him from killing himself. I never told him who I was. That was a big mistake. Just an hour ago, I told him everything, but his heart was too weak. He died smiling.

[An officer enters with a knife covered in blood .]

OFFICER: Help! Oh, help me!



4 (7) مم

مبحث العبلة دائرة كاملة

: يعزق - قوانين ا ينفد

9

343

EDGAR: What is it? Why is there blood on that knife?

OFFICER: It came from the heart of ... Oh, she's dead!

ALBANY: Who's dead? Tell us.

OFFICER: Goneril, your wife, sir! And her sister Regan. Goneril has killed herself, and she poisoned Regan before she died.

[Kent enters.]

EDGAR: Here is Kent.

KENT: I have come to see the King. Is he here?

ALBANY: Tell us, Edmund, where is the King? And where is Cordelia? [The bodies of Goneril and Regan are carried in on stretchers⁽¹⁾ by soldiers.]

KENT: Oh, no! What's happened?

ALBANY: Cover their faces.

EDMUND: I must do one good thing before I die.

Quickly, go to the castle; I wrote a message asking for the deaths of King Lear and Cordelia.

EDGAR: Who did you write this message to? We must stop it!

EDMUND: [To the Officer.] Take my sword. Give it the Captain and he'll know that

I have changed the order.

ALBANY: Run! Quickly!

[The Officer exits.]

EDMUND: The message tells the Captain to kill Cordelia in the prison⁽²⁾. We wanted people to think that she killed herself.

ALBANY: Please let her be safe! Take him away.

[Edmund is carried off. King Lear enters with Cordelia dead in his arms. Edgar and the Captain follow.]

KING LEAR: Oh, this is terrible. She is gone forever!

KENT: Oh, your majesty!

KING LEAR: You're all murderers⁽³⁾ and traitors! We should have saved her; now she's gone forever⁽⁴⁾! Her voice was always soft and gentle.

[He sees Kent.] Aren't you Kent?

KENT: Yes, I am. And I've followed you since your madness began.



عتد (3) الأبد (4)

[] نقالات

KING LEAR: You're welcome here.

KENT: My heart is heavy ". Your eldest daughters have died too.

The Captain enters.]

CAPTAIN: Edmund is dead, my lord.

ALBANY: He isn't important now. My friends, these are my plans. We'll do everything to help King Lear feel better. I will resign and give my power back to the old King. Edgar and Kent, return to your homes and I'll make sure that my friends are rewarded and my enemies punished.

KING LEAR: [To Cordelia.] Why should a rat have life, and you have no life at all? I'll never see you again.

[King Lear dies.]

KENT: Oh, my heart will break!

EDGAR: He's gone.

KENT: He was very ill. I'm surprised that he lived for so long.

ALBANY: Carry him out carefully.

ITO Kent and Edgar.] My friends, without the King, you two will rule this kingdom.

EDGAR: We must remember this sad day.

[He puts on the crown.]

The oldest man has suffered the most; we young people will never see as much as Lear, nor live as long as this good King.

[They exit.]

THE END



ا بستقبل/بتخلي عن منصب

, حرين

king Lear

Questions & Answers

(A) Factual questions:

1. What did Regan ask Edmund to do to prove that he wanted to help her?

الله والمنات ريجان من إدموند أن يفعل ليثبت أنه يريد مساعدتما؟

She asked him to fight Albany.

2. What did Albany say he would do to Edmund?

ماذا قال ألباني أنه سيفعل بإدموند؟

He said that he would arrest him for treason.

3. Why did Albany blame his wife, Goneril?

لماذا ألقى ألباني اللوم على زوجته جونيريل؟

Because she was planning to take Regan's land from her with Edmund's help saying that it was given equally to Goneril and Regan by their father.

4. Why does Regan feel ill?

50

لماذا تشعر ريجان بالمرض!

Because Goneril gives her poison.

5. Who appeared to fight Edmund? Why?

من ظهر لمحاربة إنموند؟ لماذا؟

Edgar appeared to fight him. He was ready to fight him to prove that he was a liar to everyone including his father and his brother.

6. What did Albany do when Goneril asked to save Edmund?

ماذا فعل ألباني عندما طلبت جونيريل إنقاذ إيموند؟

He showed her the letter she had written to Edmund before the battle.

7. How did Goneril try to defend herself?

كيف حاولت جونيريل الدفاع عن نفسها؟

She tried to tear up the letter and said that the laws of the kingdom were hers not Albany's.

8. What did Edmund do after he was badly hurt?

ماذا فعل إدموند بعد أن أصيب بجروح بالغة؟

He admitted his guilt and asked to know the identity of the man who fought him.

9. What did Edgar tell Albany about his story and his father?

ماذا قال إدجار لألباني عن قصته ووالده؟

He told him that he disguised himself as a beggar, then he met their father, who became blind. He became his guide, and stopped him from killing himself. Just an hour before, he told him everything, but his heart was too weak. He died smiling.

ما هو الخير الذي حاول الموند القيام به قبل وغاته؟ He asked them to go to the castle to stop killing King Lear and Cordelia as he had ordered.

12. How will the Captain know that Edmund has changed his mind?

الموند قد غير رأيه؟

When the captain receives Edmund's sword, he'll know that Edmund has changed his mind.

13. Why does Lear say everyone is a traitor and a murderer?

لماذا يقول لير أن الجميع خائنون وقائلون؟

Because Cordelia is dead and he thinks people should have saved her.

14. What was Albany's plan after the death of Cordelia, Regan and Goneril?

ما هي خطة ألباني بعد وفاة كورديليا وريجان وجونيريل؟

He planned that he would resign and give his power back to the old King.

15. What does Albany promise to do for his friends?

ماذا وعد ألباني أن يفعل لأصدقائه؟

He promises to reward them.

16. Who rules the kingdom when Lear dies?

28

من يحكم المملكة عندما يموت لير؟

Kent and Edgar rule the kingdom.

(B) Critical Thinking Questions:

1. "You can't tell me what to do, Albany." What does this sentence show about Edmund?

'لا يمكنك أن تخبرني ماذا أفعل يا ألباني.' ماذا تظهر هذه الجملة عن إسموند؟

I think it shows that he became very proud, thinking that he was too powerful to be given orders by Albany.

2. "The laws of the kingdom are mine, not yours. Who can punish me for it?" Do you agree with Goneril when she said this? Why?

"قوانين المملكة لى، وليست لك. من يستطيع أن يعاقبنى على ذلك!" هل تتفق مع جونيريل عندما قالت هذا؟ لماثا؟ No, I don't agree with her. Everyone should be punished for their evil actions even if they belonged to a royal family.

3. If you were Edgar, would you forgive Edmund for his evil actions? Why?

لو كنت مكان إنجار، هل ستغفر لإدموند أفعاله الشريرة؟ لماذا؟

No, I wouldn't. He hurt Edgar badly and destroyed the family. He even betrayed his own father and thus he became blind.

4.	Why do you think Edmund wanted to save Cordelia and	King Lear's	lives bec.
	he died?		Selote

رمادًا تعتقد أن إدموند أراد إنقاذ حياة كورديليا والملك لير قبل وفاته؟ Maybe, he began to regret his ill deeds and he wanted to be remembered for one

5. What's your opinion of Albany's decision to resign and give power back to King Lear?

ما رأيك بقرار ألباني الاستقالة وإعادة السلطة للملك لير؟

I think it is an honourable decision to give power away to honour the King.

6. Do you think that Edgar deserves to rule the kingdom? Why?

مل تعتقد أن إنجار يستحق أن يحكم العملكة! لماذا!

Yes, I think so. He is a noble and clever man. He also became wise and experienced through his sufferings in life.

7. Did you expect Regan and Goneril to die? Why?

good thing.

مل توقعت موت ريجان جونيريل؟ لمانا؟

Yes, I did. They should have been punished for all their evil actions.

8. How did you feel at the end of the play? Why?

كيف كان شعورك في نهاية العسرجية؟ لماذا؟

c) loyalty

I feel sad for the death of King Lear and Cordelia after their suffering in prison.

9. Who was your favourite character in the play? Give reasons.

من هي شخصيتك المفضلة في المسرحية؛ أعط أسبابًا.

My favourite character was Cordelia. She was an innocent character who loved her father and sacrificed her life for him although he didn't treat her well.

10. What is the moral lesson in *King Lear*, in your opinion?

ما هو المرس الأخلاقي في رواية الملك لير من وجعة نظرك؟

The moral of King Lear is the idea that a person's actions speak louder than words alone. It is very easy to say one thing and do another.

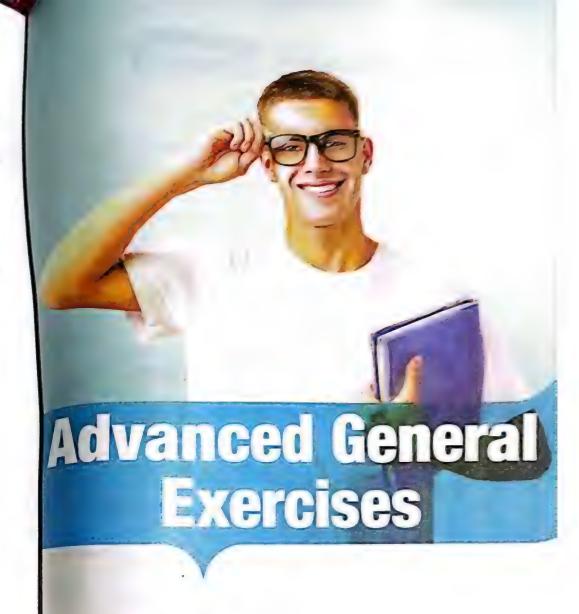


"Minister" and "A	mbassador" are two	of several diplomati	ckoum .
a) topics		to ratik:	
c) addresses		d) titles	
	: American writer, w	rote about his life a	s a in the Fire
World War.			
a) soldier	b) manager	c) learner	BI NOW
The manager wa	as puzzled as the two	candidates were	qualified for the jo
a) vaguely		b) helplessly	
c) equally		d) believedly	
The tourist grou	up was accompanied	by a museum	during their visit.
a) planner	b) guide	C) Set varit	d, c. 6
With a heavy	, she turned to	o wave goodbye and	d went to visit her frie
in hospital.			
a) brain	b) arm	c) nead	d, rear.
My new classma	ate is the biggest	I've ever known	. Henever tell's trets.
a) liar		b) beggar	
c) trigger		d) truths	
My friend was _	into buying	that bad car.	
a) traced		b) tricked	
c) honoured		d) dupi cated	
Mona tore	her fiancé's lette	er and threw it away	f.
a) on	b) in	c) up	difor
The identity of t	he who kil	led the old lady has	not yet been reveale
a) judge		b) murderer	
c) lawyer		d) coacn	
	was charged نصم wi	ith and ser	itenced to death.
a) treasury	3-	b) treason	

d) pleasure

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 1. Do you think King Lear deserves the suffering he had in life?
- 2. Greed for power can lead people to betray even their relatives. Illustrate this, giving examples from the play?
- **3.** Although taking Regan's land would make him more powerful, Albany refused it. What does this show about him?
- 4. In your opinion, would Albany have ordered Goneril to be killed if she hadn't killed herself? Why?
- 5. Do you think that Edmund deserved the punishment he received? Why?
- 6. If you were Albany, would you resign and give back power to the King? Why?
- 7. Do you think that Regan deserved to meet her end? Why?
- 8. Do you think that Edgar will make a good king? Why?
- 9. Who was the character in the play that you hated the most? Give reasons.
- 10. What did you learn from the play?



Advanced General Exercises

· Advanced General Exercises Answers

Advanced General





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1	Dentists use	anaesthetic to	o drill into a tooth or e	ven take it out.
	a) local	b) national	c) international	d) body
2	? Three	studies all arrived at	the same conclusion a	bout the virus.
	a) dependent	b) independent	c) intuitive	d) imaginary
3	The small boat	against the	waves and it could arri	ive safely.
	a) worked	b) respired	c) struggled	d) expanded
4	The young man	wasup by p	olice and taken to the st	ation for questioning.
			c) arrested	
5	Cooking oils are	e from plant	s such as corn and sun	flower.
	a) consumed	b) intended	c) extracted	d) expired
6				I they are ranked last.
			c) current	
7	In the field of di	rug development, th	e of secrecy is	deep and strong.
			c) study	
8	Government pla	ans for hospital closu	res provoked a	of protest.
	a) tide	b) shore	c) storm	d) downpour
9	The firefighter for	ell down a	of stairs and hurt her ba	ack.
			c) glider	
10				rrive at work on time
			c) aspire	
11	The woman who	this house	died 30 years ago.	
	a) is owning	b) was owning	c) owned	d) owns
			lays. I need to ask a do	
	this behaviour.			
	a) is being	b) is	c) will be	d) was
			I'm cooking! It's very	
	•			, •
	c) was always tast		d) is always tasting	
a mary			neighbours	
			c) having	
			-,	
E A	dvanced General Exer	cises		

45	We are discussi	ing the new project a	a good tim	ne as well.		
	a) having	b) had	c) have	d) being having		
16	I can hear some	eone outsid	e. What is happening?	, ,		
-	a) is shouting	b) shouts	c) was shouting	d) showing		
17	He is t	o help his father with	his work on the garde	n.		
	a) supposing	b) supposed	c) suppose	d) successive		
18	My father is alwaysin English literature and reading about the famous					
	English writers.					
	a) interesting		b) interest			
	c) interested		d) being interestin	,		
15		me for 5 yea	rs, he didn't invite me	to his wedding party		
	last week.					
			c) 's been knowing			
20			don. I of going			
			b) am al viays thir.			
	c) always think/	think	d) am al Najset n	his liber is a		
		Uni	(8)			
			man and			
1	se the correct a	newar from a h co				
				wrote about ten Jears		
				wrote about ten years		
	The writer's new ago.	w novel is a/an				
1	The writer's new ago. a) expansion	b) repet ton	c) publication			
1	The writer's new ago. a) expansion	b) repet ton yer finished the tour	c) publication	d) sus sig		
1	The writer's new ago. a) expansion The squash play very quickly and	b) repet ton yer finished the tour	c) publication by	d) sus sig		
1	The writer's new ago. a) expansion The squash play very quickly and a) fashion	b) repet ton yer finished the tour d easily. b) style	c) publication by	d) public's winning his last match d, tk		
1	The writer's new ago. a) expansion The squash play very quickly and a) fashion Drawing, like w	b) repet ton yer finished the tour d easily. b) style criting, can be a	c) publication by c) affection	d) publicity winning his last match d) of ur feelings.		
2	The writer's new ago. a) expansion The squash play very quickly and a) fashion Drawing, like wa) system	b) repet ton yer finished the tour d easily. b) style rriting, can be a b) form	c) affect on for expressing you	d) publicity winning his last match d) of ur feelings.		
2	The writer's new ago. a) expansion The squash play very quickly and a) fashion Drawing, like wall a) system Maha's husband	b) repet ton yer finished the tour d easily. b) style rriting, can be a b) form	c) publication by c) affection c) vehicle cherin a short story he c) affection c) vehicle	d) publicity winning his last match d) of ur feelings. d) chape		
3	The writer's new ago. a) expansion The squash play very quickly and a) fashion Drawing, like wa) system Maha's husbanda) general	b) repet ton yer finished the tour d easily. b) style riting, can be a b) form d was always nice to b) private	c) publication by c) affection c) vehicle cherin a short story he c) affection c) vehicle	d) bublish winning his last match d, charteelings. d) chape ated her badly at home. d) bublish		
3	The writer's new ago. a) expansion The squash play very quickly and a) fashion Drawing, like wa) system Maha's husbanda) general My little sister h	b) repet ton yer finished the tour d easily. b) style riting, can be a b) form d was always nice to b) private	c) publication by caffection for expressing you c) vehicle the c) special	d) public [*] y winning his last match d) ck ur feelings. d) chace ated her backy at home. d) out c em quite easily.		
3 4 5	The writer's new ago. a) expansion The squash play very quickly and a) fashion Drawing, like wa) system Maha's husbanda) general My little sister ha) reward	b) repet ton yer finished the tour d easily. b) style riting, can be a b) form d was always nice to b) private has a	c) publication by c) affection for expressing you c) vehicle her in, but tre c) special	d) public of your normal distribution of the control of the contro		
3 4 5	The writer's new ago. a) expansion The squash play very quickly and a) fashion Drawing, like wa) system Maha's husbanda) general My little sister ha) reward	b) repet ton yer finished the tour d easily. b) style riting, can be a b) form d was always nice to b) private has a for lan b) present e another medicine	c) publication by c) affection c) vehicle c) special guages. She learns the	d) public of y winning his last match d) of ur feelings. d) chape ated her badly at home. d) out of em quite easily. d) disaction to antibiotics.		
3 4 5 6.	The writer's new ago. a) expansion The squash play very quickly and a) fashion Drawing, like wa) system Maha's husbanda) general My little sister ha) reward You should takea) reply	b) repet ton yer finished the tour d easily. b) style riting, can be a b) form d was always nice to b) private has a for lan b) present e another medicine b) respond	c) publication by c) affection for expressing you c) vehicle her in, but tre c) special guages. She learns th c) facility eas colds do not	d) publichy winning his last match d) club ar feelings. d) chabe ated her badly at home. d) publichem quite easily. d) disability to antibiotics. d) respect		
3 4 5 6.	The writer's nevago. a) expansion The squash play very quickly and a) fashion Drawing, like wa) system Maha's husbanda) general My little sister ha) reward You should take a) reply The film we was	b) repet ton yer finished the tour d easily. b) style riting, can be a b) form d was always nice to b) private has a for lan b) present e another medicine b) respond	c) publication by c) affection for expressing you c) vehicle ther in, but tre c) special guages. She learns th c) facility as colds do not c) answer	d) public of your normal distribution of the control of the contro		

	8	My uncle is the	chairman of a	of TV sports station	ns.				
		a) team		c) network	d) specialty				
	9	The cost of the		ld be in the of 5 r	nillion pounds.				
			b) speck	c) area	d) region				
	10	Some economi	c changes are tal	king place at national	in Egypt.				
		a) standard	b) level	c) stop	d) airway				
	11 This time next week, everyone the final match.								
		a) will have wat	ched	b) will watch					
		c) will be watch	ing	d) shall watch	d) shall watch				
	12	By the time he		a new car.					
		a) will buy		b) will have boug	ht				
		c) will be bough		d) will be buying					
	13	After he reads "	Great Expectation	os", heall Charles [Dickens' novels.				
		a) will read		b) will have read					
		c) read		d) will have been	read				
	14	By 2050, all peo	pleorga	nic food.					
		a) will have bee	n eaten	b) will be eaten	b) will be eaten				
		c) will have eate	n	d) will eat					
	15	I expect the pri	ce of petrol	by next week.					
		a) will have bee		b) will be risen					
		c) will have riser	1	d) to have been r					
	16	6 I have promised my fatherhigh marks and join the Faculty of Medic							
		a) to get		b) will get					
		c) would get		d) to have got	d) to have got				
	17	Line 4 the east and west of Cairo and make it easier for people to trav							
		around the city							
		a) will be conne	ected	b) is connected					
		c) will connect		d) will have beer	n connected				
	18	1 3 lang	uages by the tim	e I have finished this cou	rse.				
		a) will learn	•	b) 'm going to h					
	76	c) am learning		d) will be learning	g				
**			nd you your	English by the time you o	ome back from the U.S.				
		a) are perfecting			b) will have been perfected				
	,	c) will have perf		d) perfect	•				
2				youin the lake.					
1 10 10		a) swam	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	b) were swimmin	na				
2 . 1 . 2	3.	c) swimming		d) swim	3				
2,000	10 mm	delig the same success	,	-, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -, -					
1	1 1	Advanced Conerol Ex	ercises						



ose the cor	rect answer from a, b, c o	rd:	
The area is	protected as a wildlife	to protect	the rare animals in it.
a) park	b) preserve	c) accessory	d) garder
, The sports	s centre is organising a fish	ing to th	e lake for next week.
a) prize	b) award	c) expedition	d) resort
3 The new c	hemistry book is a work of	serious of so	me Egyptian scientists.
a) scholars		b) championship	
d) qualifica		d) implication	
A The school	ol encourages a sense of	in its stude	ents through some
volunteer	ring activities.		
a) society	b) right	c) democracy	d) communit
My sister	cleans her contact lens with	an ordinary saline.	
a) solutio	n b) syrup oung woman who	c) tube	d) research
6 She is a y	oung woman who	trust in everyone	e she meets.
a) involve	b) inspires	c) aspires	d) respires
7 I have ty	ped out some lecture note	s for the	_ of those people who
	ent last week.		
	nmation b) sale		
	countries, eighteen is consid		
a) majorit	y b) minority	c) acceptance	d) quaification
	he television sets on the n	narket are all high	for a better
image.			
	y b) purpose		
	think that someone set the		
a) reason	b) cause	c) account	d) pureoss
	were children, our parents	us to the	e children's theatres and
buy us sw			
a) are used		b) use to often t	202
c) will ofte		d) often took	
	at our town's stat	ion. We find travellir	ng easy.
a) usually s	stop	b) are used to s	
c) used to	stop	d) were used to	stopping
	stop always me wi		d encouraged me alot.
a) used to	help	b) helped	
c) would h			
	an amazing suntan		nmer ended.
a) is used to	o having	b) has had	
c) had		d) would have	

18 In the past, all our food	to organic forms by	it now we have take	. 6 Dorit	tweethers struck grain track	teating our for its as a	meganeralin mass
organic and non-organic forms		20,100,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,0	they year.			
a) didn't use to come	b) used to com	6-	a) publish	131211 261 MS		to come
c) didn't come	d) would never		7 The evolution	A structification and	NO trainer represent	e are to a grand
		* P 1 0 0 m.	increase in the	moune, Excelled the tight		
16 Shethe most popu	4.5 44.4.		a) dominios	to, it be seen	6. 78 M. W.	20115
a) would be	d) all are possib	160	8 House prices h	are up this j	entenance yer.	त्र च्यार्कत् त्रास्त्रवस्य
c) was		9-2	have increased			
17 That coat is for you			a) zooned		e hint.	
a) too small	b) slightly small	er .	g psychologists		res reservation	
c) too much small	d) much small				1.18	
18 Jane's dress is yours					instruction and about	
a) almost as	b) slightly the sa	me as			en algree	
c) similar to	d) the same to			the form was seven		A
19 He's recovered from his illness a	nd is playing	ever.	arcocking	the back and a series of a fi	come asses	
a) as well as	b) as good as		a) told	. the bag news, she i	acted at an earet	
c) almost as good as	d) much good th	nan	a) told c) been told			
20 English is as easy as German. Th	ey are		C) Deen tota		9 19 12	rextractioners.
a) almost as easier as each other	•					re morg comensors.
b) the same ease				-		
c) slightly easier than each other				cone edmelyeste		
d) exactly the same easiest			a) visited	eume yeste		
·					0 180 1140	
U	nit (10)		c) didn't visit	A A	2 30 . 1773	
				that bad car last		
noose the correct answer from a, b	, c or d:		a) didn't buy		0 13000.00	
1 Although they live in the ocean,	the salmon fish return t	to the river asin	c) bought		C 1851151.j1	-
order to breed.				ause hehis	JCC.	
a) teenagers b) meals	c) adults	d) young	a) had lost		55	
2 The local newspapersa	fierce attack on the Min	istry of Health after	c) has lost			
the accident in the hospital.				oelieved in life after		
a) involved b) launched	c) shot	d) fired	a) death	b) had died		-
3 Some dogs have a/anse	•	e used by the police to	18 The pharaohs.	the Pyramic	is and other monume	775L
detect things such as drugs.	,,		a) have built	b) built	C) 24. 3	d 143 04 1
	c) weak	d) keen	19 One of the follo	owing sentences is	grammatically correc	the contract of the contract o
4 You can earn money wor	*			_	ecaired it was do lines	
a) serious b) dangerous	-	d) tiny			realit was bollened.	
5 It is believed that hard work is th				he had been repair		
				he had had repaire		
a) syllabus b) street	c) method	d) route	u) Aiter the Car	не наи наитерате	(a, (t) (a) b) (b) (c) (c)	
Advantate Conneal European						

			il - Il - careact		-	Although he	is my neighbour, I	know him.	
2	One of the follo	wing sentences is gra	mmatically correct.			a) nearly	b) hard	c) hardly	d) harder
	a) As soon as the	e girl disappeared, we	told the police.	lice	1	HOW	your determination	and will is!	
	s) As soon as th	e girl had been disappe e girl was disappeared,	beared, we told the police	711661		a) strength	b) strong	c) strongly	d) stronger
		e girl was disappeared, e girl has disappeared,				Hewaswron	g when he took it	and returned to w	ork before recuperation.
	4) AS SOUTI 85 (11				30	a) easier	b) easily		d) easy
		Unit	(n)			think he wa	nts to travel as	as	-,,
Cho	ose the correct a	nswer from a, b, c or	d:		10	a) quickly/po	ssible	b) quickly / pos	sibly
				ituation in the muddy			sible	d) quick/possib	lv
		players kept slipping		- dady		Fast-food res	staurants are popular t	pecause many people	want
	a) romance	b) comedy	c) tragedy	d) shortage	1 1	a) to eat qui	ckly and cheaply	recause many people	
2	An essential pie	ce of mountain clim	bing equipment is a	climbing to		and the same of th	ickly and cheaply		
	help you up and	l down.		10		~ /	ickly and cheaply		
	a) windmill	b) slide	c) swing	d) harness	-11	-/	cheaply eating		
3	Mary talked abo	out her new job with g	reat She se	eemed very excited.		-, ,		ah a	
	a) collocation		•	d) respiration	2		congratulated him for		11
4	A talented youn	g artist designed the	for the new	play.			nised extremely		
	a) scenery	b) site	c) sight	d) delight		c) well-extre	mely organised		ll-organised
5	Hundreds of stu	dentsagains	st the war outside the	American Congress.	- 1		Un	(12)	
	a) showed	b) demonstrated		d) advocated		- ace the corre	ct answer from a, b,	c or d:	
6		ed to give her					m experience is a goo		t
	a) vision		c) version			• , =	m experience is a god		
7		t is appointed to wor				a) analysis		b) prescription	
	a) duty	b) task	c) fiction	d) mission		c) recipe		d) guidebook	
8		preadsuppo				2: The	. of the match will be		
	a) fascinated	b) private	c) popular	d) hilarious		a) excerpts	b) highlights	c) wings	d) losses
9		of bigdrear				3 Local newsp	apers took	at the famous actor fo	or his indecent remarks.
	a) silly	b) romantic				a) aim	b) goal	c) target	d) objective
10	Our team lost th	e game, but not for				We need sor	neone outside the co	ompany to give us a/	an analysis.
	a) lack	b) leak	c) aspiration	d) hopy			b) goal		d) objective
	A: The car isn't m	_					their first win		
		oming towards us.				a) recorded		c) gave	d) took
	a) No, it isn't	b) No, it is	c) Yes, it is	d) Yes, it isn't		_,			· ·
12	I don't suppose t	here is much damage	e,?		6		•	•	an install a spam
	a) isn't it	b) do l	c) isn't there	d) is there		a) cleaner	b) caller	c) filter	d) advisor
13	Boring,	?			7	Two men we	ere arrested as the p	olice officer proved	that they were
	a) doesn't he	b) isn't it	c) hasn't he	d) was it	-	the terrorist a	action.		
14	Asoldie	r is most likely to get	shot in war.			a) outfits		b) accessorie	25
	a) cowardly		c) cowardliness	d) cowardlier		c) accesses		d) appliance	25
8	Advanced General Exerc	282							31
9:									Advanced General Exercises 3:

	8	The number of	people claiming unen	nployment	rose as a result of			
		the coronavirus	crisis.					
		a) crisis	b) loss					
	9	The students we	ere left to their own	when the	teacher was late for			
		the class.						
		a) tools	b) equipment	c) devices	d) defects			
1	10	We are taking a .	view of our b	ousiness to make	the right decision.			
		a) global		c) national	d) simple			
1	11	I couldn't give m	y sonhe nee					
		a) that	b) whose	c) what	d) who			
1	12	Ali wanted to kn	ow the reason					
		a) what	-,,	c) that	d) when			
1	13	Look! That's the						
		a) we gave the m	noney	b) we gave th	e money to			
			he money					
9	14		e following sentence:		ctured?			
		a) The dog, she bought last week, barks a lot.						
			n she bought last wee					
		c) The dog, which	h she bought it last we	eek, barks a lot.				
		d) The dog, she b	oought it last week, ba	irks a lot.				
1	15	His father,	, said he didn't like	to work.				
		a) he gave a serie	es of interviews					
		b) that had retire	d a few weeks ago					
		c) who was alrea	dy over sixty-five					
		d) is an electrical	engineer					
1	16	Hassan ordered	an enormous steak,	30000000000000000000				
		a) was very delici	ious	b) which cos	t him a lot			
		c) he ate all by hi	mself	d) it wasn't w	rell-done			
1	7	People	stealing are imprisor	ned.				
		a) caught		b) who caug	ht			
		c) who catch		d) who are c				
1	8		wishes have co					
1	-	a) who		b) whose	, , , ,			
		at alone		محمد جارين (ام				
4	9	He bought a car.	I can't reme	mber the brand				
		a) where	9	b) of what	•			
0.19		c) by whom	The second second	d) of which				
2	-		questions on the test	•				
-	AD.	a) either was easy	-		m warn war interacted			
4					m were very interested			
		c) all-of they were	very natu.	a) all of which	h were difficult			

Answers

10. d) organise

11. c) owned 12. a) is being

13. d) is always tasting
14. b) are having
15. a) having
16. d) shouting
17. b) supposed
18. c) interested
19. a) 's known

20. a) always think/m thinking

Advanced General Exercises

Unit 7

a) local	
	تستخدم العبارة local anaesthetic بمعنى امخدر ابنع موضعي).
b) independent	
	تستخدم independent هنا بمعنى (مستقل في أداء العمل).
c) struggled	
	تستخدم struggle هنا بمعنى (يعمل في ظروف صعبة).
d) picked	
	يستخدم pick up هنا بمعنى (يقبض على).
5. c) extracted	
	يستخدم extract هنا بمعنى (يستخلص مادة من شيء كنبات).
b) drought	
	يستخدم drought هنا بمعنى (انقطاع عن عمل شيء كتسجيل أهداف).
a) culture	
	تستخدم culture هنا بمعنى (انطباع/فكر سائد).
c) storm	
	ستخدم storm of protest بمعنى (عاصفة/قدر كبير من الاحتجاج).
ь) flight	
	ستخدم flight هنا بمعنى (مجموعة متواصلة من درجات سلم).

تستخدم organise himself بمعنى (يرتب أفكاره وتصرفاته).



- 1. a) expansion منا بمعنى (تطوير/توسيع فكرة). 2. b) style مستخدم التعبير in style بمعنى (بطريقة مبصرة/مثيرة للإعجاب). 3. c) vehicle ج. تخدم vehicle هنا بمعنى (وسيلة/طريقة للتعبير). 4. d) public مستخدم التعبير in public بمعنى (علنا/أمام الجمهور) 5. c) facility مستخدم facility هنا بمعنى (موهبة في تعلم اللغة). 6. b) respond بستخدم respond هنا بمعنى (يستجيب للعلاج). 7. a) transport تستخدم transport هنا بمعنى (ينقل/يعيد لفترة زمنية). 8. c) network تستخدم network هنا بمعنى (شبكة/مجموعة متصلة من قنوات التليفزيون أو محطات الإذاعة).
- يستخدم التعبير in the region of بمعنى (فيما يقدر بـ). 10. b) level يستخدم التعبير the national level بمعنى (على المستوى المحلى من مسابقة أو لعنة). 11. c) will be watching
- 12. a) will buy 13. b) will have read 14. d) will eat
- 15. c) will have risen
- 16. a) to get

9. d) region

- 17. c) will connect
- 18. b) 'm going to have learnt
- 19. c) will have perfected
- 20. d) swim

- 1. b) preserve
- 2. c) expedition
- 3. a) scholarship
- d) community
- a) solution
- 6. b) inspires
- 7. c) benefit
- s. a) majority
- 9. c) definition
- 10. d) purpose
- 11. d) often took
- 12. a) usually stop
- 13. b) helped
- 14. d) would have
- 15. b) used to come
- 16. d) all are possible
- 17. a) too small
- 18. c) similar to
- 19. a) as well as
- 20. b) the same ease

Unit 9

تستحدم العبارة wildlife preserve بمعنى امدعية طبيعية ا

تستصم العنارة fishing expedition بمعنى ارحلة صيدا

تستحدم scholarship هذا بمعنى (عمل طريقة علمية)

يستحيم التعبير sense of community بمعنى الأحساس بالانتماء للمجتمع)

يستحدم solution هما بمعنى (محلول)

يستخدم التعبير Inspire trust بمعنى (يمعث الثقة في شخص)

يستخدم التعيير for the benefit بمعنى المصلحة!.

يستحجم التعبير the age of majority بمحتى (سن انبلوغ).

تستخدم العبارة high definition بمعنى (عالى الدقة).

يستحدم التعبير on purpose بمعنى (عمدااعن قصد).

Unit 10

1. c) adults منابعة adults هنا بمعنى (كبار الحيوانات). 2. b) launched ستخدم التعبير launch an attack بمعنى (يشن هجوما). 3. d) keen تستخدم keen هنا بمعنى (حاد/شدید). 4. a) serious يستخدم العبارة serious money بمعنى (قدر كبير من المال). 5. d) route ستخدم التعبير the route to success بمعنى (طريق النجاح). 6. b) broadcast يستخدم broadcast هنا بمعنى (يفشي/يذيع معلومة أو سر). 7. c) digital تستخدم العبارة digital marketing بمعنى (التسويق الرقمي عبر الإنترنت للمنتجات). 8. a) zoomed تستخدم zoom up بمعنی (یزداد بشکل کبیر و سریع). 9. d) channel تستخدم channel هنا بمعنى (وسيلة/طريقة للتعبير). 10. b) scenes مستخدم التعبير behind the scenes بمعنى (خلف الكواليس/في خفاء).

- 11. d) being cooked
- 12. c) been told
- 13. a) got/had done
- 14. b) had visited
- 15. d) hadn't bought
- 16. c) has lost
- 17. a) death
- 18, b) built
- 19. a) After the car he had been repaired, it was polished.
- 20. a) As soon as the girl disappeared, we told the police.

	Unit 11
b) comedy	
	يستخدم التعبير comedy of the situation بمعنى اموقف ساخرا.
d) harness	
2	تستخدم العبارة climbing harness بمعنى (حزلم/أداة تستخدم في رياضة التسلق).
3. c) animation	
	تستخدم animation هنا بمعنى احيويةا.
4. a) scenery	
*	تستندم scenery هنا بمعنى اليكور في مسرحية).
5. b) demonstrated	
,	يستندم demonstrate هنا بمعنى (يتظاهر).
6. c) version	
	يستضم ٧٤٢٥٠٥١ هنا بعمني ارواية لحدث من وجعة نظراً.
7. d) mission	
	تستصم ٣٥٥٥٣ هنا بمعنى (ارسائية/مدرسة تبشيرية).
g c) popular	
-	A to the to the total and the

تستضم العبارة popular support بمعنى (تابيد علم). 9. b) romantic

تستضم ٢٥٣٥هـ هنا بمعنى الخيلالي ابعيد عن الواقع).

ستضم التعسر not for lack, want of بمعنى اليس بسبب قلة العماولة).

11. c) Yes, it is 12. d) is there 13. b) isn't it 14. a) cowardly 15. c) hardly 16. b) strong 17. d) easy

10. a) lack

18. a) quickly / possible

19. a) to eat quickly and cheaply

20. b) extremely well-organised

Unit 12

1. c) recipe

4. d) objective

5. a) recorded

7. b) accessories

8. d) benefit

9. c) devices

6. c) filter

يستخدم recipe هئا بمعنى (طريقة إجراء/طريقة عمل). **2. b)** highlights

تستخدم highlights هنا بمعنى (اللقطات البارزة من مباراة). 3. a) aim

يستخدم التعبير take aim at هنا بمعنى (يضع في مرمي النقد)،

تستخدم objective هنا بمعنى (موضوعي).

يستخدم التعبير record its first win يمعنى (يحرز الفوز الأول).

يستخدم العبارة spam filter بمعنى (فلتر البريد المزعج على الإنترنت).

تستخدم accessory هنا بمعنى (مشترك في جريمة).

تستخدم العبارة unemployment benefit بمعنى (إعانة بطالة).

بستخدم التعبير be left to their own devices بمعنى (يترك بمفرده ليفعل ما يحلو له).

10. a) global بمعنى (نظرة شاملة). يستخدم العبارة global view بمعنى (نظرة شاملة).

11. c) what

12. b) Why

13. d) all are possible

14. b) The dog which she bought last week barks a lot.

15. c) who was already over sixty-five

16. b) which cost him a lot

17. a) caught

18. b) whose

19. d) of which

20. d) all of which were difficult

رقم الإيداغ: ٢٠٢٢/٢٠٤٨ ترخيص وزارة التريية والتعليم رقم: ٢٠٢/٢/١٢/١٠٤ طبعة: 2024 خدمة العملاء: 16766



جميع الحقوق محفوظة © لدارنهضة مصر للنشر يحظر طبع أو نشر أو تصوير أو تخزين أدجزه من هذا اكتاب بأية وسيلة الكترونية أو ميكانيكية أو بالتصوير أو خلاف ذلك إلا بإنن كتابي صريح من الناشر.

Cr	loose the correct a	answer from a, b,	c or a:	20
0	It's important for a	teacher to balance	e punishment with	positive
	a) allowance		b) encouragemen	t
	c) reflection		d) detest	
2	The young actress	was full of	to achieve her goa	ls.
	a) consumption		b) conservation	
	c) appliance		d) determination	
3	The new coach of	the team speaks Er	nglish with a French	ıas he is
	$from \ Switzerland.$			
	a) accent	b) language	c) note	d) sign
0	The lastsh	ne made in her diar	y was on October 1	0 th .
	a) enter	b) entry	c) place	d) trip
5	Hisconfirm	ns that he always go	es to gym. He looks	really fit.
	a) appearance	b) determination	c) avoidance	d) facilitation
6	Algeria became fu	Ily from Fra	ance in 1962.	
,	a) dependent	b) nosy	c) independent	d) facilitated
0	There were so mar	ny people talking tl	hat I couldn't	on the music.
	a) duplicate	b) replicate	c) investigate	d) concentrate
8	The secretary put	the conference dat	e in the manager's	•
	a) diary	b) book	c) article	d) title
9	The businessman	has two big flats in	n Sharm El Sheikh,	not to his
	villa in 6 th October	City.		
	a) remember	b) remind	c) mention	d) study
10	You must read th	e dictionary	carefully to kno	w the distinction
	between these tw	o words.		
	a) enters	b) entries	c) exits	d) indexes
0	1 in Londo	n for three weeks ir	n July.	
	a) stay	b) staying	c) have stayed	d) 'm staying
2	Aya classic	cal music to jazz an		
	a) preferring	b) prefer	c) prefers	d) is preferring



🛮 🔞 I'm so happy Emad! I	My parents and I	on holiday	next week.
a) have gone b	are going	c) go	d) went
49 Galal to go h	nome right now.		
a) wants		b) want	
c) is wanting		d) has wanted	
15 Mr. Hossam	accurate. He give	es the correct and tr	ue details.
a) is always being	b) always is	c) is always	d) has always
6 I that the situ	uation is out of co	ontrol.	
a) 'm seeing	b) will see	c) sees	d) see
 Samy and Waleed	hard these	days.	
a) study	b) are studying	c) have studied	d) will study
I something	outside. Are the	doors locked?	
a) am hearing	b) hearing	c) hears	d) can hear
I taking early	y retirement. This	is something I'm th	inking about now.
a) 'm considering b	o) considering	c) considered	d) consider
🖢 <table-row> Which one of the fol</table-row>	llowing sentence	s is grammatically o	correct?
a) They are having a	nice house.		
b) She usually isn't h	naving a good tim	ne shopping.	
c) People like Ahmed	d because he is b	eing polite.	
d) We don't have a lo	ot of fun going to	the dentist.	

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:



The bell rang. Miss Fareeda had just finished explaining the last sum to the class. Before she could say another word, some of the students stood up. They were ready to head to the canteen. Miss Fareeda told them sternly, "There isn't any need to rush. There's plenty of food and time for you to have your recess." She insisted that the class went for their recess in an orderly manner.

However, once she was out of sight, the boys started jostling each other down the stairs. There was a lot of pushing, shoving and laughing. Suddenly, there was a loud thud followed by a scream. Everyone on the stairs stopped in their tracks.

It turned out that one of the boys in front had missed a step and fallen. He landed hard on his elbow. The bone jutted out. The boy was whimpering in pain. His friend quickly helped him up and brought him to the office. The principal took one look at the injury and immediately called for an ambulance. While waiting, the other boys in the group were questioned. When told what they were doing on the stairs, the principal shook his head. The injured boy and his friends hung their head in shame. They apologised for their behaviour. The principal said, "Let this be a lesson to you."

The injured boy was then brought to the hospital. The following week, he returned to school with a cast around his arm.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

What was the lesson the class had just before the bell rail	fore the bell rang?
---	---------------------

- a) Physics.
- b) English.
- c) Maths.
- d) Chemistry.

- What caused the loud thud?
 - a) A boy had fallen down the stairs.
 - b) Some stairs fell over.
 - c) There was a fight on the stairs.
- 23 The boys didn't follow
 - a) the school rules

b) Mrs. Fareeda's advice

c) the traffic rules

- d) the right stairs
- The antonym of the word "sternly" is

d) Some boys were running down the stairs.

- a) firmly
- b) severely
- c) strictly
- d) softly
- 49 The principal called for theto help the injury.
 - a) ambulance
- b) police
- c) other teachers d) the other boys
- Tinally, the boys realised that they were
 - a) right
- b) mistaken
- c) strong
- d) clever
- The boy was screaming, so his arm might be
 - a) burnt
- b) healed
- c) infected
- d) broken

- - a) follow Mrs. Fareeda's advice
 - b) follow the headmaster's advice
 - c) follow the elderly's advice
 - d) follow their friends' advice

		3
	- لا يستطيع أحد أن ينكر أن إصلاح التعليم هو السبيل الأمثل لإصلاح الفرد والمجتمع؛ فالتعليم هو	
	الطريقة المثلى لبناء المواطن الصالح القادر على مواجهة تحديات العصر.	

	30 Translate into Arabic:	
	- We must forget our disagreements and disputes and unite for the sake of Egypt. It's our beloved country which has faced all	3
	hardships and remained strong against enemies.	

90	9	
	③ Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words	
	on the following:	
	on the following.	6
	-	6
	"The way advertisements can affect people"	6
	-	6
	-	6
	-	6
	-	6
	-	6
	-	6
	-	6
	"The way advertisements can affect people"	
	"The way advertisements can affect people"	******
	"The way advertisements can affect people"	*********
	"The way advertisements can affect people"	
	"The way advertisements can affect people"	

Choose the correct a	nswer from a, b,	c or d:	20
1 The clothes compar	ny is planning a gr	eat of its out	lets in Alexandria
to sell more.			
a) deterioration	b) decline	c) expansion	d) reduction
2 The leisure	in this hotel inclu	de a sauna and a gy	m.
a) probabilities	b) facilities	c) accessibilities	d) availabilities
3 We do not t	his film suitable f	or young children a	s it has many
violent scenes.			
a) consider	b) accept	c) agree	d) expect
My secretary will ca			
a) intensive	b) convenient	c) extensive	d) scanned
These books are als	o available in an .	form which	you can read on
an e-reader or mob	•		
a) electricity		c) electrical	•
6 The Suez Canal	•	-	
		c) Validity	
Egypt has a lot of s	ports wh	ich make it able to h	nost international
competitions.			
•		c) accessibilities	
Thenumbe			eriments of
the corona vaccine		•	
a) vague	b) avoidable		•
Can we look for a q	uieter place for c	our conversation? Th	is café looks very
•			
a) general		c) special	
The new clerk does		salary for his new jo	b is So,
he is considering le	-		
a) awful		c) satisfactory	
1 don't think you			
a) have		c) will have	•
2 By the time he grad	uates, Iamer	· ·	
a) will take		b) is going to take	
c) takes		d) will have taken	



	They will have liv	ed in Maadi	10 years by next M	larch.
	a) for	b) to	c) since	d) at
	😃 In one year, I	my English e	enough to have a lo	nger conversation
	with someone.			
	a) improve		b) will have imp	oved
	c) will be improve	ed	d) am improving	
	By this time next	month, I hope the	y the comm	unity centre.
	a) will be building	g	b) have built	
	c) will build		d) will have built	
	16 We are already bu		•	•
6	a) have complete	ed	b) be completed	
C.	c) complete		d) be completing	
	You should come	earlier if you wan	t to speak to her. By	three oʻclock,
	she) All 1 6	
			c) will have left	
	1 Do you think you	writing th	•	-
	a) will finish		b) will have finis	nea
	c) will be finishin	•	d) are finishing	a ta walta la la a waxa wala
	By next month, I w	'iii nim for ti	•	e is reliable enough.
	a) know	wing	b) be knowing	
	c) have been kno	-	d) have known	
	The project is goi			~
	a) have been conc) complete	ipieteu	b) be completingd) have complet	
			•	
	Read the following	passage, then ar	nswer the question	s: 8



People of long ago used to live in groups in caves or in jungles. They wandered from place to place hunting animals and looking for food like nuts, roots, wild fruits and berries.



Then later people began to settle along or near rivers because they were sources of water, food, trade and transport. They used the river water for drinking, cooking and washing. Their animals also drank from these rivers.

The rivers were full of fish. Rivers also made good farmland for these early river settlers. During the yearly flood, rivers carried along with them river mud which was very fertile. This fertile soil was left behind after each flood. Thus, river banks or valleys were suitable places for farming. The people started to cultivate their own crops.

Besides the fertile soil, rivers were also used as a form of highway. Men began to use rafts and boats as a form of water transport to carry their extra food. They sailed to another part of the river to trade with the other settlers. So they became farmers as well as traders. When they began to travel up and down the rivers, they learned about the customs and beliefs of the other settlers.

As trade and transportation grew, the population also grew. These river settlements grew into cities, and these cities became centres of great civilisations like those found in early Egypt, India and China. These civilisations had powerful governments with many laws and government workers.

Choose	the	correct	answer	from a.	b. c	or d:
			dillottel			O : O :

- - a) As trade and transportation grew, the population of river settlements also grew.
 - b) As the river settlements grew, they became cities and centres of civilisation.
 - c) Egypt, India and China were at one time centres of great civilisation.
 - d) Egypt, India and China were the only important and powerful countries
- in the world to have rivers. b) obtain c) look for a) grow d) buy The BEST title for this passage would be "................". a) The river water b) The river cities c) Rivers and the beginning of civilisation d) Rivers and the customs and beliefs of the settlers a Rafts and boats helped the people living near the rivers to be a) farmers and traders b) farmers c) travellers d) sailors a) drinking b) cooking d) all of these c) washing a) fertile b) soft c) sandy d) muddy a) learn about exporting goods to other countries

b) learn about the customs and beliefs of the other settlers

d) learn about seas and rivers around the world

c) learn about transportation



	 a) it isn't used by farmers b) modern technology has replaced traditional farming c) there is no more flood d) there is no water in seas and rivers 	
	Translate into English: قدمت التكنولوجيا الحديثة لنا الكثير من المعجزات الطبية، ومنها أشياء كان يظن البعض أنها خيال علمى يصعب الوصول إليه. بمرور الوقت، تحولت توقعات وآمال العلماء إلى حقيقة.	3
% 0	Translate into Arabic: - If humans contributed to controlling global warming, this world would be cooler and the high temperatures we currently suffer from would decrease.	3
	Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following: "How we can protect our children from the disadvantages of modern technology"	

	Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:			
	1 This of de	sert plant is bec	coming increasingly r	are.
	a) device	b) species	c) spice	d) gender
	Scientists and ge	eographers wen	nt on to exp	lore the River Nile
	especially in the 1	•		
	a) duties	b) tasks	c) expeditions	d) picnics
	Mohamed Salah h	_	eat success as a profe	
	a) achieved			•
	A serious probler	n canif	you don't take thing	s more seriously in
	your study.			
	a) raise	b) arise	c) aside	d) arouse
	More than half the		the of peopl	e.
	a) majority			d) trend
	There should be r		p our natural	
	a) damage		c) destroy	-
		, ,	me that attracts only	
1	a) challenging	•	•	
)	-	from the	exercise, you should	continue for at least
	half an hour.			
	a) harm		c) benefit	
			se can lead to seriou	s and
	emotional proble	ms.		
	a) physical		b) psychological	
	c) economic		d) criminal	
			oof that life exists on	
	a) negative		•	d) valueless
	Kamal is exactly			
	a) the same age		c) so old	
			often take us to t	
	a) are used to		c) would	
			tired as my fathe	
	a) so		c) almost so	
			more interesting th	
	a) lot	n) almost	c) many	d) far



	This bag isthan t a) slightly heavier	he other one. b) slightly heavy
	c) almost heavy	d) as heavy
	Tourists to dive in	•
	a) used to come	b) didn't use to come
	c) would come	d) came
	You're driving too fast. Ca	n you drive?
	a) far slower	b) much slower
6	c) too slowly	d) a bit slowly
9	🛂 🔞 It's to learn a lang	juage in a country where it is spoken.
	a) more easier	b) as easy
	c) a lot easier	d) almost easiest
	1 The dress is a lot	than the shoes.
	 a) more expensive 	b) much expensive
	c) expensive	d) most expensive
	4 Jeansin different	colours, but now they do.
	a) are used to coming	b) didn't use to come
	c) used to come	d) used not coming

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

8

A robot is a special kind of machine. It is a machine that moves. It follows instructions. The instructions come from a computer. It does not make mistakes. And it does not get tired. And it never complains. Unless you tell it to!

Robots are all around us. Some robots can help make cars. Some robots can help explore volcanoes. Some robots can help vacuum your house. Some robots can even recognise words. They can be used to help answer telephone calls. Some robots look like humans. But most robots do not. Most robots just look like machines.

Long ago, people imagined robots. Over 2,000 years ago, a famous poet imagined robots. The poet's name was Homer. His robots were made of gold. They cleaned things and they made things. But they were not real. They were imaginary. Nobody was able to make a real robot. The first real robot was made in 1961. It was called Unimate. It was used to help make cars. It looked like a giant arm.

In the future, we will have even more robots. They will do things that we can't do. Or they will do things that we don't want to do. Or they will do things that are too dangerous for us. Robots will help us fight fires. They will help us fight wars. They will help us fight sickness. They will help us discover things. They will help make life better.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Why doesn't the robot make mistakes, get tired or complain?
 - a) Because it's made of plastic.
 - b) Because it can't speak.
 - c) Because it looks like a human.
 - d) Because it's a machine.
- 2 As used in paragraph 1, we can understand that something special is NOT
 - a) normal
- b) expensive
- c) perfect
- d) tired

- What is the main purpose of paragraph 2?
 - a) To show how easy it is to make a robot.
 - b) To tell what a robot is.
 - c) To describe the things a robot can do.
 - d) To explain the difference between a robot and a machine.
- Using the information in the passage as a guide, which of these gives the best use of a robot?
- a) To help make a sandwich.
- b) To help explore Mars.

c) To help read a book.

- d) To help tie shoes.
- - a) robots are helpful
 - b) robots are not necessary in our life
 - c) robots cause a lot of problems
 - d) a world without robots is a safe one
- - a) in 2000
- b) in 1969
- c) 61 years ago d) 22 years ago
- The robot doesn't object to anything, so it
 - a) can be destroyed easily
- b) is different from man

c) resembles man

- d) gets tired easily
- - a) doesn't get tired
 - b) is rewarded by man
 - c) has the same features as man
 - d) can commit crimes

 _	

Translate into English:	
لقراءة هواية مفيدة جدًّا؛ لأنها تحفز عقلك، ويقول الخبراء: إن لها تأثيرًا مهدئًا للأعصاب. يمكنها أن	1 - 3
خفض مستويات الإجهاد وتساعدك على الاسترخاء والخلود إلى النوم بهدوء.	ï
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
Translate into Arabic:	3
- Our society needs more individuals that possess good moral	
values in order to grow and develop the right way. Morals are	
really the good signs of a civilised society.	
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIGHTY (180) word	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) word	s <u>6</u>
on the following:	s <u>6</u>
	s <u>6</u>
on the following:	S 6
"Why is the preservation of biodiversity on earth important?"	6
"Why is the preservation of biodiversity on earth important?"	6
"Why is the preservation of biodiversity on earth important?"	6
"Why is the preservation of biodiversity on earth important?"	6
"Why is the preservation of biodiversity on earth important?"	6

CI	noose the correct a	inswer from a, b,	c or d:	20
0	The CNN news sta	tion prog	grammes around t	the world in
	many languages.			
	a) consumes	b) downloads	c) broadcasts	d) reports
2	My father got a pos	sition as an assista	ant at a ne	w magazine.
	a) editor	b) seller	c) newsreader	d) worker
3	Historians have no	t alwaysa	bout the exact da	te of Ramses II's
	coronation.			
	a) accepted	b) agreed	c) expected	d) explored
0	Yehia El-Fakhrany g	gave a/an	performance as K	ing Lear.
	All the audience lik	te him.		
	a) brilliant	•	c) awkward	•
6	Dr. Zewail went to			
	a) affection	b) education	c) practice	d) fiction
6	The with th	ne new prime min	ister will be show	n on tonight's news.
	a) interview	b) criticism	c) attack	d) truce
7	There are many se	earch in c	competition, but	Google is the most
	popular.			
	a) powers		c) engines	
8	During the war, the		Hemingway was e	employed as
	a newspaper			
	a) fighter			d) correspondent
9	•			and convenient, so
	he buys most of his		. •	
	a) inline	b) offline	c) online	-
10	, ,	r apologised for h	er mistake, I felt a	of regret in
	her voice.			
	a) sound		c) look	
U	We went to Londor	n last year, but we		years earlier.
	a) had also been		b) were being	
	c) have also been		d) would be	
Ø	•	the test ma	•	e was very nervous.
	a) has done		b) had been doir	ng
	c) was doing		d) had done	



	Before I went to b	ed, I my fri	end.	
	a) was phoning	b) was phoned	c) had phoned	d) have phoned
	She didn't sleep u	ntil shehe	r homework.	
	a) had done	b) has done	c) does	d) will do
(a) After she had passed her driving test, shea new car.				ew car.
	a) had bought	b) bought	c) will buy	d) is buying
	As soon as it stopp	oed raining, the ma	atch	
	a) will start	b) started	c) had started	d) has started
6	1you an e	mail earlier this mo	orning.	
0	a) sent	b) 've sent	c) had sent	d) was sending
	13 The boy p	hotos after the po	lice had left the s	cene.
	a) was taking	b) had taken	c) took	d) was taken
	1 went to Belgium	last month. I	there. It's a bea	autiful country.
	a) had never beer	1	b) have never b	een
	c) never was		d) never been	
	4 He knew that she	had been crying a	s her eyes	. red.
	a) have been	b) had been	c) are	d) were

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

8

Karl Benz invented the modern car in 1888 in Germany. Emile Roger worked for Benz in France. He made cars in France. By 1900, many people were building cars in France and in the U.S. The first company to build only cars was Panhard et Levassor in France. Panhard started in 1889. The Peugeot car company started in 1891 in France. In the US, Frank and Charles Duryea started the Duryea Motor Wagon Company in 1893. It was the first US car company. By 1902, Ransom E. Olds started the Olds Motor Vehicle Company. A year later, Henry Ford started the Ford Motor Company. It produced the Cadillac. All these early modern cars burned gasoline or diesel fuel. Ford opened factories in France and Britain in 1911. Then, they opened a factory in Denmark in 1923. Later, they opened a factory in Germany in 1925. Ford was one of the first manufacturers to use an assembly line. With an assembly line, factory workers could produce cars faster and safer than other production systems.

Most modern cars still burn gasoline or diesel fuel. These cars cause air pollution. They get the air dirty. Now many people are looking for cleaner cars. And many car companies are looking for cleaner fuels.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: Which company first built only cars? b) Ford. a) Benz. c) Panhard. d) Duryea. a) what makes cars move b) a car production system c) the price of a car d) None of the above 3 What is an assembly line? a) A way of making products. b) A safe way of making products. c) A quick way of making products. d) All of the above. a) factory in Denmark in 1911 b) factory in Germany in 1925 c) factory in Britain in 1929 d) factory in France in 1931 b) about 131 years ago a) in 1991 d) in the 18th century c) about 133 years ago 25 Whose idea was the assembly line? a) Henry Ford's. b) Panhard's. c) Frank and Charles'. d) Ransom's. The cars causing pollution are those which a) use nuclear energy b) use electricity c) use gasoline or diesel fuel d) are used by children as toys a) machine b) consumer

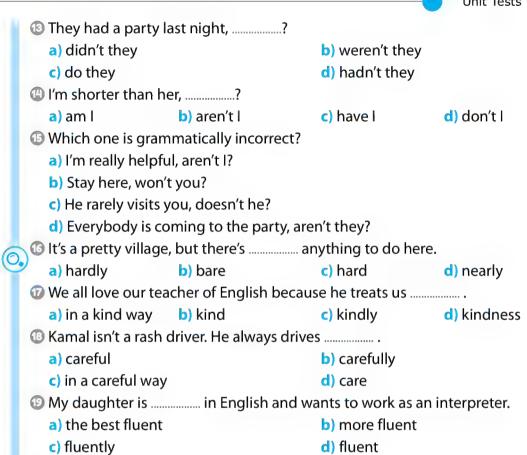
d) industrialist

c) explorer

_		
	-	
	7	

	Translate into English:
	- تؤدى النزاعات والحروب إلى آثار نفسية كثيرة على الأطفال، من أهمها: فقدان الشعور بالأمان
	والخوف الدائم من المستقبل؛ لذلك علينا أن نتجنب الحروب بشتى السبل.
	Translate into Arabic:
	- Young people should appreciate their elders' advice and consult.
	They went through a lot of situations in life so this advice is the outcome
	of their experience in life
	Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words
	on the following:
	on the following: - To your friend Salim telling him about your new school in the United Arak
	 on the following: To your friend Salim telling him about your new school in the United Arak Emirates and about making new friends when you moved there with you
	on the following: - To your friend Salim telling him about your new school in the United Arak
	 on the following: To your friend Salim telling him about your new school in the United Arak Emirates and about making new friends when you moved there with you
	 on the following: To your friend Salim telling him about your new school in the United Arak Emirates and about making new friends when you moved there with you
	 on the following: To your friend Salim telling him about your new school in the United Arak Emirates and about making new friends when you moved there with you
	 on the following: To your friend Salim telling him about your new school in the United Arak Emirates and about making new friends when you moved there with you
D ₁	 on the following: To your friend Salim telling him about your new school in the United Arak Emirates and about making new friends when you moved there with you
	 on the following: To your friend Salim telling him about your new school in the United Arak Emirates and about making new friends when you moved there with you
	on the following: - To your friend Salim telling him about your new school in the United Arak Emirates and about making new friends when you moved there with you family. Your name is Adel.
	on the following: - To your friend Salim telling him about your new school in the United Arak Emirates and about making new friends when you moved there with you family. Your name is Adel.
	on the following: - To your friend Salim telling him about your new school in the United Arak Emirates and about making new friends when you moved there with you family. Your name is Adel.
	on the following: - To your friend Salim telling him about your new school in the United Arak Emirates and about making new friends when you moved there with you family. Your name is Adel.

Choose the corr	ect answer from a, b, o	or d:	20
Although they	are old, Ismail Yassen's .	are still like	d by many people.
a) fictions	b) romances	c) horrors	d) comedies
2 My father do	esn't like films	saying that they	can make people
nervous.			
a) horror	b) historical	c) comic	d) romantic
Scientists desi	gned systems to	the energy of wa	ves to produce
electricity.			
a) conclude	b) include	c) consume	d) harness
The restaurant	t is extremely, o	wing to its high sta	andard of food.
a) hateful	b) detesting	c) popular	d) affecting
The small com	pany did notth	ne danger that was	involved in
the new proje	ect.		
a) realise	b) achieve	c) recognise	d) respire
The Nile passe	es through a rich variety	of in some	African countries.
a) site	b) treasury	c) audience	d) scenery
The children re	ead the novel in its simp	olified	
a) type	b) version	c) episode	d) animation
You must pres	ent proof of yo	ur admittance to th	ne university.
a) correspond	ence	b) copy	
c) documenta	ry	d) competition	1
My cousin join	ed theof a large	e fishing boat as ha	d always dreamed
of working in	the sea.		
a) staff	b) crew	c) cast	d) group
O Saudi Arabia i	s Egypt's principal tradi	ngin the A	rab world.
a) partner	b) companion	c) colleague	d) consumer
O Don't eat the	whole chicken,?		
a) will l	b) won't you	c) will you	d) won't l
She likes class	ical music,?		
a) isn't she	b) did she	c) does she	d) doesn't she



Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

b) quicker

40 How can a sportsman run?

a) guick

8

d) quickest

Generally, rainforests are forests with high rainfall and a large number of different kinds of plants and animals. Human beings depend on rainforests in <u>numerous</u> ways but it would be wrong to suggest that they should be saved just because they are useful to humans.

c) quickly



Rainforests have been called the womb of life because they are home to 50 - 90% of the species on earth although tropical forests cover 12% of the land area of the Earth. It has been estimated that as a result of cutting down rainforest, at least 40 species are disappearing every day. No one knows just how the rest of the global ecosystems depend on rainforests, but we may find out in the next 30 to 50 years.

Rainforests are a vital source of medicine and at least 25% of all modern drugs came originally from rainforests. Rainforests offer a veritable bounty of foods. The Earth's climate is affected by rainforests. When trees are cut down and burnt or left to decompose, they release carbon dioxide into the air which is the main gas that causes global warming. Cutting down rainforests also changes the amount of rain that falls in an area. When rain falls on forests, the water is slowed down and absorbed by trees and plants. When they are taken away, the water flows quickly over the ground and this causes floods and erosion.

Choose the correct answer	from a,	b, c or d:
---------------------------	---------	------------

Many animals are disappearing from	m Earth because of
a) global warming	b) cutting down rainforests
c) high rainfall and flood	d) global ecosystems
@ The species mentioned in the pass	age are
a) plants and animals	b) medicine and food
c) plants	d) animals
$^{\circ}$ The underlined word "they" refers	to
a) rain and water	b) floods and erosion
c) absorbed water	d) trees and plants
How does cutting down rainforest	s affect the earth's climate?
a) It leads to the increase of carbo	n dioxide.
b) It causes more earthquakes.	
c) It increases the hurricanes.	
d) It decreases air.	
The underlined word "numerous" is	similar in meaning to the word
a) similar	b) different
c) many	d) few
The best suitable title to the passage	ge is "".
a) The disappearing of animals and	d plants
b) Rainforests and man	

c) The end of rainforests

d) The importance of rainforests



	Cutting trees can be the	cause of
	a) many diseases	b) food shortage
	c) floods and erosion	d) man's poverty
(Besides being called the	womb of life, rainforests provide humans
9	with	· ·
	a) food	b) medicine
	c) water	d) air
	_	,
	Translate into English:	
		🚺 - لو استطاع كل فرد القيام بدوره على أكمل وجه لتقدمت مصر ف
		الأمم. من المؤكد أن تنمية البلاد لا تتحقق دون الجهد والصبر

	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	
	Translate into Arabic:	(3)
	- Mass media - represen	ted in television, the radio and the press - have
	· ·	ne. They form the public opinion of any nation.
	a vital effect off everyo	rie. They form the public opinion of any hation.

(n)		
(g))	
	@ Write an email of about	t ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words
		TONE HONDRED AND EIGHTT (180) WOLGS
	on the following:	6
	•	elling her about a reading competition
	on famous writers you	are going to take part in and asking her for
	suggestions. Your nam	ie is Sara.

	••••	

	Ch	oose the correct a	answer from a,	b, c or d:	20
	O I	In order to succeed	d in your life, yo	u must setan	d specific goals.
	i	a) awful	b) achievable	c) hilarious	d) imaginary
	2	A/An is a p	erson who mak	es money by starting	or running
	I	businesses, especi	ally when this in	volves taking financi	al risks.
	ě	a) entertainer	b) designer	c) entrepreneur	d) consultant
	3	Father says that w	e can't t	o go anywhere this s	ummer because of
	I	p مالی his financial	roblems.		
		a) produce	b) afford	c) attend	d) apply
	(4)	All members of the	e team are reque	ested to this i	mportant meeting.
		a) afford	b) reject	c) refuse	d) attend
	6	The businessman	is a supp	porter of sports and h	ne is the sponsor of
	9	some young athle	tes.		
		a) secret	b) passionate	c) specific	d) heavy
	6	There should be m	ore laws to enha	ance environmental a	nd wildlife
1	i	in Egypt.			
		a) imagination	b) convention	c) conservation	d) condensation
	7	The chef of this far	mous restaurant	keeps all his	a secret.
		a) prescriptions	b) recipes	c) directions	d) observations
	8	The of the	famous artist's p	painting at the gallery	asserted his talent.
		a) show	b) display	•	•
		•	first prize in the	artat the ur	niversity.
		a) compilation		b) accommodation	
		c) consolidation		d) competition	
		,		oolice as a/an	
		a) accessory	b) device	-,,,,,,,,,,	d) outfit
			•	ard enough cannot b	
		a) which		c) whose	d) who
				is very harmful to he	
		a) which	b) what	•	d) that
		•		are living abroad.	
	- 7	a) who	b) that	c) whom	d) whose



	All the students	s to organ	nise a picnic were	discouraged when they
	saw the dark clo	ouds.		
	a) wish	b) wishing	c) wished	d) are wished
	This is the resta	urantl us	sually go for my n	neals.
	a) to which	b) which	c) at which	d) in which
	1 The boys	lives were resc	ued by the police	men are fine now.
	a) who	b) who's	c) which	d) whose
	Tonfusing topic	cs are we	ll-expressed can b	oe understood.
	a) who	b) that	c) where	d) when
0	10 The questions	in the exa	m were specially	chosen.
Ĭ	a) asking	b) which aske	ed c) asked	d) that ask
	Shakespeare, m	nost ofp	lays were adapte	ed to the cinema, is still
	read by many.			
	a) whose	b) his	c) whom	d) who
	@ We stayed in a l	notel		
	a) where every	room had a broa	dband connectio	n
	b) which every	room had a broa	dband connectio	n
	c) that every ro	om had a broadb	and connection	
	d) every room h	had a broadband	connection	

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

What is an ideal holiday for one person may be a very unpleasant one for another. The sportsman likes a kind of holiday which his lazy friend would find worse than his daily work; while the lazy man's ideal holiday would leave the sportsman quite unsatisfied. If I were allowed to choose my own holiday, I would go on a voyage in a modern passenger ship with a swimming pool.



Even if the sportsman and his lazy friend came with me, they would both be happy; one would have plenty of games and swimming; the other could sit in a comfortable chair all day, looking at the sea and drinking lemonade. On a ship, one can do as one likes, when one likes. If one day I find an interesting book in the ship's library, I can spend the whole day reading it, and nobody will stop me. Perhaps the next day I shall want some exercise. Well, then I can play games with passengers until I am hot and sweating and ready for a bath. I can go and sleep in my cabin at any time of the day or night, I can get cheap drinks during most of the day, and I can eat as I like, choosing among a variety of foods.

But perhaps the greatest pleasure of a sea holiday is coming to new ports in strange lands, and going ashore for a few hours to see strange places, eat strange foods and hear a strange language talked around us. Whenever I think of my ideal holiday, it is the picture of a mysterious foreign city that comes to my mind.

Choose the correct answer f	rom a, b, c or d:
② The utmost pleasure of a se	ea holiday is
a) coming to new harbours	b) coming to new states
c) going shopping	d) meeting people
The underlined word "one"	refers to
a) the lazy man	b) the passenger
d) anyone	c) the sportsman
The best title to this text is	<i>u</i>
a) Lazy people	b) Sportsmen
c) A passenger ship	d) An ideal holiday
One of the following isn't n	nentioned in the passage:
a) Coming to new ports in	strange lands is an enjoyable moment.
b) A voyage in a modern pa	assenger ship with a swimming pool would suit
the sportsman and his la	azy friend.
c) The writer seems to like	the sea.
d) A voyage in a modern p	assenger ship would be noisy.
Activities on the ship are	
a) the same	b) similar
c) different	d) boring
The writer seems to be	concerning trying foods.
a) adventurous	b) timid
c) selfish	d) worried
The antonym of the word "	unsatisfied" is
a) unhappy	b) disappointed
c) contented	d) unconvinced
7 The writer likes to be	on a shin to enjoy his yoyage

b) alone

d) single

a) in company

c) lonely

_	

أغنى الدول.	e into English: ى التى لو أحسنا استغلالها لأصبحنا من أ ن لمصر يمكن أن نطور كافة المجالات الأد		
- Opposi	e into Arabic: ng terrorism has been tried ts are still getting support f		
	their goals. Facing it is a gl	•	
		••••••	
③ Write an	essay of about ONE HUNDI	RED AND EIGHTY (180) words
on the fo "How car			
on the fo "How car	llowing: n universities play a role in p		
on the fo "How car	llowing: n universities play a role in p		
on the fo "How car	llowing: n universities play a role in p		
on the fo "How car	llowing: n universities play a role in p		
on the fo "How car	llowing: n universities play a role in p		
on the fo	n universities play a role in pas for our problems?"	providing us with tech	nological
on the fo	n universities play a role in pas for our problems?"	providing us with tech	nological
on the fo	n universities play a role in pas for our problems?"	providing us with tech	nological

Final Tests

Final Test Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: b) determination a) appearance c) avoidance d) facilitation a) discouragement b) persistence c) collision d) encouragement 3 Over 120 of birds have been recorded in the city's National Park. a) devices b) species c) spices d) genders (1) The army leaders met for the purpose of preserving the ceasefire. a) relevant b) hilarious c) timing d) specific (5) He won the first prize in the writing because he has a real talent. a) comparison b) competition c) culture d) conversation (3) The big rate of of online shopping hasn't been expected by even the most ambitious producers. b) exploration c) expansion a) reduction d) condensation Planning a wedding party for over 1000 guests will be a veryjob. a) challenging b) changing c) affecting d) valueless 1 The sports channel will be the match live from Rome. a) rehearsing b) planning c) producing d) broadcasting c) animation a) horror b) romantic d) musical 10 Helping homeless African people is one of Bill Gates's in life. a) missiles b) missions c) businesses d) firms 1 He often helps other people. I he is a good man. a) think b) am thinking c) have been thinking d) had been thinking Next April, Hany and Olafor 20 years. b) will have been being married a) are going to marry c) will marry d) will have been married



	The kilo of cot	ton is exactly the s	ame weight	the kilo of meat	
	a) from	b) than	c) as	d) to	
	4 Hadeer	very sick until sh	e stopped eating	g junk food.	
	a) has been	b) had been	c) was being	d) is	
	(5) Which one of	the following is gra	ammatically corr	ect?	
	a) He must be	mistaken if he bel	ieves in magic, is	sn't he?	
	b) He must be	mistaken if he be	lieves in magic, n	nustn't he?	
	c) He must be	mistaken if he bel	ieves in magic, n	eedn't he?	
	d) He must be	mistaken if he be	lieves in magic, c	an't he?	
	The bed	has no mattress			
(O,	a) I sleep on		b) I sleep on it		
Ĭ	c) which I slee	p on it	d) on which I	sleep on	
	The children	in the class	room. They are si	itting quietly.	
	a) are teaching	g	b) have been	taught	
	c) are being ta	ught	d) were taugh	t	
	[®] Well done, Ha	mdy! a cle	ver boy!		
	a) Who	b) Which	c) How	d) What	
	19 He did	. me if I had met m	ny classmates at t	the party.	
	a) to ask	b) ask	c) asked	d) asking	
		tter begin work no	ow if we want to	finish it in due time.	
	a) would	b) should	c) had	d) have	
ı	Read the follow	ing passage, ther	answer the qu	estions:	8
					-

Alternative medicine is not new. It is accepted that it pre-dates conventional medicine and it is still used by many people all over the world. I am unconvinced that it is dangerous, and feel that both alternative and conventional medicine can be useful.

There are several reasons why the conventional medical community is often dismissive of alternatives. Firstly, there has been little scientific research into such medicine, so there is a scarcity of evidence to support the claims of their supporters. Furthermore, people often try such treatment because of recommendations from friends, and therefore come to the therapist with a very positive attitude, which may be part of the reason for the cure. Moreover, these therapies are usually only useful for long-term, chronic conditions. Acute medical problems, such as accidental injury, often require more conventional methods.

On the other hand, there remain strong arguments for the use of alternatives. Despite the lack of scientific proof, there is a lot of anecdotal evidence to suggest that these therapies work. In addition, far from being dangerous, they often have few or no side effects, so the worst outcome



would be no change. One of the strongest arguments for the effectiveness of alternative therapies in the West is that, whilst conventional medicine is available without charge, many people are prepared to pay considerable sums for alternatives. If they were totally unhelpful, it would be surprising if this continued.

I strongly believe that conventional medicine and alternative therapies can and should coexist. They have different strengths, and can both be used effectively to target particular medical problems. The best situation would be for alternative therapies to be used to support and complement conventional medicine.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- - a) have enough evidence that it's better than conventional medicine
 - b) know what conventional medicine is
 - c) like people who approve of conventional medicine
 - d) use it unless doctors recommend it
- Which one of the following is TRUE?
 - a) Conventional medicine preceded alternative medicine.
 - **b)** Scientific research concentrated much on alternative medicine.
 - c) Alternative medicine is useful for long-term illnesses.
 - d) Conventional medicine has no side effects.
- Which one of the following gives the synonym of the word "positive"?
- - a) conventional medicine is better than alternative medicine
 - b) alternative medicine is better than conventional medicine
 - c) alternative medicine and conventional medicine can both be used effectively

d) Useless.

- d) It is dangerous to use alternative medicine
- - a) Alternative medicine and conventional medicine
 - b) People who are in favour of alternative medicine
 - c) People who are in favour of conventional medicine
 - d) The dangers of conventional medicine
- - a) it has many disadvantages and affects health badly
 - b) it is very expensive
 - c) they don't have enough evidence of its benefit
 - d) it has a lot of side effects and is very dangerous



Final	Tests

	 Alternative medicine isn't useful for acute medical problems because
	b) alternative medicine doesn't have effective elements
0	c) alternative medicine costs much money
C	d) alternative medicine can't be found at hospitals
	Which one of the following gives the antonym of the word "coexist"?
	a) To live together. b) To live and let live.
	c) To depart and leave each other. d) To collaborate.
	② Translate into English:
	🚺 - تجاوزت آثار كوفيد- ١٩ المجال الصحى إلى مجالات أخرى عديدة أهمها المجال الاقتصادي. يعتقد
	الكثيرون أنه ربما أحدث نظامـًا عالميـًا جديدًا قد يمتد لسنوات عديدة قادمة.
	Translate into Arabic:
	- With the news of vaccines for COVID-19, there are now hopes for
	humanity to get over this pandemic. But, will they be effective against
	the new species of the virus?
	the new species of the virus:
(gr	3)
ı	Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words
	on the following:
	-
	"Many people depend on social media for their trusted source of news"
	Do you agree? State your opinion.

Final Test 2

L		
	40	

Chaaca	tha.	corroct	answer	From	2 h		0 × 0	
Lnoose	me	correct	answer	rom	a, D	, C	OL C	

C	noose the correct a	answer from a,	D, c or a:	
1		th disabilities are	e trained to be	
	self-caring.			20
	•	•	c) independent	
2	One of the	tasks of teache	rs is making sure that	t all students
	understand.			
	a) challenging	b) changing	c) negative	d) affecting
3	The native	of America, the	Red Indians, are only	1.5% of Americans.
	a) pioneers	b) discoverers	c) inhabitants	d) players
	Do you have any e	experience that i	is to this baby	/-sitting job?
	a) unaccepted	b) achievable	c) relevant	d) unreliable
5	It is believed that	being a/an	is a way of fulf	illing your creative
	potential and earn	ning money.		
	a) entrepreneur	b) employee	c) trainee	d) servant
6	The school offered	d students prize	es of money and other	er for their
	good work.			
	a) enrichment		b) encouragements	
1	c) contracts		d) efforts	
0	Does the compan	y offer any	for employees w	ith young children
	such as a nursery?			
	a) abilities	b) talents	c) facilities	d) probabilities
8	In 1910, a/an	was sent to	Antarctica led by Cap	tain Scott.
	a) picnic	b) flock	c) expansion	d) expedition
9	The WHO experts ha	ave been unable t	to trace the of (COVID-19 up till now.
	a) reality		c) consequence	
10	Giving your kids to	oo much freedo	m can be a fo	r disaster.
	a) prescription	b) receipt	c) recipe	d) treaty
0	Is that Bassem ove	er there? He	old and tired. Is h	e sick?
	a) looks		b) has looked	
	c) looked		d) has been looking	
12	A: Can I come ove	r in an hour? B:	No, I the hous	se.
	a) will clean		b) will have cleaned	
	c) clean		d) will be cleaning	
13	The game "Matrix	II" was a	s interesting as "Matr	
	a) exactly	b) slightly	c) almost	d) more



	Theya lot of trouble before they finally succeeded.			eded.	
	a) were having	b) had had	c) have	d) have had	
	1 find this novel v	erylt w	as well written.		
	a) interest	b) interested	c) interesting	d) interestingly	
	The car that we were in had had GPS, but the man was driving				
	didn't know.				
	a) whom	b) who	c) whose	d) what	
	During my illness, I the medicine every morning and evening.				
6	a) was given		b) had been given		
(0	c) was giving		d) gave		
	Science fiction novels are most children enjoy reading.			reading.	
	a) where	b) who	c) which	d) what	
	1 The coach was with the team's performance.				
	 a) being disappointed 		b) disappoint		
	c) disappointed		d) disappointing		
	The students	their exam	results next week.		
	a) will be given		b) are given		
	c) will have been	given	d) may give		
	Read the following passage, then answer the questions:				

Litterbugs are people who love to litter around. Litterbugs are also who do not take the responsibility or to play their role in the society to take care of the environment. Why are they litterbugs? Litterbugs are the persons who had lack of awareness, not bothered about the environment and too lazy just to walk a few steps to the trash can. What are the effects of litterbugs? One of the major effect is it will destroy the image of our beautiful country which eventually affects the tourism of our country.



Are you a litterbug? Do you chew gum in the streets? Do you eat on the metro? Have you ever painted graffiti on walls? Are you a jaywalker? If you answered 'yes' to any of these questions, then be careful when you visit Singapore. There's a chance to be stopped and heavily fined! But if you like clean and safe streets, then Singapore could be the perfect destination for your next holiday. Singapore is one of the world's richest cities. It is almost crime-free and spotless, steel skyscrapers, shopping malls, top fashion houses, colourful local markets, discount shops for bargain-hunters, even air-conditioned walkways are all part of the magic of Singapore.

The majority of Singaporeans are of Chinese origin, but there are ethnic groups from India, Malaysia, Indonesia and Thailand living there. It is not surprising that the island has many interesting districts. Calligraphers and fortunetellers can be found in Chinatown. Little India has spices, silverware, brassware and jasmine garlands. Malay villages display the traditional lifestyle of Malays and their arts and crafts such as batik painting and kite-making.

Choose the correct answer from a,	D, C Or a:			
Most Singaporeans are of	origin.			
a) Indian	b) Thai			
c) Chinese	d) European			
2 Singapore is almost				
a) crime-free	b) tax-free			
c) free	d) shop-free			
The law in Singapore fines those was a simulation of the second contract.	who			
 a) like clean and safe streets 	b) throw garbage in the streets			
c) visit the country	d) speak loudly to each other			
② The underlined words "the island" refer to				
a) India	b) Malaysia			
c) Chinese	d) Singapore			
4 Those who don't take care of the	t take care of the environment are			
a) responsible	b) litterbugs			
c) crime-free	d) fortunetellers			
20 The writer of this article wants pe	this article wants people to			
a) take care of the environment				
b) have trashcans in their homes				
c) leave their rubbish in the street	:			
d) be litterbugs				
$ ext{@}$ The synonym of the word "origin"	is			
a) ending point	b) people			
c) source	d) population			
Chewing gums in the streets is in Singapore.				
a) allowed	b) permitted			
c) prohibited	d) preferable			

	ranslate into English:	\
	- يتطلب الحفاظ على البيئة جهودا دولية كبيرة يتم تنظيمها عن طريق الأمم المتحدة، وذلك لأهمية تعاون الدول المتقدمة صناعيًا في خفض انبعاثات الكربون للحفاظ على الكوكب.	7
		•••
30 T	ranslate into Arabic:	
-	Hosting the World Handball Men's Championship during the corona	
	pandemic showed the greatness of Egypt. It also paved the way for other sports international competitions.	
		• • •
ey Ov	Vrite an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTV (190) words	
On A	Vrite an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words	1
	n the followings	7
	n the following:	1
	n the following: You write to your Saudi Arabian friend telling him about an important	7
	You write to your Saudi Arabian friend telling him about an important transport project taking place in Egypt nowadays. Your name is Mostafa	a
	You write to your Saudi Arabian friend telling him about an important) a
	You write to your Saudi Arabian friend telling him about an important transport project taking place in Egypt nowadays. Your name is Mostafa) a
	You write to your Saudi Arabian friend telling him about an important transport project taking place in Egypt nowadays. Your name is Mostafa and your email address is: mostafa005@yahoo.com. Your friend is Fahd	, а
	You write to your Saudi Arabian friend telling him about an important transport project taking place in Egypt nowadays. Your name is Mostafa and your email address is: mostafa005@yahoo.com. Your friend is Fahd	a
	You write to your Saudi Arabian friend telling him about an important transport project taking place in Egypt nowadays. Your name is Mostafa and your email address is: mostafa005@yahoo.com. Your friend is Fahd	
	You write to your Saudi Arabian friend telling him about an important transport project taking place in Egypt nowadays. Your name is Mostafa and your email address is: mostafa005@yahoo.com. Your friend is Fahd	a
	You write to your Saudi Arabian friend telling him about an important transport project taking place in Egypt nowadays. Your name is Mostafa and your email address is: mostafa005@yahoo.com. Your friend is Fahd	
	You write to your Saudi Arabian friend telling him about an important transport project taking place in Egypt nowadays. Your name is Mostafa and your email address is: mostafa005@yahoo.com. Your friend is Fahd and his email address is: fahd300@gmail.com	
	You write to your Saudi Arabian friend telling him about an important transport project taking place in Egypt nowadays. Your name is Mostafa and your email address is: mostafa005@yahoo.com. Your friend is Fahd and his email address is: fahd300@gmail.com	•••
	You write to your Saudi Arabian friend telling him about an important transport project taking place in Egypt nowadays. Your name is Mostafa and your email address is: mostafa005@yahoo.com. Your friend is Fahd and his email address is: fahd300@gmail.com	••••
	You write to your Saudi Arabian friend telling him about an important transport project taking place in Egypt nowadays. Your name is Mostafa and your email address is: mostafa005@yahoo.com. Your friend is Fahd and his email address is: fahd300@gmail.com	••••
	You write to your Saudi Arabian friend telling him about an important transport project taking place in Egypt nowadays. Your name is Mostafa and your email address is: mostafa005@yahoo.com. Your friend is Fahd and his email address is: fahd300@gmail.com	••••

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1 The company sent a driver to pick me from the airport at my arrival. d) for a) up b) on c) away 2 Mr. Essam has managed tohis young good looks through a healthy lifestyle. b) pollute a) damage c) comply d) preserve The new computer company set reasonable andgoals for their first year. a) awful b) achievable c) hilarious d) imaginary 4 A/Anis a person who makes money by starting or running businesses, especially when this involves taking financial risks. a) entertainer b) designer c) entrepreneur d) consultant The film "Jurassic Park" is from a Michael Crichton novel of the same name. b) adapted a) attributed d) inhibited c) applied As a result of the hard economic situation, there was a decrease in car sales this year. c) profits a) modules b) losses d) branches You would be the first to that she is very difficult to work with. a) prohibit b) admit c) exhibit d) inhabit 1 The methods the Ministry of Education use to test secondary school a) high-tech b) outdated c) recent d) old-fashioned

- buildings. a) damage
- b) preserve
- c) waste
- d) harness
- 1 The new machine must have its own power supply.
 - b) intended a) dependent
- c) independent

1 The Ministry of Monuments works to our most precious historic

- d) prohibited
- 1 Samah and Farahfunny right now. They keep telling me funny jokes.
 - a) were
- b) are
- c) are being
- d) had been
- 2 By the end of the week, we 30 new English words. a) will have learned
 - b) will be learning

c) will be learned

d) are learning



	My brother ha	s asofte	r voice than anyon	e in the class.
	a) slight		b) more	
c) farther			d) slightly	
	Magdy	that car for 5 ye	ars before he sold	it.
	a) had been o	wning	b) had owned	
	c) was owning		d) owns	
	⑤ She was in gra	de 3 last year,	she?	
	a) weren't	b) won't	c) didn't	d) wasn't
	This is the stor	y of a man	wife suddenly l	oses her memory.
6	a) who	b) that	c) whose	d) whom
(0,	🕏 🕡 Industrial goo	ds are often proc	lucedin d	eveloping countries.
	a) cheapest		b) cheaply	
	c) cheap		d) more cheap	
	[®] What a state m	ny shoes are in!	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	
	a) They need repairing		b) They need to repair	
	c) It needs rep	air	d) It needs to	be repaired
	19 was it	that you realised	you had lost your	·keys?
	a) Who	b) What	c) Which	d) When
	40 I don't think th	at Hany has	travelled on a	plane.
	a) before	b) still	c) ever	d) never
î	Read the followi	ing passage, the	en answer the qu	estions: 8

Dreams have interested, puzzled, and even frightened people. They thought that dreams always came true, and that they came from something outside the person dreaming.



Since the end of the 19th century, physicians, psychologists and other scientists have been studying dreams. Although they still have much to learn, they think that dreams are created by the dreamer granted, or in which they become somebody they would like to be. These are wish-fulfilling dreams; they occasionally dream they are being chased by robbers, or are in danger from fire or flood. These frightening dreams are called nightmares. People usually have nightmares when they are upset about something.

Studies about the causes of dreams show many reasons. For example, changes in the brain occur during sleep, and these are probably related to dreaming. But no one knows enough yet about the brain changes in dreaming to say exactly what they are. A dreamer's health affects his dreams. A person who is ill will have different kinds of dreams from those of one who is well. If a person is hungry, or cold, or tired, his dreams may include these feelings. In addition, a large part of any dream comes from the events of the day before. Often the person or situations in a night dream are those the dreamer met during the day. The feelings of happiness or disappointment which came out in dreams were probably in the dreamer before. All that dream does is to give them an outlet.

Choose the correct answer fro	ma.	b.	cor	d:
-------------------------------	-----	----	-----	----

d) The consequences of dreams

Changes in the	brain take place		
a) by day	b) at night	c) during sleep	d) during meals
@is a terri	ble dream.		
a) A day-dream	1	b) A nightmare	
c) A dreamer		d) Dreamland	
The underlined	word "them" refers	to	
a) dreams	b) dreamers	c) nightmares	d) feelings
We have been s	studying dreams for	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	
a) more than a	century	b) 300 years	
c) centuries		d) 50 years	
4 Which one of the	ne following doesn't	give the meaning	of "upset"?
a) Worried.	b) Sad.	c) Unhappy.	d) Optimistic.
The person's dr	eams are affected by	y	
a) culture	b) wealth	c) health	d) education
Which of the fo	llowing aren't conce	erned to study drea	ms?
a) Physicians.		b) Politicians.	
c) Scientists.		d) Psychologists	•
The best title for	or the passage is "		
a) Dreams and	their effect		
b) Nightmares			
c) People who	study dreams		

`	

تولى الحكومة اهتماما كبيرًا للشباب عن طريق إعطائهم قروضا بفوائد ميسرة لتنفيذ مشروعاتهم	
الصغيرة والمتوسطة. بتلك الطريقة تساعدهم على أن يصبحوا رواد أعمال يساهمون فى التطور الاقتصادى لبلدهم.	
رهستاني بندسم.	
30 Translate into Arabic:	
- Egypt's big transport projects will be a tremendous progress in	3
the Arab world. They will move us to the future generation of	
environmentally-friendly means of transport.	
<u> </u>	
Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words	5
Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:	6
on the following:	6
	5 6
on the following:	5 6
on the following:	5 6
on the following:	6
on the following:	5 6
on the following:	5 6
on the following:	6
on the following: "A review of a film you watched and liked much"	6
on the following: "A review of a film you watched and liked much"	6

One of the challed used to a different		g abroad is that you	ı must20
a) grow	b) get	c) fall	d) turn
There was much pandemic.			
a) damage	b) application	c) expansion	d) pressure
The young athlet and play for its tea		a to study a	at Boston University
a) race	b) fair	c) scholarship	d) tournament
(4) Investors have ma	ade a 14%	in just 3 months v	vhich was a great
success.			
a) profit	b) loss	c) charity	d) list
The BBC News hire	es a big team of	in most cour	ntries of the world to
cover the incident			
a) producers	b) fans	c) reporters	d) consumers
The hard-working	secretary was l	iked both by her	and her bosses
at the company.	•	·	
a) classmates	b) colleagues	c) partners	d) interviewees
I didn't read the			
I cooked.		·	
a) prescription	b) receipt	c) article	d) recipe
With the rising pri	ices, many famili	ies have been	to pay their bills.
a) struggling	b) delighting	c) surprising	d) copying
The National Ban branches.			
a) route	b) network	c) skyline	d) access
Because of the ba	d weather, the c	ontrollers were unal	ble to make
an accurate	of the ship's p	osition.	
a) prohibition		b) consumption	
c)determination		d) courage	
1 They don't get on	well. They	•	
a) argue		b) 're always arguir	ng

d) never argue

c) arguing



	This time next wee	ek, I the	final match in Spain.	
	a) will watch		b) will have watched	d
	c) will be watching	g	d) watch	
	13 Your house is	more beaut	iful than mine.	
	a) bit	b) far	c) little	d) almost
	The house was ve	ry quiet when l	got home. Everybody	to bed.
	a) was going	b) have gone	c) had gone	d) went
	This is are	eport.		
	a) monthly way	b) per month	c) month	d) monthly
	Salma came to the	ne party in pato	ched jeans, which su	rprised the guests,
	most ofw	ere wearing eve	ening dress.	
0.	a) that	b) them	c) whom	d) who
	Ola drives	than her sister.		
	a) careless	b) carelessly	c) more careless	d) more carelessly
	13 It's time you	a visit to you	r grandparents.	
	a) will pay	b) paid	c) should pay	d) pay
	19 My sister t	the doctor later	today about her ston	nachache.
	a) sees	b) has seen	c) was seeing	d) is seeing
	Tim is my closest f	riend - we	each other for a lo	ng time.
	a) were knowing		b) knew	
	c) have known		d) have been knowi	ng
14	Read the following	passage, then	answer the question	15:

The earliest lighthouses were simply bonfires built on hillsides to guide ships. The first lighthouse, located on the ancient island of Pharos, served the old-world city of Alexandria in 285 BC.

Of the Seven Wonders of the Ancient World, the Lighthouse of Alexandria was the only one that had a practical function in addition to its architectural elegance. For sailors, it ensured a safe return to the Great Harbour. For architects, it was the tallest building on earth at its time.

And for scientists, it was the mysterious mirror that fascinated them most. The reflection of the sun's rays could be seen more than 50 kilometres offshore. Legend has it that the mirror was also used to detect and burn enemy ships before they could reach the shore.

Shortly after the death of Alexander the Great, his commander Ptolemy Soter assumed power and established his capital in Alexandria. Off the city's coast lay the small island of Pharos. Due to the dangerous sailing conditions, the construction of a lighthouse was seen as being necessary.

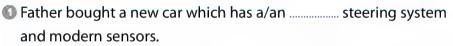
For centuries, the Lighthouse of Alexandria was used to mark the harbour, using fire at night and reflecting the sun's rays during the day. It was even shown on Roman coins, just as famous monuments are depicted on currency today.

Although the Lighthouse of Alexandria did not survive to this present day, it left behind its influence. From an architectural standpoint, the monument has been used as a model for many prototypes along the Mediterranean.

Choose the correct	t answer from a, b,	, c or d:	
1 The lighthouse h	nas a great importar	nce for	
a) sailors, archite	ects and scientists.	b) astronome	rs
c) psychologists		d) Romans ar	nd ancient Egyptians
The antonym of	the word "construct	tion" is	
a) erection		b) manufactu	ıre
c) structure		d) destruction	n
The old well-knd	own story, often abo	out brave peopl	e, adventures, or
magical events i	S		
a) wonder	b) lighthouse	c) legend	d) mystery
The first lighthough	use was built in	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	
a) England	b) Egypt	c) Asia	d) India
	title for the passage		
a) The lighthous	se, as one of the wor	nders.	
	e Great and the light		
	the lighthouse at pre		
	nterest in the lightho		
	ghthouse of Alexand	dria used for?	
a) Marking the h			
b) Using fire at r	•		
_	sun's rays during th	ne day.	
d) All of these.			
	lowing didn't have a		•
a) Sailors.		b) Architects.	
c) Shopkeepers.		d) Scientists.	
· ·	the word "establish		
a) close down		b) founded	
c) demolished		d) set off	

_	_	

	Translate into English:	
	- تحاول الحكومة تطوير القرى المصرية بتوفير التسهيلات الضرورية للوصول بالريف المصرى إلى	3
	مستوى معيشي لائق. لهذا أطلقت مبادرة القرن الحادي والعشرين «حياة كريمة» للشعب.	
		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
	③ Translate into Arabic:	
	- The Ministry of Education has an ambitious plan to establish	3
	·	
	a large number of new technical schools to cope with the latest	
	technological advance in the world.	
0	<u> </u>	
	Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words	6
	on the following:	
	"Spreading the culture of volunteering and donation can help solve	e
	our social problems."	
		••••••
		•••••



20	

E 3			
h	de	ora	ided
ю,	uc	. GIC	iucu

2 The steep road v	vas for ev	en the most exper	rienced drivers.
a) changing	b) reflecting	c) challenging	d) associat

		- 11				
(1)	ch	all	ρr	าก	ın	വ

- The islands near the Caribbean are characterised by high and so, they attract tourists.
 - a) activity
- b) climate
- c) biodiversity
- d) similarity
- 4 The Egyptian Ful Medams is based on an ancient Egyptian thousands of years old.
 - a) prescription
- b) study
- c) research
- d) recipe
- **5** The young scholar obtained a to get her PhD at Oxford University.
 - a) scholarship

b) championship

c) hardship

- d) friendship
- 6 The young man's salary enabled him to become economically of his family.
 - a) available
- b) dependable c) reusable
- d) independent
- The brave soldier was shot down during a behind enemy lines.
 - a) picnic
- b) fiction
- c) mission
- d) ride
- (3) It is a good idea tosome of your free time to charity work.
 - a) request
- b) perplex
- c) retrieve
- d) donate
- ① There are several reasons for the political situation in Yemen.
 - a) wave
- b) drought
- c) current
- d) imaginary
- 10 It is better to deal with some problems at or they will get more difficult.
 - a) purpose
- b) source
- c) site

d) location

- - a) right now
- b) every day c) since 2 o'clock
- d) next year



	2 She me v	when her birthd	ay is.	
	a) will not be tell	ing	b) will not have tol	d
	c) won't tell		d) isn't telling	
	3 Spiders are	frightening t	han wasps.	
	a) much	b) a lot	c) a little	d) much more
	We had a lot of to	rouble because	we our passp	orts.
	a) lose	b) had lost	c) have lost	d) were losing
	Which one of the	following is gra	ammatically correct?	
	a) We'd better st	art studying har	der this week, hadn't	we?
	b) We'd better st	art studying hai	der this week, would	n't we?
	c) We'd better sta	art studying har	der this week, mustn'	t we?
0	d) We'd better st	art studying har	der this week, aren't	we?
I	16 The boy	Omar shared a	a flat with was a phile	osophy student and
	wanted to sit up	half the night d	iscussing philosophy.	
	a) who	b) whom	c) that	d) all are possible
	She's busy	her room.		
	a) cleans	b) clean	c) cleaning	d) to clean
	18 Yasser to	be falling aslee	p at his desk. Maybe,	he is ill.
	a) is appearing	b) appears	c) was appearing	d) will appear
	1 to drivi	ng on the left no	ow, but it was hard at	the beginning.
	a) use	b) 'm used	c) 'm not used	d) used
	40 I don't think this	careless boy wil	I pass the exam and	high marks.
	a) gets	b) got	c) get	d) getting
	Read the following	g passage, ther	n answer the question	ons:
	The base base		12 - 4 - 6 2 11 - 121	and a second second second

The honeybee is a very unusual kind of insect. Unlike other insects, which live alone, the honeybee lives as a member of a community. These bees live together in what is known as a bee colony.

The head of the colony is called the queen bee. She is larger than the rest of the bees. Her main task in the colony is to lay eggs. Most of the other bees are the worker bees. These bees collect nectar and pollen from flowers. The nectar that is carried by the worker bees is deposited on the hive and then converted into honey. The worker bees also help look after the young bees. As soon as the eggs are hatched, the worker bees feed the young bees with pollen and nectar. The third type of bee found in the colony is the drone or male bee. The main task of such a bee is to mate with a new queen.

The queen bee has a lifespan of about three years. During this period, she would have laid more than half a million eggs. When the queen bee is dying, a new queen would be groomed. This new queen would eventually take over the 'duties' of the old queen when the latter dies.

Bees are small but they play a big role in the ecosystem. They play an important role as a pollinator for crops. It is vital for food security of human beings. Hence we must control our activities and help protect honeybees.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- - a) its sting is stronger and deadly
 - b) it can't live apart from its community
 - c) it can live alone
 - d) it can't live among trees and flowers
- - a) look after the young bees
- b) collect nectar and pollen

c) kill the worker bees

- d) lay eggs
- - a) co-operation

b) how to live among trees

c) selfishness

- d) laziness
- The word "latter" is the antonym of the word "......".
 - a) last

b) second

c) former

- d) next
- The synonym of the word "look after" is
 - a) care about

b) turn off

c) take over

- d) give off
- 45 What is the best title for the passage?
 - a) How honey is formed
- b) Honeybees' life
- c) Bees and other insects
- d) Bees and our ecosystem
- - a) disappear

b) grow

c) decrease

- d) reproduce
- - a) the rest stay without a queen
 - b) the other bees will be sad and cry
 - c) another one takes over
 - d) there aren't any more nectar

	② Translate into English:	
	- إن الجدل والخلاف بين أفراد المجتمع يؤديان إلى تدهور جميع مجالات الحياة. أما التفاهم والتعاون	3
	فيؤديان حتمًا إلى التنمية والتقدم؛ لذلك لابد من توعية أفراد المجتمع بأهميتهما لمستقبل أفضل.	
		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •

		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
	③ Translate into Arabic:	
	- Everyone of us should have a hobby within his or her means.	3
	Otherwise, life loses its charm, and becomes one long labour from	
	beginning to end.	
	beginning to end.	
90		
	<i></i>	
		••••••
	Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (190) words	
	Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:	6
	-	
	"Hosting international sports competitions and conferences is a goo	od way
	to encourage tourists to visit Egypt."	
		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •

Final Test 👵

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d	Choose	the correct	t answer fr	om a, b	, c or d:
---	--------	-------------	-------------	---------	-----------

There are for present ting	our mobile phone ne.	competing i	n Egypt at the 20
a) lines	b) networks	c) disciplines	d) authorities
2 The compa	ny director will have	candidates	for the job by tomorrow.
a) offered		c) searched	
3 The centra	l bank is responsible	for inter	est rates in all national
banks.			
a) cutting	b) setting	c) preventing	d) destroying
Ahmed He	lmy's last did	n't make a great	success although many
people tho	ought it was funny.		
a) fiction	b) romance	c) horror	d) comedy
The econo	mic reform plan has a	lot of public	in the country.
a) report	b) support	c) export	d) rapport
6 The UN bio	diversity plan provide	ed measures to pr	otect endangered
of	plants and animals an		
a) recipien		c) spices	
-	portant that parents	the right s	chool for a child with
learning di			
a) select			d) purchase
		any of the famou	s novels so that children
	bout literature.		
a) views		c) versions	
	need any previous		
	nce b) experimen	•	•
	I my sister that she do	esn't have to	my news to
the whole			
	b) broadcast	•	d) shoot
My boss	so rude today. H	le has shouted at	all of us.
a) is being	h) was	c) is	d) will be

a) will be visiting

40 countries.

- b) will have visited
- c) will have been visiting
- d) is visiting

2 My sister is on a world tour. By the end of the year, she more than



	Students	rubbish in the	e school grounds, bu	ıt now they keep)
	the school gro	ounds clean.			
	a) were leavin	g	b) leave		
	c) used to leav	/e	d) didn't use to l	eave	
	@ They [English before the	ey moved to the USA	١.	
	a) had studied	1	b) have studied		
	c) study		d) were studying	g	
	Mostafa doesr	n't take risks wher	n he's driving. He dri	ves	
	a) care	b) careful	c) too careful	d) carefully	
	1 She climbed to	the top of the mo	onument to see the v	wonderful view .	
0	she had been	told about.			
Ĭ	a) when	b) that	c) what	d) where	
	1've never seer	n such af	ilm in my whole life.		
	a) terrify	b) terrified	c) terrifying	d) more ter	rified
	[®] When I got ho	me, I that	t somebody had bro	ken into my flat	•
	a) discover		b) have discover	red	
	c) had discove	ered	d) discovered		
	1 thought ther	e was some coffee	e in the cupboard, b	ut there's	there.
	a) none	b) some	c) any	d) many	
	② I used to play	badminton	I was younger.		
	a) since	b) when	c) while	d) during	
	Read the follow	ing passage, the	n answer the ques	tions:	8

It is evident that, at present, people are spending a considerable amount of time on the Internet, and thus spending less time with real people. I strongly agree that although this use of the Internet has greatly increased the level of available communication, it has also had detrimental effects on the amount and type of social interaction that takes place.



The benefits of the Internet in terms of increased communication are clear, with people connected across the globe. In the past, communication was only possible by phone or mail, which entailed time and expense. It also usually meant just keeping in contact with those people already known to you. With the internet, this has changed dramatically. Email and social networking sites such as Facebook and MSN have created online communities that are global in scale, and they have fostered communication between people and countries that we would not have thought possible in the not-too-distant past.

People, especially the younger generation, spend hours of their time online, chatting and on forums. Although this can be beneficial, it is certainly not the same as real interaction with human beings and does not involve the same skills. It is important that children have and maintain real friendships in order to develop their own interpersonal skills. Not only this, it can also have negative effects on local communities if people are spending most of their time communicating online and not mixing in their neighbourhoods, and possibly lead to feelings of isolation for those individuals who do not have a 'real' person to turn to in times of need.

Choose the correct answer from	a, k	b, c or d	:
--------------------------------	------	-----------	---

The internet is a	means of communi	cation	
a) globally	b) nationally	c) locally	d) personally

- Which one of the following is TRUE?
 - a) The internet friends are more useful than real friends.
 - b) Young people avoid spending much time on the internet.
 - d) The internet is cheaper than the older means of communication.
 - e) The internet helps us to develop our own interpersonal skills.
- - a) harmful
- b) useful
- c) helpful
- d) constructive
- - a) success in life

- b) feeling of isolation
- c) avoiding bad people

- d) saving much money
- ② Communication in the past used
 - a) MSN

- b) the internet
- c) the phone and letters
- d) online means
- 2 People should use the internet
 - a) excessively

b) day and night

c) at work only

- d) sensibly
- - a) real
- b) virtual
- c) effective
- d) hackers

- - a) the less we visit our relatives and friends
 - b) the more we visit our relatives and friends
 - c) the more we have true and real friends
 - d) the less we know about the world

	Translate into English:
	💰 - ما زالت الحكومة تحاول توفير المناخ المشجع لرجال الأعمال المصريين والعرب لاستثمار أموالهم في
	المشروعات التنموية الكبيرة لخلق فرص عمل وحل بعض المشكلات الاقتصادية.
	Translate into Arabic:
	- Reading romantic stories makes us forget about our worries and
	troubles. They take us to the world of imagination, dreams and
	thinking. That's why I always prefer to buy novels.
	3 , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
(St	2)
I	
	Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words
	on the following:
	"What do you think the most important scientific discovery or invention
	of the last 50 years is?"
	of the last 50 years is:

Final Test (7)

40	
7	

			40
Choose the correc	t answer from a, b,	c or d:	
1 Unfortunately,	libraries don't	attract a lot of read	ders 20
nowadays. Most	people read electroi	nic books.	
a) public	b) special	c) accepted	d) awful
② The government	has a plan to stop t	the of live a	animals to prevent
diseases.			
a) security	b) computer	c) transport	d) education
The press room v	vas a valuable	of information for	r journalists during
the championsh	ip.		
	b) result		
	ple are keen on	movies such as	s vampire and
Zombie stories.			
	b) historical		
	as accused of selling	j businesst	o competitors and
he was dismissed			
	b) achievements		
	ry for this job wasn't		•
a) awful	•	•	
	what technological	devices future	will have in
addition to the p	resent ones.		
a) inventions		b) developments	
c) generations		d) discoverers	
	r old car is becoming v		
a) reliable		•	
	chosen for the new	•	
a) in	b) for	c) at	d) by
	ers will work at the c	ompany's manufac	turing in
6 th October City.	L > C . 111.		D C.
a) ability	b) facility	c) asset	d) outfit
	now. I to the		D.P
a) listen			
· ·	r English by		•
a) will have impr	oved	b) will be improvi	ng

d) has improved

c) improves



	13 He wa	lk along the beach	every evening befor	re bed.
	a) uses to		b) didn't used t	
	c) would		d) all are possib	ole
	Salah knew m	any people at the cl	ub because he	there many times
	a) has been	b) would go	c) was being	d) had been
	Which one of	the following is gra	mmatically correct?	
	a) There's a fly	in your soup, is the	ere?	
	b) There's a fly	in your soup, isn't i	it?	
	c) There's a fly	in your soup, isn't t	here?	
	d) There's a fly	in your soup, hasn	't it?	
(0	6 I did	could, which wasn't	t much.	
	a) when	b) who	c) which	d) what
	Which artist w	as this portrait pair	nted?	
	a) for	b) with	c) by	d) from
	She doesn't m	ind walking to worl	k. She to it.	
	a) isn't used	b) is used	c) used	d) uses
	She's been ill f	or some time, but s	he's beginning to fe	elagain.
	a) strongly	b) strongest	c) strong	d) more strong
		prove the saying th	nat twenty-four hour	sa long time
	in politics.			
	a) is	b) has	c) are	d) have
	Read the follow	ing passage, then	answer the question	ons:
	To dow For all	ala da consa al codal alacte. De	h l 4l	
			has become the mo	
			een countries and ir	•
		•	ortant that we learn	to use English.
		will be at a disadva		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	The state of the s	ective way of impro	ving my English is to	o use it, as often as
	possible.		السيام منام مسيمنا وامناه و	in a Fa aliah
	· N	,	nglish is used is duri	9 9
		,	gh. So wherever pos	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
	_	me menas and tead	chers who will or ca	n speak English
	with me.	-l		- d £
			newspapers are god	•
		-	ole they are gramma	
	′ '	9	et away with it. Not	•
			rough reading, I lear	
		-	aking, though at tim	es i still speak the
	broken English	that many of us spe	еак nere.	

Watching television and listening to the radio are two more ways of improving my English. English as it is spoken by the English, Americans and others is distinctly different.

So I continue to use English, that is, hear, read, speak and write it. Some of my friends only hear and read it. They can hardly speak or write it, but I will not be like them. I will try my best to master it.

Chaosath	he correct	ancworf	rom a	h co	r de
Cnoose tr	ne correct i	answer i	rom a,	D, C U	ra:

	Choose the correct unswer ho	in a, b, c or a.
	According to the passage, neg	lecting the English language is
	a) positive	b) advantage
	c) strength	d) drawback
	As it is a world-wide language,	, learning English is a/an
	a) necessary	b) option
	c) must	d) disadvantage
	English is the most effe	ective way to improve it.
	a) Writing	b) Using
	c) Reading	d) Listening
	The writer's only way to speak	English is
)	a) practising it at school with	teachers and friends
	b) practising it at home with p	parents and brothers
	c) practising it at the club witl	h other members
	d) practising it at the shops w	rith foreign customers
	Books, magazines and newspa	apers give
	a) fluent English	b) correct pronunciation
	c) correct English	d) bad English
	According to the writer's opini	ion, many students speak
	a) fluent English	b) broken English
	c) British English	d) good English
	We can improve our English th	
	 a) reading books and magazing 	nes
	b) watching TV and listening	to the radio
	c) speaking with others	
	d) all of these	
	The expression "get away with	
	a) doing something bad and	• •
	b) passing something after do	
	c) running out after being pur	
	d) doing something bad, but	others consider it good

_	_	
	-	

Translate into English:	
ً في نظم التعليم الجديدة أصبح لزاما على المدرسين الإلمام بطرق استخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة	_ 3
التي أصبحت جزءًا هامًّا من حياة الطلاب حتى في المرحلة الابتدائية.	

	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
Translate into Arabic:	3
	3
- Online education is becoming more and more important.	
However, many experts believe that it shouldn't be an alternative	ā
to schools as the main source of education.	

9	*******
3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words	
Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:	6
on the following:	6
	6
on the following:	6
on the following: "How can education help improve our country?"	6

_			
•	•	families for children v	who have to 20
travel abroad for l a) guest		s. c) strange	d) foreign
_		the contract to a new	
a scandal.	ica the terms of	the contract to a new	73 arra it was
	h) reporter	c) officer	d) inspector
		live last Frida	
		c) broadcast	
_		re of science	
a) faction		c) fiction	
•		riticised for her	
using animals in		Tracioca for fier	opposition to
_	•	c) national	d) cruel
_	-	, but we used it fo	
		c) permanent	
		Dam supply Egypt v	
the powe			
a) electronic		c) selective	d) electric
		or the of the n	
		c) abortion	
•		ve time to read the ar	
•		c) headlines	
		by anyone who wa	
how computer sy			
-		c) prohibit	d) profit
The state of the s		en when the telepho	
a) was tasting	•	b) has been tasting	-
c) has tasted		d) tastes	

2 You need to drive more quickly, or all the foodby the time we

(3) The Nile in Sohag is exactly the width as in Luxor.

b) alike

b) will be eating

d) same

d) is eaten

c) similar

reach the party.

a) will have eaten

a) different

c) will have been eaten



١	Sara passed the e	exam		
	a) easy	b) easily	c) easier	d) at ease
	₲ She a lot	of meals, becau	ise she had been so	hungry.
	a) cooked	b) had cooke	d c) were cooking	d) have cooked
	As we passed the	post office, Ali	remembered the pla	icehe had lost
	his bag.			
	a) which	b) that	c) when	d) where
6	When I came bac	k home yesterd	lay, my children wer	e watching TV
2	at midnight.			
	a) yet	b) since	c) still	d) ever
	18 He canse	ee anything wit	hout his glasses.	
	a) rarely	b) hardly	c) wrongly	d) hard
	Unluckily, the part	tient had died b	efore the ambulanc	ethe hospital.
	a) had reached	b) reaches	c) reached	d) has reached
	🐠 A: Would you like	e to join us? B: N	No, thank you. I'd rat	herhere.
	a) stay	b) to stay	c) staying	d) stayed
	Read the following	g passage, ther	n answer the quest	ions:

It is a disturbing fact that many different wild animals throughout the world are in danger. An endangered species is a type of animals that will probably become extinct. There are 3,079 animals and 2,655 plants that are endangered worldwide. Lots of countries have laws to protect endangered animals.

The reasons for this are many and varied, but we must blame pollution, pesticides, the disturbance of the animal's natural environment and man's greed.

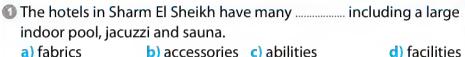
Industry has grown enormously, and it has become common practice for factories to dispose of waste matter in streams, canals and rivers, causing great loss of river life. Modem agricultural methods include using pesticides, which effectively control insects classified as pests, but which also destroy many that are not.

Some animals are endangered because their habitats are being destroyed because of the increase in population, which has meant more buildings, more vehicles, more pollution... and with it the destruction of much of the countryside that provide shelter for wild animals. People are building cities, logging (cutting down trees) and mining in places where animals live. Other animals are endangered because people are hunting and killing them. When a new species starts living in a place, it can take food from and prey on the animals that lived there before.

Some of the endangered animals in the world include the black rhino found in Africa, the orangutan found in the country of Malaysia and the blue whale. Finally, other endangered species examples include the Bengal tiger, giant panda, mountain gorilla, sea lions, and others.

Final lests		
Choose the correct answer from a, b,	c or d:	
② Countries can protect endangered animals by		
a) building habitats for them		
b) punishing people who build houses		
c) making laws		
d) stopping the immigration of anim	als	
The underlined word "many" refers to	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	
a) insects other than pests	b) agricultural methods	
c) pests only	d) pesticides	
Shelter is the same meaning as		
a) someone to attack	b) something to eat	
c) sometime to spend	d) somewhere to stay	
2 When using pesticides, we kill	•	
a) pests only		
b) pests and harmful and harmless in	nsects	
c) harmful insects		
d) none of these		
49 "When a new species starts living in a	a place, it can take food from and prey	
on the animals that lived there before	e." This means that	
a) man is the cause of animal extinct	ion	
b) animals are made endangered by	the weather	
c) animals are made endangered by	other animals	
d) the increase in population causes	danger to animals	
Man's greed is one of reasons that ma	kes the matter worse. "Greed"	
means		
a) man's desire to have things more	than their need	
b) man's desire to kill animals		
c) man's desire to build cities and cut	t down trees	
d) man's desire to mine in places wh		
② It has become common practice for factories to dispose of their waste in		
streams and rivers. This means that factories		
a) deliver their waste to streams, canals and rivers		
b) store their waste in streams and rivers		
c) get over their waste in streams, ca		
d) get rid of their waste in streams, c		
The best title to the passage is "	"	
a) Endangering animals and man		
b) The problem of the endangered a		
c) The problem of the endangering a	animals	
d) Man's greed and other creatures		

Translate into Arabic: - The Egyptian Ministry of Health was one of the first authorities in Africa to provide the citizens with COVID-19 vaccine. It was also offered free of charge. Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:	- The Egyptian Ministry of Health was one of the first authorities in Africa to provide the citizens with COVID-19 vaccine. It was also offered free of charge. Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following: - To your friend telling her about the new development of laws conce women's rights in Egypt. Your name is Kenzy and your email as	***	anslate into English: - يفضل السياح الرحلات الصحراوية التى تنظمها شركات السياحة، وذلك بسبب رغبتهم فى الاسترخاء فى جو يسوده الهدوء والسكينة، الأمر الذى من شأئه أن يشجع السياحة فى مصر.
	 on the following: To your friend telling her about the new development of laws concerwomen's rights in Egypt. Your name is Kenzy and your email actis: kenzy008@yahoo.com. Your friend is Jessy and her email address. 		The Egyptian Ministry of Health was one of the first authorities in Africa to provide the citizens with COVID-19 vaccine. It was also
	women's rights in Egypt. Your name is Kenzy and your email acis: kenzy008@yahoo.com. Your friend is Jessy and her email addr		
			vomen's rights in Egypt. Your name is Kenzy and your email as: kenzy008@yahoo.com. Your friend is Jessy and her email add



1		
	20)

D)	ac	.C	62	SC	ונ	ies	

A/An	is a person wh	io is in charge	of a newspaper,	magazine,	etc. or
part of one,	and who decide	es what shoul	ld be included.		

- a) editor
- b) reader
- c) investigator
- d) inventor
- 3 It is important to have a specificwhether long-term or short-term.
 - a) amount
- b) fiction
- c) training
- d) goal
- 4 A searchis a computer program that is used to look for information on the Internet.
 - a) engine
- b) power
- c) motor
- d) page
- (5) My teaching style is similarthat of most other teachers in our school.
 - a) at

- b) of
- c) in

- d) to
- 6 Family matters and work times are two main factors which limit women's of job choices.
- a) series
- b) serial
- c) range
- d) sequence
- An important for any government is to find a way of providing affordable housing.
 - a) change
- b) challenge
 - c) faction
- d) fiction
- There is no evidence to the young man to the murder.
 - a) connect
- b) tie
- c) contact
- d) communicate
- 1 The film director says that they have to shoot the last before sunset.
 - a) movie
- b) landform c) scenery

- 1 While watching the movie, I was back to the time of the Second World War.
 - a) transmitted
- b) transported c) touched
- d) saddened

a) Will it get

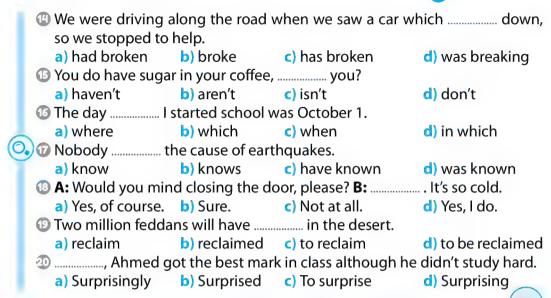
- 1 How is your German? better nowadays?
 - b) Does it get c) Is it getting
- d) has it got
- 2 We the wheels before you come back from the shop. a) will be replacing
 - b) will have replaced

c) will be replaced

- d) have replaced
- (3) This yoghurt isas good as the one I bought yesterday.
 - a) quite
- b) much
- c) far

d) almost





Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The environment is everything that surrounds us: plants, animals, buildings, country, air and water. Ecology is the science of how living creatures and plants exist together and depend on each other and on the local environment. Where an environment is undisturbed, the ecology of an area is in balance, but if a creature is exterminated or an alien species introduced, then the ecology of the district will be upset. In other words, the balance of nature will be disturbed.

One of the main causes of the earth's troubles is that the world is overpopulated and this overpopulation is growing at an ever-increasing rate. At the same time, the earth is unable to provide enough food since the fertility of some of our richest soils has been lost and vast areas that were once fertile lands have turned into barren deserts. And the trouble with deserts is that they tend to creep outwards on to the fertile soils.

Man is a part of the environment and he has done more to upset the ecology during his short span on earth than any other living creature. He has done this by his ignorance, his greed, his thoughtless, his foolishness and his wastefulness. Since man has done so much damage, it is up to him to try to put matters right - if it is not already too late. If there is to be any remedy for our ills, that remedy ultimately lies in the hands of the young generations, and the sooner they start doing something about it, the better.

- - a) all our natural resources have run out with no hope of replacing them
 - b) vast areas of our fertile lands have turned into barren deserts
 - c) the deserts creep inwards on to the fertile areas
 - d) overpopulation is increasing and the rich soil is rising
- - a) man's social activities
 - b) living creatures and the environment
 - c) plants and farming
 - d) the habitats of animals
- What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?
 - a) The young.

b) The ill.

c) Different creatures.

- d) The soils.
- - a) his moral values

b) his culture

c) his good behaviour

- d) his bad qualities
- 25 The more fertile the soil is, the
 - a) less food we have
 - b) more food we have
 - c) fewer people live on earth
 - d) more barren deserts there are
- What made man upset the ecology?
 - a) His ignorance.
 - b) His greed.
 - c) His thoughtless, foolishness and wastefulness
 - d) All of the above.
- The word "fertile" is antonymous to the word "......".
 - a) rich

b) productive

c) barren

- d) fruitful
- The most suitable title for the passage is "......".
 - a) Man's greed is the cause of upsetting the ecology
 - b) Ecology (in balance or upset)
 - c) It's too late to balance the ecology
 - d) Overpopulation and the earth's troubles

-	

Translate into English: - أثبتت التجربة العملية أن العلم سلاح ذو حدين؛ فهو نعمة إذا استخدم في الخير وما ينفع الناس، ونقمة إذا استخدم في الشر والدمار.	3
Translate into Arabic: - Recently we have been suffering from ill morals. People feel upset when they hear bad words and insults said in the street.	3
Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following: "Solving the problems on earth is more important than exploring Do you agree? Why? Why not?"	6 spa
	••••••

d) exactly

d) had read

d) the best

d) at which

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

A working woman is and her family.	to cope v	vith the demands of her w	vork 20
a) struggling	b) relaxing	c) relieving	d) dispensing
	_	ent in the economic situat	
		c) significant	d) trivial
The school uses interaction	active displays to	children to read a	and write for pleasure.
a) aspire	b) inspire	c) respire	d) expire
The team's performar players.	nce has made a/an	improvement v	vith the new coach and
a) imaginary	b) measurable	c) valueless	d) unattended
Scientists could find v	vays to th	ne power of the sea wave:	s to create electricity.
a) neglect	b) approach	c) waste	d) harness
6 Diplomacy is the mos	t way to	resolve any kind of disput	te.
a) sensitive	b) sensible	c) senseless	d) sensual
The couple behind us	kept eve	eryone by talking during t	he movie.
a) distracting	b) districting	c) extracting	d) expecting
The company annour	nced that the bridg	je project was completed	ahead of
a) way	b) step	c) schedule	d) silence
😉 I appliedsev	veral jobs and was	offered one.	
a) at	b) about	c) for	d) in
The atmosphere in the	e room was absolu	tely because of	the disagreement of the
two economic delega			
a) electric			d) electrified
🕕 Why to my բ	party tomorrow? D	on't you like me anymore	?
a) have you come		b) will you come	
c) don't you come		d) aren't you coming	
·	r o'clock. B: At four	? I'm afraid, I En	glish.
a) will be teaching		b) will have taught	
c) will have been taug			
William Shakespeare	is more fa	amous than Charles Dicke	ns.

c) enough

c) reads

c) best

c) which

a) slightly

a) well

a) when

a) were reading

b) many

b) have read

(1) You enjoyed the movie because you the book.

b) good

b) that

6 He wanted to come at 2 a.m., didn't suit me at all.

(E) Rana has learnt to paint lately.



	7 A: Has that letter b	oeen typed yet? B: No	o, but nov	v.
	a) it is typed		b) it is been typ	ed
	c) it is being typed	d	d) it is typing	
	You'd surely never	go there again,	?	
0	a) had you	b) would you	c) do you	d) didn't you
	😰 I'm so thirsty. I'll b	uy a big bottle of wat	terI get h	ome.
	a) before	b) as soon as	c) until	d) when
	It's careless of Has	san the san	ne mistakes again a	ind again.
	a) making	b) makes	c) to make	d) that he make
	Dood the fallowin	na massana Aban		

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Our culture is the system we use to build our identity. All living creatures are part of a culture. Even animals have a culture! So, what is culture? It's the way we behave in a group. It begins with each individual family. Within our families, we do things to build relationships with each other. This can include routines for doing things. It also includes traditions. Traditions are activities that are repeated on a regular basis. Culture is not limited to individual family groups. The real strength of culture is in larger community groups. These larger groups are called societies.

Every society makes rules for itself. It decides how people should act in different situations. Some of these rules are written down. Some are just things that are automatically expected of all members of that society. Often, cultures can be identified by what the people believe. Cultures are also known by what they choose to include in their art. Sometimes a society forms around people who speak the same language.

Cultures may also be known for their customs, including the foods they make and the things they do. Our cultures help us understand who we are and what we believe. There are very strong emotions connecting us to our own society. Two different cultures may disagree on beliefs, especially if they both feel strongly about them. When that happens, war is a common result. People are learning better ways to communicate with each other. The more we learn, the more we appreciate the differences in cultures.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

diloose tile collect al	151141 110111 4, 4, 4 01			
② Cultural rules made	by a society are	•••••••		
 a) all written down 	a) all written down		b) divided between written and expected	
c) not at all written	c) not at all written down		d) made by old people	
22 The writer suggests	that culture starts w	ith		
a) an individual	b) a society	c) a tribe	d) a family	
The underlined pro	noun " <u>them</u> " refers to			
a) cultures	b) rules	c) beliefs	d) feelings	
According to the page	assage, culture can be	identified by	•	
a) what people bel	ieve	b) what people	do	
c) what people dra	w	d) what people	believe and do	

	Final lests	
	What role does culture play inside a family?	
	 a) It helps build relationships. 	b) It keeps the traditions.
	c) It defends people's language.	d) It develops art.
	Suggest a suitable title for the passage.	
	 a) The culture in our community 	b) Culture and life
ļ	c) Culture and language	d) Culture and customs
Ć	Culture is known by	
ĺ	 a) what the people believe 	b) the customs we have
	c) the choices of art the society has	d) all of these
	29 The more we learn, the more we appreciate	the differences in cultures. The word
	"appreciate" here means	
	a) to realise	b) to welcome
	c) to go up in price	d) to be grateful for
	② Translate into English:	
	رفة والمعلومات التي تفيدهم في مستقبلهم، لكنهم الآن	كان شيابنا بسافر للخارج لاكتساب الخبرة والمعا
		يتطلعون للهجرة بسبب المشكلات التي يواجهونه
	Translate into Arabic:	
	- Many people misunderstand the true mean	•
	that we have the right to do just as we like a	s we don't live in this world alone.
2		
	7	
	Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AN	D EIGHTY (180) words on the
	following:	6
	"Due to the video games and social media,	young people have left many useful hobbies.
	Do you agree?"	

رقم الإيداع: ٢٠٢١/٢٠٦٣٢

الملكة الملكة المرابعة والتعليم رقم ٣٦٢/٢/١٢/١٠٤

